This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

EducT 918.71.448

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN TEXT-BOOKS

Harvard College Library

Gratis

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

3 2044 097 054 944

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Horace, The Works of. With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.

Livy. Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 339 pages.

Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline. With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGAS. 12mo. 207 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

The Histories of Tacitus. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 458 pages.

Tacitus's Germania and Agricola. With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 198 pages.

Virgil's Æneid.* With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader. By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

Acts of the Apostles, according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D. With Map. 12mo.

Arnold's First Greek Book,* on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.* 12mo. 297 pages.

——— **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.

☞ SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

A

M. L. Weber.

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY,

AUTHOR OF

"AN INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
549 & 551 BROADWAY.
LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.
1871.

EducT 918.71.448

Gratis

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of New York.

PREFACE.

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotefend and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his Analysis of Latin Verbs.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

PROVIDENCE, R. I., May 10th, 1864.

PREFACE

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

THE present edition is the result of a thorough and complete revision. The author has subjected every part of the work to a careful examination; he has availed himself of the suggestions of the most eminent classical instructors, and, finally, as the surest of all tests, he has used the work in connection with all the principal Latin authors usually read in school and college. The materials thus collected have been incorporated in this edition without either changing the plan or increasing the size of the work. By a studied attention to clearness and brevity, space has been secured for many valuable refinements of the language.

In this new form the work is now committed to classical teachers in the hope that in their hands it may promote the cause of classical education in our land.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *September*, 1867.

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet,	1
Sounds of Letters,	2
I. English Method of Pronunciation,	2
II. Continental Method,	5
Syllables,	6
Quantity,	7
Accentuation,	7

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender,	8
Person and Number,	9
Cases,	10
Declensions,	10
First Declension,	11
Greek Nouns,	12
Gender,	12
Second Declension,	12
Greek Nouns,	14
Gender,	15
Third Declension,	15
Class I.—With Nominative Ending,	16
Class II.—Without Nominative Ending,	17
Formation of Cases,	20
Greek Peculiarities,	29
Gender,	30
Fourth Declension,	34
Gender,	35
Fifth Declension,	36
Gender,	36
Comparative View of Declensions,	37
General Table of Gender,	39
Declension of Compound Nouns,	39

718

.SSI(

LATIN

Harv

]

G

Orations. W
r E. A. JOHNSC
York. 12mo.
is. With En
nnell. By TH
ges.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

Page.
Agreement of Pronouns, ... 204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns, ... 206
Reflexive Use, ... 206
Demonstrative Pronouns, ... 208
Relative Pronouns, ... 209
Interrogative Pronouns, ... 210
Indefinite Pronouns, ... 211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.
I. Agreement of Verbs, ... 212
II. Use of Voices, ... 214
III. Tenses of the Indicative, ... 215
IV. Use of the Indicative, ... 219
V. Tenses of the Subjunctive, ... 219
Sequence of Tenses, ... 220
VI. Use of the Subjunctive, ... 223
I. Potential Subjunctive, ... 223
II. Subjunctive of Desire, ... 225
III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result, ... 226
IV. Subjunctive of Condition, ... 232
V. Subjunctive of Concession, ... 236
VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time, ... 238
VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, ... 242
VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction, ... 244
IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, ... 245
Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua, . . 246
Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in Oratio Oblique . 248
VII. Imperative, ... 248
I. Tenses of the Imperative, ... 248
II. Use of the Imperative, ... 249
VIII. Infinitive, ... 250
I. Tenses of the Infinitive, ... 251
II. Subject of the Infinitive, ... 252
III. Predicate after the Infinitive, ... 253
IV. Construction of the Infinitive, ... 254
IX. Subject and Object Clauses, ... 258
X. Gerund, ... 262
Gerundive, ... 263
XI. Supine, ... 266
XII. Participles, ... 267

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs, ... 270
Prepositions, ... 271
Conjunctions, ... 271
Interjections, ... 274

CHAPTER VII.

Page.
Rules of Syntax, ... 274

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.
I. Arrangement of Words, ... 281
II. Arrangement of Clauses, ... 285

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity, ... 287
II. Special Rules of Quantity, ... 289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables, ... 289
II. Quantity in Increments, ... 292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings, ... 295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables, ... 297

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject, ... 300
I. Metrical Feet, ... 300
II. Verses, ... 302
III. Figures of Prosody, ... 304
II. Varieties of Verse, ... 305
I. Dactylic Verse, ... 305
II. Anapaestic Verse, ... 308
III. Trochaic Verse, ... 308
IV. Iambic Verse, ... 309
V. Ionic Verse, ... 312
VI. Choriambic Verse, ... 312
VII. Logaeodic Verse, ... 313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses, ... 315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal, . . . 315

APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech, ... 320
Latin Authors, ... 322
Roman Calendar, ... 323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures, ... 325
Abbreviations, ... 327

Index of Verbs, ... 328
Index of Subjects, ... 336

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. Latin Grammar treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. Orthography, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. Etymology, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. Syntax, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. Prosody, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. *J* and *v* did not originally belong to the Latin: their places were supplied respectively by *i* and *u*, which were used both as vowels and as consonants.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. *Vowels*, ... a, e, i, o, u, y.
II. *Consonants:*
1. Liquids, ... l, m, n, r.
2. Spirants, ... h, s.
3. Mutes: 1) Labials, ... p, b, f, v.
2) Palatals, ... c, g, k, q, j.
3) Linguals, ... t, d.
4. Double Consonants, ... x, z.

4. Combinations of Letters.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x* = *cs* or *gs*; *z* = *ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.[1] For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

I. English Method.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. *These sounds* in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. *R, final,* or followed by another consonant, greatly obscures the vowel sound. Before *r* thus situated, *e*, *i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her*, *fir*, *fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far*, *for*, but between *qu* and *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'-tus*, as in quarter.

3. *Dr, following qua*, gives to *a* something of the sound of *o*: *quad'-rupes*, as in quadruped.

7. Long Sound.—Vowels have their long English sounds

[1] Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:[1] *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.[2]

3. In penultimate[3] and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of *a final* in America: *men'-sa*.

2) *A after qu*. See 6. 2.

3) *I* (also *y*) *unaccented*, not final, generally has the short sound of *e*; *nobilis* (nob'-e-lis), *Amycus* (Am'-e-cus). But in the first syllable of a word it has—(1) before an accented vowel or diphthong, its long sound, *di'-e-bus*; and (2) before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, sometimes the long sound, *i-do'-ne-us*; and sometimes the short sound, *philosophus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

4) *I* and *u* in special combinations. See 9. 2 and 4.

5) *Before bl, gl, tl.*—*U* has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

6) *In compounds*, when the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the *short* sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the *long* sound before a consonant (8. 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound —*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex-e'-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) fol-

[1] Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

[2] In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

[3] Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

lowed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl* (7. 5), has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) *Compounds*. See 7. 6).

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like e:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ă-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-ĭ-pus*

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*. See Synaeresis, 669. II.

2. *I* between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y* and another vowel has the sound of *y* consonant in yes: *Acha'ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pompe'ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *Latoia* (La-to'-ya), *Harpyia* (Har-py'-ya). These combinations of *i* with the following vowel are sometimes called semi-consonant diphthongs.

3. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

4. *U*, with the sound of *w*, sometimes unites with the following vowel or diphthong:—(1) after *q*; *qui* (kwi), *qua*, *que*, *quae*:—(2) generally after *g*; *lingua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*, *lin'-guae*:—(3) sometimes after *s*; *sua'-deo* (swa'-deo). These combinations of *u* are analogous to those of *i* mentioned above under 2.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like s and j) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae* and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*; *chorus* (ko'-rus), *Chi-os* (Ki'os). But see 13. 2.

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound, as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S final*, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser; *phys'-ĭ-cus*, physic, etc.

3. *T* has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti-mor*, *to-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*; *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor). But

1) At the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus* (Zanthus).

2) Between *e* or *u* and an accented vowel, it has the sound of *gz*: *ez-i'-lis* (egzi'lis, as in exile); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ugzo're-us, as in uxorious).

12. C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, x that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on). But

1. *S*, immediately preceded by an accented vowel and followed by *i* with another vowel, has the sound of *zh*: *Moe'-si-a* (Me'-zhe-a). But some proper nouns retain the sound of *sh*: *A'-si-a* (A'-she-a), *Lys'-i-as*, *So'-si-a*, *The'-o-do'-si-a*, *Tys'-i-as*.

2. *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; *Os'-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*; *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (tyon): *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*.

13. Silent Consonants.—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: Thus

1. *C* before *n*: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).
2. *Ch* or *ph* before a mute: *Chtho'-ni-a* (Thonia), *Phthi'-a* (Thia).
3. *G* or *m* before *n*: *gna'-rus*; *Mne'-mon*.
4. *P* before *s* or *t*: *Psy'-che*, *Ptol'-e-mae'-us*.
5. *T* before *m*: *Tmo'-lus*.

II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.

1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound,[1] but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel sounds are as follows:

a like ä in father:			e. g. *a'-ra.*
e	ā	made:	*ple'-bes.*
i	ē	me:	*i'-ri.*
o	ō	no:	*o'-ro.*
u	ô	do:	*u'-num.*
y	ē	me:	*Ny'-sa.*

[1] These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *Ae* and *oe* like a in made, e. g. *ae'-tas, coe'-lum.*
au " ou " out, " *au'-rum.*[1]

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method, but it varies somewhat in different countries.

SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more, vice, acute,* and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo'-re, vi'-ce, a-cu'-te, per-sua'-de.*

18. **Simple words** are divided into syllables as follows:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants must be joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter, pa'-tres, a-gro'-rum, sa-cro'-rum, au-di'-vi.*

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) *A single* or *double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri, rex'-i, dom'-i-nus.*

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum, men'-sa, pat'-ri-bus.* But *x* following a consonant must be joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerx'-es, anx'-i-us.*

3) *Of three* or *more consonants,* the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r,* the last two must be joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus, tem'-plum, claus'-tra, trans'-tra.*

19. **Compounds** are divided into syllables,

1. Generally like simple words: *ed'-o-mo* (e, domo), *an-tef'-e-ro* (ante, fero), *be-nev'-o-lens* (bene, volens), *mag-nan'-i-mus* (magnus, animus).

2. But if the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, the compound is resolved into its component parts: *ab'-es, ab-i'-re.*

---

[1] In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately, but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs with nearly the same sound as in English.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.[1]

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec.*

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons.*

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dĭ'-es*, *vĭ'-ae*, *nĭ'-hil.*[2]

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri.*

24. The signs ¯, ˘, * denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rŭm.*

ACCENTUATION.

I. Primary Accent.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons*, *nos.*

26. Other words are accented as follows:[3]

1. *Words of two syllables*—always on the first: *mēn'-sa.*

2. *Words of more than two syllables*—on the *penult*[4] if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:[4] *hŏnō'-ris*, *con'-sŭ-lis.* But

1) *Genitives* in *i* for ii and *vocatives* in *i* for ie retain the accent of the full form: *in-gĕ'-ni* for in-gĕ'-ni-i; *Mer-cu'-ri* for Mer-cu'-ri-e.

2) *Penults common* in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3) *Compounds* are accented like simple words; but

(a) *The enclitics*, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, appended to words accented on the antepenult, throw back their accent upon the last syllable of that word: *hom'-ĭ-nĕ'-que*, *hom'-ĭ-nes'-que.*

(b) *Facio* compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cal-e-fa'-cit.*

---

[1] Common, i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

[2] No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2. 2).

[3] In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

[4] Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

II. Secondary Accents.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt; mon'-u-e-ra'-mus; in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt.*

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cen-tis'-si-mus.*

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

29. Etymology treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

31. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicĕro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicĕro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, a man; *ĕquus*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *populus*, people; *exercĭtus*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtus*, virtue; *justitia*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurum*, gold; *lignum*, wood; *ăqua*, water.

32. Nouns have *Gender*, *Number*, *Person*, *and Case.*

GENDER.

33. There are three genders—*Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. General Rules for Gender.

I. Masculines.

1. Names of *Males: Cicĕro; vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers, Winds*, and *Months: Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprīlis*, April.

II. Feminines.

1. Names of *Females: mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands*, and *Trees: Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pīrus*, pear tree.

III. Neuters.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns: fas*, right; *nihil*, nothing.

2. *Words* and *Clauses* used as *indeclinable* nouns: *triste vale*, a sad farewell; *difficĭle est amicitiam manēre*, it is difficult for friendship to continue.[1]

36. Remarks on Gender.

1. **Exceptions.**—The endings[2] of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus,

1) The names of rivers—*Albŭla, Allia, Lēthe, Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries, towns, islands, trees*, and *animals* take the gender of their endings. See 47. 1.

2. **Masculine** or **Feminine.**—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *cīvis*, citizen (man or woman); *cŏmes*, companion; *bos*, ox, cow.

3. **Mobile Nouns** have different forms for different genders: *filius, filia*, son, daughter; *rex, regīna*, king, queen; *leo, leaena*, lion, lioness.

4. **Epicene Nouns** have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *anser*, goose (male or female), masculine; *aquĭla*, eagle, feminine.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

---

[1] Here *vale* and the clause *amicitiam manēre* are both used as neuter nouns.

[2] Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with *of*.
Dative,	Objective with *to* or *for*.
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*.

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (casus recti, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (casus obliqui).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form the several cases are in general distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings:* Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases Alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative in neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all pure Latin nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

Genitive Endings.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	**ī,**	**is,**	**ūs,**	**eī.**[1]

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

[1] See 119. 1.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and **ē**,—*feminine;* **ās** and **ēs**,—*masculine.*

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
Nom.	mensă,	*a table,*	ă
Gen.	mensae,	*of a table,*	ae
Dat.	mensae,	*to, for a table,*	ae
Acc.	mensăm,	*a table,*	ăm
Voc.	mensă,	*O table,*	ă
Abl.	mensā,	*with, from, by a table,*	ā

PLURAL.

Nom.	mensae,	*tables,*	ae
Gen.	mensārŭm,	*of tables,*	ārŭm
Dat.	mensīs,	*to, for tables,*	īs
Acc.	mensās,	*tables,*	ās
Voc.	mensae,	*O tables,*	ae
Abl.	mensīs,	*with, from, by tables.*	īs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline:

Ala, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

3. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **As** for *ae* in the Gen. of *familia*, in composition with *păter*, *măter*, *filius*, and *filia*: *paterfamilias*, father of a family.

2) **Ai** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets: *aulāi* for *aulae*, of a hall.

3) **Um** for *ārum* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardanĭdum* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4) **Abus** for *īs* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son.

4. **Article.**—The Latin has no article. A Latin noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the*: *cŏrōna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

43. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e, as,** and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

Epitŏme, *epitome.* Aenēas, *Aeneas.* Pyrītes, *pyrites.*

	SINGULAR.	
N.	ĕpĭtŏm**ē**	Aenē**ās**	pўrīt**ēs**
G.	epitŏm**ēs**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
D.	epitŏm**ae**	Aenē**ae**	pyrīt**ae**
A.	epitŏm**ēn**	Aenē**ăm, ān**	pyrīt**ēn**
V.	epitŏm**ē**	Aenē**ā**	pyrīt**ē, ā**
A.	epitŏm**ē**	Aenē**ā.**	pyrīt**ē, ā**
	PLURAL.	
N.	ĕpĭtŏm**ae**		pўrīt**ae**
G.	epitom**ārŭm**		pyrit**ārŭm**
D.	epitŏm**īs**		pyrīt**īs**
A.	epitŏm**ās**		pyrīt**ās**
V.	epitŏm**ae**		pyrīt**ae**
A.	epitŏm**īs.**		pyrīt**īs.**

1. **Examples for Practice.**—*Aloe*, aloe; *borcas*, north wind; *cometes*, comet.

2. **Paradigms.**—Observe 1) That in the Plur. and in the Dat. Sing., Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*, and 2) That in the Gen. Sing., only those in *e* depart from the regular ending *ae*.

3. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitŏme, epitŏma*, epitome.

44. GENDER IN FIRST DECLENSION.

Feminine endings: **a, e.**
Masculine endings: **as, es.**

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*—(1) a few in *a* by signification: *poēta*, poet; *agricŏla*, husbandman. See 35. 1.—(2) *Hadria*, Adriatic sea; sometimes *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

ĕr, ĭr, ŭs, os,—*masculine;* **ŭm, on,**—*neuter.*

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave.* Puer, *boy.* Ager, *field.* Templum, *temple.*

	SINGULAR.			
N.	**servŭs**	**puĕr**	**ăgĕr**	**templŭm**
G.	**servī**	**puĕrī**	**ăgrī**	**templī**
D.	**servō**	**puĕrō**	**agrō**	**templō**
A.	**servŭm**	**puĕrŭm**	**agrŭm**	**templŭm**
V.	**servĕ**	**puĕr**	**agĕr**	**templŭm**
A.	**servō**	**puĕrō**	**agrō**	**templō**
	PLURAL.			
N.	**servī**	**puĕrī**	**ăgrī**	**templă**
G.	**servōrŭm**	**puĕrōrŭm**	**agrōrŭm**	**templōrŭm**
D.	**servīs**	**puĕrīs**	**agrīs**	**templīs**
A.	**servōs**	**puĕrōs**	**agrōs**	**templă**
V.	**servī**	**puĕrī**	**agrī**	**templă**
A.	**servīs.**	**puĕrīs.**	**agrīs.**	**templīs.**

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms it will be seen that they are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

	1. ŭs.	2. ĕr.	3. ŭm.
	SINGULAR.		
N.	ŭs	—[1]	ŭm
G.	ī	ī	ī
D.	ō	ō	ō
A.	ŭm	ŭm	ŭm
V.	ĕ	—[1]	ŭm
A.	ō	ō	ō
	PLURAL.		
N.	ī	ī	ă
G.	ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm
D.	īs	īs	īs
A.	ōs	ōs	ă
V.	ī	ī	ă
A.	īs.	īs.	īs.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—Like SERVUS: *annus*, year; *dŏmĭnus*, master.—Like PUER: *gĕner*, son-in-law; *sŏcer*, father-in-law.—Like AGER: *făber*, artisan; *magister*, master.—Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.**—Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the

[1] The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*; thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puĕrŭs*.

endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.; Nom. *puer* for *puĕrus*, Voc. *puer* for *puĕre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.[1]

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38. 3.

4. **Ager** and **Puer.**—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *vĭri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armĭger*, *armigĕri*, armor-bearer; *signĭfer*, *signifĕri*, standard-bearer.

3) Adulter, *adulterer*; Celtĭber, *Celtiberian*;[2] gĕner, *son-in-law*; Iber, *Spaniard*.[2] Lĭber, *Bacchus*; liberi, *children*; Mulcĭber, *Vulcan*;[2] presbyter, *elder*. sŏcer, *father-in-law*. vesper, *evening*.

5. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **I** for *ii* by contraction, in the Gen. Sing. without change of accent: *ingĕ'ni* for *ingĕ'nii*, of talent.

2) **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent: *Mercŭ'ri* for *Mercu'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fīli* for *filie*, son; *gĕni* for *genie*, guardian spirit.

3) **Us** for *e* in the Voc., the regular form in *deus*, god, but rare in other words.

4) **Um** for *ōrum*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *talentum* for *talentōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deum* for *deōrum*; *libĕrum* for *liberōrum*; *Argīvum* for *Argīvōrŭm*.

6. **Deus.**—This has, Voc. Sing., *deus*; Nom. Plur., *dei*, *dii*, *di*; Gen., *deōrum*, *deum*; Dat. and Abl., *deis*, *diis*, *dis*; otherwise regular.

46. Greek Nouns.

Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin.

1. Nouns in *os* are generally declined like those in *us*, except in the accusative singular, where they have *on*: *Dēlŏs*, *Delī*, *Delō*, *Delŏn*, etc., island Delos.

2. Nouns in *on* are declined like *templum*, with *on* for *um* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative.

3. Most Greek nouns generally assume in prose the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, but sometimes, especially in poetry, they retain in one or more cases the peculiar endings of the Greek. Thus,

[1] In puer, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases; but in ager it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as the pure stem *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

[2] Celtĭber and Iber have *e long* in the Gen., and Mulcĭber sometimes drops *e*.

1) *Genitive Singular*, ĕ (rarely u): Andrŏgeŏ from Andrŏgeŏs.
2) *Accusative* " o or on: Atho, Athon " Athos.
3) *Nominative Plural*, oe: cănēphŏroe " cănēphŏrŏs.
4) *Genitive* " ōn (om): būcŏlĭcōn " būcŏlĭcŏn.

5) *Greek nouns in* eŭs admit certain forms of the third declension: *Orpheus*; G., *Orphĕos*; D., *Orphei*; A., *Orphea*; V., *Orphĕu*.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*, and *pelăgus*, Plur. *pelăge*.

47. Gender in Second Declension.

Masculine endings: er, ir, us, os.

Neuter endings: um, on.

I. Feminine by Exception.

1. *Nouns feminine by signification: Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth. See 35. 2, but observe that

Many names of *countries, towns, islands*, and *trees* follow the gender of their endings.—(1) Countries: *Bosporus, Isthmus, Pontus*, masculine by ending; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter by ending.—(2) Towns: *Canŏpus* and plurals in *i*, masculine; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(3) Islands: those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(4) Trees: *oleaster* and *pinaster*, masculine. Some names of shrubs and plants are feminine, like those of trees, while others take the gender of their endings.

2. *Other Feminine exceptions* are

1) Most names of gems and ships: *amethystus, sapphirus*.

2) *Alvus*, belly; *carbăsus*, sail; *colus*, distaff; *humus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve.

3) Many Greek feminines, as (1) nouns in *ŏdus, metros, thongus: periŏdus*, period; *diamĕtros*, diameter; *diphthongus*, diphthong; (2) *abyssus*, abyss; *atŏmus*, atom; *dialectos*, dialect.

II. Neuter by Exception.

Pelăgus, sea; *virus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

I. Masculine Endings:

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

II. Feminine Endings:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive*, s *preceded by a consonant.*

III. Neuter Endings:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the nominative singular. These all end in *e*, *s*, or *x*.

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the nominative singular.

In class II. the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. consŭlis; stem, *consul*, a consul; *leo*, leōnis, stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion; *carmen*, carmĭnis, stem, *carmĭn* (Nom. changes ĭn to en), song.

50. Class I.—With Nominative Ending.

I. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*,[2] and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

Nubes, *f.* *cloud.*	Avis, *f.* *bird.*	Urbs, *f.* *city.*	Rex, *m.* *king.*
		SINGULAR.	
N. nūbēs	ăvĭs	urbs	rex[1]
G. nubĭs	avĭs	urbĭs	rēgĭs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubĕm	avĕm	urbĕm	regĕm
V. nubēs	avĭs	urbs	rex
A. nubĕ	avĕ[3]	urbĕ	regĕ
		PLURAL.	
N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubĭŭm	avĭŭm	urbĭŭm	regŭm
D. nubĭbŭs	avĭbŭs	urbĭbŭs	regĭbŭs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubĭbŭs.	avĭbŭs.	urbĭbŭs.	regĭbŭs.

II. Nouns in **es, is, s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Miles, *m.* *soldier.*	Lapis, *m.* *stone.*	Ars, *f.* *art.*	Judex, *m.* and *f.* *judge.*
		SINGULAR.	
N. mīlĕs	lăpĭs	ars	jūdex[1]
G. milĭtĭs	lapĭdĭs	artĭs	judĭcĭs
D. milĭtī	lapĭdī	artī	judĭcī
A. milĭtĕm	lapĭdĕm	artĕm	judĭcĕm
V. mīlĕs	lapĭs	ars	judex
A. milĭtĕ	lapĭdĕ	artĕ	judĭcĕ
		PLURAL.	
N. milĭtēs	lapĭdēs	artēs	judĭcēs
G. milĭtŭm	lapĭdŭm	artĭŭm	judĭcŭm

[1] X in rex = *gs*—*g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending; but in judex, x = *cs*—*c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending.

[2] *Impure*, i. e., preceded by a consonant. [3] Sometimes *avi*.

D.	militĭbŭs	lapidĭbŭs	artĭbŭs	judicĭbŭs
A.	milĭtēs	lapĭdēs	artēs	judĭcēs
V.	milĭtēs	lapĭdēs	artēs	judĭcēs
A.	militĭbŭs.	lapidĭbŭs.	artĭbŭs.	judicĭbŭs.

III. Nouns in **as, os, us,** and **e**:—*those in* as, os, *and* us *with stem changed, those in* e *with stem unchanged.*

	Civĭtas, *f.* *state.*	Nepos, *m.* *grandson.*	Virtus, *f.* *virtue.*	Mare, *n.* *sea.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.	cīvĭtās	nĕpōs	virtūs	mărĕ
G.	civitātĭs	nepōtĭs	virtūtĭs	marĭs
D.	civitātī	nepōtī	virtūtī	marī
A.	civitātĕm	nepōtĕm	virtūtĕm	marĕ
V.	civĭtās	nepōs	virtūs	marĕ
A.	civitātĕ	nepōtĕ	virtūtĕ	marī [2]
		PLURAL.		
N.	civĭtātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
G.	civitātŭm [1]	nepōtŭm	virtūtŭm	marĭŭm
D.	civitatĭbŭs	nepotĭbŭs	virtutĭbŭs	marĭbŭs
A.	civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
V.	civitātēs	nepōtēs	virtūtēs	marĭă
A.	civitatĭbŭs.	nepotĭbŭs.	virtutĭbŭs.	marĭbŭs.

51. Class II.—Without Nominative Ending.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

	Sol, *m.* *sun.*	Consul, *m.* *consul.*	Passer, *m.* *sparrow.*	Vultur, *m.* *vulture.*
		SINGULAR.		
N.	sōl	consŭl	passĕr	vultŭr
G.	sōlĭs	consŭlĭs	passĕrĭs	vultŭrĭs
D.	sōlī	consŭlī	passĕrī	vultŭrī
A.	sōlĕm	consŭlĕm	passĕrĕm	vultŭrĕm
V.	sōl	consŭl	passĕr	vultŭr
A.	sōlĕ	consŭlĕ	passĕrĕ	vultŭrĕ
		PLURAL.		
N.	sōlēs	consŭlēs	passĕrēs	vultŭrēs
G.		consŭlŭm	passĕrŭm	vultŭrŭm
D.	sōlĭbŭs	consulĭbŭs	passerĭbŭs	vulturĭbŭs

[1] Sometimes *civitatiŭm.* [2] Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

A. sōl**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	vultŭr**ēs**
V. sōl**ēs**	consŭl**ēs**	passĕr**ēs**	vultŭr**ēs**
A. sōl**ĭbŭs.**	consul**ĭbŭs.**	passer**ĭbŭs.**	vultur**ĭbŭs.**

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Leo, *m.* *lion.*	Virgo, *f.* *maiden.*	Pater, *m.* *father.*	Pastor, *m.* *shepherd.*
	SINGULAR.		
N. leo	virgo	pătĕr	pastŏr
G. leōn**ĭs**	virgĭn**ĭs**	pătr**ĭs**	pastōr**ĭs**
D. leōn**ī**	virgĭn**ī**	patr**ī**	pastōr**ī**
A. leōn**ĕm**	virgĭn**ĕm**	patr**ĕm**	pastōr**ĕm**
V. leo	virgo	patĕr	pastŏr
A. leōn**ĕ**	virgĭn**ĕ**	patr**ĕ**	pastōr**ĕ**
	PLURAL.		
N. leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	patr**ēs**	pastōr**ēs**
G. leōn**ŭm**	virgĭn**ŭm**	patr**ŭm**	pastōr**ŭm**
D. leon**ĭbŭs**	virgin**ĭbŭs**	patr**ĭbŭs**	pastor**ĭbŭs**
A. leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	patr**ēs**	pastōr**ēs**
V. leōn**ēs**	virgĭn**ēs**	pątr**ēs**	pastōr**ēs**
A. leon**ĭbŭs.**	virgin**ĭbŭs.**	patr**ĭbŭs.**	pastor**ĭbŭs.**

III. Nouns in **en, us,** and **ut**:—*with stem changed in nominative.*

Carmen, *n.* *song.*	Opus, *n.* *work.*	Corpus, *n.* *body.*	Capŭt, *n.* *head.*
		SINGULAR.	
N. carmĕn	ŏpŭs	corpŭs	căpŭt
G. carmĭn**ĭs**	opĕr**ĭs**	corpŏr**ĭs**	capĭt**ĭs**
D. carmin**ī**	opĕr**ī**	corpŏr**ī**	capĭt**ī**
A. carmĕn	opŭs	corpŭs	capŭt
V. carmĕn	opŭs	corpŭs	capŭt
A. carmĭn**ĕ**	opĕr**ĕ**	corpŏr**ĕ**	capĭt**ĕ**
		PLURAL.	
N. carmĭn**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**	capĭt**ă**
G. carmĭn**ŭm**	opĕr**ŭm**	corpŏr**ŭm**	capĭt**ŭm**
D. carmin**ĭbŭs**	oper**ĭbŭs**	corpor**ĭbŭs**	capit**ĭbŭs**
A. carmĭn**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**	capĭt**ă**
V. carmĭn**ă**	opĕr**ă**	corpŏr**ă**	capĭt**ă**
A. carmin**ĭbŭs.**	oper**ĭbŭs.**	corpor**ĭbŭs.**	capit**ĭbŭs.**

52. Case-Endings.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the nominative and vocative singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	s [1] (es, is) ——[2]	ĕ ——[2]
Gen.	ĭs	ĭs
Dat.	ī	ī
Acc.	ĕm (ĭm)[3]	like nom.
Voc.	like nom.	" "
Abl.	ĕ, ī	ĕ, ī

PLURAL.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Gen.	ŭm, iŭm	ŭm, iŭm
Dat.	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
Acc.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Voc.	ēs	ă, ĭă
Abl.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

53. Declension.[4]—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the nominative singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

Class I.

Rūpes,	*Gen.* rupis, f.	*rock,*	hospes,	*Gen.* hospĭtis, m.	*guest.*
vestis,	vestis, f.	*garment;*	cuspis,	cuspĭdis, f.	*spear.*
trabs,	trăbis, f.	*beam;*	mons,	montis, m.	*mountain.*
lex,	lēgis, f.	*law;*	ăpex,	apĭcis, m.	*summit.*
libertas,	libertātis, f.	*liberty;*	sălus,	salūtis, f.	*safety.*
sedīle,	sedīlis, n.	*seat;*			

[1] In nouns in x (= cs or gs), s is the case-ending, and the c or g belongs to the stem.

[2] The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

[3] The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

[4] For Irregularities see Formation of Cases (55-98) and Irregular Nouns.

Class II.

Exsul,	*Gen.* exsŭlis, m. and *f.*	*exile;*	dŏlor,	*Gen.* dolōris, m.	*pain.*
actio,	actiōnis, f.	*action;*	imāgo,	imagĭnis, f.	*image.*
anser,	anserĭs, m.	*goose;*	frāter,	fratris, m.	*brother.*
nōmen,	nomĭnis, n.	*name;*	tempus,	tempŏris, n.	*time.*

FORMATION OF CASES.

Nominative Singular.

55. The nominative singular may generally be formed from any oblique case in one of two ways:

I. By changing the ending of the given case to the nominative ending

s (os, is) *in masculines* and *feminines;* **e** *in neuters:* Acc. *urbem*, Nom. *urbs; āvem, avis; nūbem, nubes.* So Gen. *măris* (neut.), Nom. *mare.*

II. By dropping the ending of the given case: Gen. *consŭlis*, Nom. *consul; passĕris, passer; pastōris, pastŏr.*

1. The First Method applies in general to *mute stems.*
2. The Second Method applies to most *liquid stems.*
3. Euphonic Changes:

1) **T, d,** and **r** before **s** are dropped; **c** and **g** before **s** unite with it and form **x**; **i** is sometimes changed to **e**: Gen. *civĭtātis*, N. *civĭtas* (for *civĭtats*, t dropped); G. *mīlĭtis*, N. *mīles* (*milits*, t dropped and i changed to e); G. *rēgis*, N. *rex* (regs).

2) *The endings* **on** and **in** of masc. and fem. stems are generally changed to **o**: G. *leōnis*, N. *leo* (for *leon*); G. *virgĭnis*, N. *virgo* (for *virgin*). But in neuters **in** is changed to *en*: G. *carmĭnis*, *carmen* (for *carmin*).

3) *The endings* **er** and **or** of neut. stems are generally changed to **us**: G. *opĕris*, N. *ŏpus* (for *oper*): G. *corpŏris*, N. *corpus* (for *corpor*).

4) *Other changes* sometimes occur.

Genitive Singular.

I. GENERAL RULES.

56. Class I. forms the genitive singular by changing the nominative ending into *is*: *măre, măris*, sea; *urbs, urbis*, city; *nūbes, nubis*, cloud; *hostis, hostis*, enemy; *arx* (arcs), *arcis*, citadel; *rex* (regs), *rēgis*, king.

1. Class I. includes, it will be remembered, nouns in *e*, *s* (with a few exceptions), and *x*.

2. The Nominative Ending in this class is

1) *e* in nouns in *e*: *mare.*

2) *s* in nouns in *s*; but if *e* or *i* precedes, it may be *es* or *is*; thus it is *s* in *urbs*, *es* in *nubes*, and *is* in *hostis.*

3) *s* in nouns in *x*: as the double consonant *x* = *cs* or *gs*, the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem and the *s* is the ending.

Accordingly the genitive changes the endings *e*, *s*, *es*, and *is* into *is*, as above.

3. IRREGULARITIES AND EXCEPTIONS.—See special rules, 58–83.

57. **Class II.** forms the genitive by adding *is* to the nominative: *sōl, sōlis*, sun; *carcer, carcĕris*, prison; *pastor, pastōris*, shepherd; *lien, liēnis*, spleen.

1. CLASS II. includes all nouns of this declension not embraced under Class I.

2. CHANGES AND IRREGULARITIES.—See special rules.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

I. Words ending in a Vowel.

Genitive Formation—Various.

A.

58. Nouns in **a** form the genitive in **ătis**; *poēma, poemătis*, poem. These are of Greek origin.

E.

59. Nouns in **e** form the genitive in **is**; *māre, māris*, sea.

I.

60. Nouns in **i** form the genitive in **is**, or are indeclinable: *sināpi, sināpis*, mustard.

EXCEPTIONS.—The compounds of **mĕli** form it in **ĭtis**: *oxymĕli, oxymellĭtis*, oxymel.

O.

61. Nouns in **o** form the genitive in **ōnis**: *leo, leōnis*, lion; *actio, actiōnis*, action.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ŏnis**:—most national names, *Macĕdo, Macedŏnis*, Macedonian.
2. **ĭnis**:—*Apollo; hŏmo*, man; *nĕmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando, grandĭnis*, hail; *virgo, virgĭnis*, maiden; except—*harpăgo*, ōnis; *līgo*, ōnis; *praedo*, ōnis, also *comĕdo, cūdo, mango, spădo, unĕdo, ūdo*.
3. **nis**:—*cāro, carnis*, flesh.
4. **ēnis**:—*Anio, Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio, Neriēnis*.
5. **us**:—few Greek feminines: *Dīdo, Didus*.

Y.

62. Nouns in **y** form the genitive in **ўis** (ўos, ys), or

are indeclinable: *misy*, *misўis* (misўos, misys) copperas. These are of Greek origin.

II. Words ending in Mutes or Liquids: c, l, n, r, t. *Genitive adds* is.

C.

63. There are two nouns in **c**: *ālec*, *alēcis*, pickle; *lac*, *lactis*, milk.

L.

64. Nouns in **l** form the genitive by adding **is**: *sōl*, *sōlis*, sun.

1. *Two add* **lis**:—*fel*, *fellis*, gall; *mel*, *mellis*, honey.

2. *Nouns in* **ăl** lengthen **a** in the Gen.; *anĭmal*, *animālis*, animal; except *sal*, salt, and masculine proper names: *Hannĭbal*, *Hannibălis*.

N.

65. Nouns in **n** form the genitive by adding **is**, but those in **ĕn** form it in **ĭnis**: *paean*, *paeānis*, paean; *flūmen*, *flumĭnis*, stream.

1. *The few nouns in* **ēn** (e long), mostly Greek, add **is**: *liēn*, *liēnis*, spleen.

2. *Nouns in* **an**, **on**, **in**, **yn** are Greek, and sometimes have **os** for **is** in the Gen.: *Pān*, *Pānos* for Panis, god Pan.—Some in *on* have *onis* or *ontis*: *aĕdon*, *aedŏnis*, nightingale; *Xenŏphon*, *Xenŏphontis*.

R.

66. Nouns in **r** form the genitive by adding **is**: *carcer*, *carcĕris*, prison; *fulgur*, *fulgŭris*, lightning.

1. *Nouns in* **ăr** generally lengthen **a** in the Gen.: *calcăr*, *calcāris*, spur; but a few retain the short vowel.—*Far*, corn, has *farris*; *hĕpar*, liver, *hepătis*.

2. *Some nouns in* **er** drop **e** in the genitive:

1) Those in **ter**: *păter*, *patris*, father; except *lăter*, *latĕris*, tile, and Greek nouns: *crāter*, *cratĕris*, bowl.

2) *Imber* and names of months in **ber**: *imber*, *imbris*, shower; *September*, *Septembris*.

3. *Iter*, way, has *itinĕris*; *Jupĭter*, *Jŏvis*.

4. *Nouns in* **or** have generally **ōris**: *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; but a few retain the short vowel. *Cor*, heart, has *cordis*.

5. Four in **ur** have **ŏris**: *ĕbur*, ivory; *fĕmur*, thigh; *jĕcur*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *femur* has also *femĭnis*, and *jecur*, *jecinŏris*, *jeciněris*, and *jociněris*.

T.

67. Nouns in **t** form the genitive in **ĭtis**: *căput, capĭtis*, head. *Caput* and its compounds are the only nouns in *t*.

III. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Vowel or Diphthong.

Genitive Formation—Various.

AS.

68. Nouns in **as** form the genitive in **ātis**: *aetas, aetātis*, age; *civĭtas, civitātis*, state.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ătis**:—*ānas, anătis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **ădis**:—*vas, vădis*, surety; *Arcas*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;[1] *lampas, lampădis*, torch.
3. **ăris**:—*mas, măris*, a male.
4. **āsis**:—*vas, vāsis*, vessel.
5. **assis**:—*as, assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *adămas, antis*, adamant.

ES.

69. Nouns in **ēs** (e long) form the genitive in **is**: *fămes, famis*, hunger; *nūbes, nubis*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hĕres, herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) **ĕdis**: *pes, pĕdis*, foot.—(3) **aedis**: *praes, praedis*, surety.
2. **eris**:—(1) **ĕris**: *Cĕres, Cerĕris*.—(2) **aeris**: *aes, aeris*, copper.
3. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies, requies*, and a few Greek words: *lĕbes, tăpes*.—(2) **ĕtis**: *abies*, fir tree; *aries*, ram; *paries*, wall.
4. **essis**:—*bes, bessis*, two thirds.
5. **i**:—a few Greek proper names: *Xerxes, i*.

70. Nouns in **ĕs** (e short) form the genitive in **ĭtis**: *mīles, militis*, soldier.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ētis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *sĕges*, crop; *tĕges*, covering.
2. **ĭdis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president.

IS.

71. Nouns in **is** form the genitive in **is**: *ăvis, avis*, bird; *cănis, canis*, dog.

[1] Greek nouns sometimes have *ădos* for *ădis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ĕris**:—*cĭnis, cinĕris*, ashes; *cucŭmis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vŏmis*, ploughshare.
2. **ĭdis**:—*căpis*, cup; *cassis*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lăpis*, stone; *promulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek[1] words: as *tyrannis, ĭdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ĭbis* and *tigris*.
3. **ĭnis**:—*pollis*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.
4. **ĭris**:—*glis, glĭris*, dormouse.
5. **issis**:—*sēmis, semissis*, half an as.
6. **ĭtis**:—*lis*, strife; *Dis, Quĭris, Samnis*.

OS.

72. Nouns in **os** form the genitive in **ōris**: *flos, flōris*, flower; *mos, mōris*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ōtis**:—*cos, cōtis*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *nĕpos*, grandson; *sacerdos*, priest; and a few Greek words: *rhinocĕros*, the rhinoceros.
2. **ōdis**:—*custos, custōdis*, guardian.
3. **ōis**:—few masc. Greek nouns: *hĕros*, hero; *Mīnos, Tros*.
4. **ŏris**:—*arbos* for *arbor*, tree.
5. **ossis**:—*os, ossis*, bone (*os*, mouth, regular: *ōris*).
6. **ŏvis**:—*bos, bŏvis*, ox.

US.

73. Nouns in **us** form the genitive in **ĕris** or **ŏris**: *lātus, latĕris*, side; *corpus, corpŏris*, body.

1. *Genitive in* **ĕris**.—Acus, foedus, fūnus, gĕnus, glŏmus, lătus, mūnus, ŏlus, ŏnus, ŏpus, pondus, rūdus, scĕlus, sīdus, ulcus, vellus, Vĕnus, viscus, vulnus.

2. *Genitive in* **ŏris**.—Corpus, dĕcus, dedĕcus, fascĭnus, fēnus, frīgus, lĕpus, lītus, nĕmus, pectus, pĕcus, pĕnus, pignus, stercus, tempus, tergus.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **uris**:—(1) **ūris**: *crus*, leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, soup; *mus*, mouse; *pus*, pus; *rus*, country; *tus* (thus), incense; *tellus*, earth.—(2) **ŭris**: *Līgus, Lĭgŭris*, Ligurian.
2. **ūtis**:—*juventus*, youth; *sălus*, safety; *senectus*, old age; *servĭtus*, servitude; *virtus*, virtue.
3. **udis**:—(1) **ūdis**: *incus*, anvil; *pălus*, marsh; *subscus*, dovetail.—(2) **ŭdis**: *pĕcus, pecŭdis*, a head of cattle.—(3) **audis**: *fraus, fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, praise.

[1] Greek nouns sometimes have *ĭdos* or even *ĭos* for *ĭdis*; *Salamis* has *Salamīnis*: *Simois, Simoentis*.

4. **uis**:—*grus, gruis*, crane; *sus*, swine.
5. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trapezus, untis.*
6. **ŏdis**:—Greek compounds in *pus*: *trĭpus, tripŏdis*, tripod.
7. **eos**:—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension: *Thēseus, Theseos.*

YS.

74. Nouns in **ys** form the genitive in **ўis, ўos, ys**: *Othrys, Othrўos.*

These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ўdis*: *chlamys, chlamўdis*, cloak.

IV. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Consonant. *Genitive in* **is** *or* **tis.**

BS, MS, PS.

75. Nouns in **bs, ms,** and **ps** form the genitive by changing **s** into **is**: *urbs, urbis*, city; *hiems, hiĕmis*, winter; *daps, dăpis*, food.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ĭpis**:—nouns in *ceps* from capio: *princeps, princĭpis*, prince. Also *ădeps*, fat; *forceps*, forceps.
2. **ŭpis**:—*auceps, aucŭpis*, fowler.
3. **ўphis**:—*gryps, grўphis*, griffin.

LS, NS, RS.

76. Nouns in **ls, ns,** and **rs** form the genitive by changing **s** into **tis**: *puls, pultis*, broth; *mens, mentis*, mind; *ars, artis*, art.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

dis:—*frons, frondis*, leaf; *glans*, acorn; *juglans*, walnut.

V. Words ending in *X*.—*Genitive in* **cis** *or* **gis.**

AX.

77. Nouns in **ax** form the genitive in **ăcis**: *pax, pācis*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ăcis**:—*fax, făcis*, torch; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis**:—few Greek names of men: *Astyăn̦ax.*

EX.

78. Nouns in **ex** form the genitive in **ĭcis**: *jūdex, judĭcis*, judge.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ecis**:—(1) **ēcis**: *ălex*, pickle; *vervex*, wether.—(2) **ĕcis**: *nex*, murder; *fĕnĭsex*, mower.—(3) **aecis**: *faex*, *faecis*, lees.
2. **egis**:—(1) **ēgis**: *lex*, law; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) **ĕgis**: *grex*, flock; *aquĭlex*, water-inspector.
3. **ectĭlis**:—*supellex*, *supellectĭlis*, furniture.
4. **ĭgis**:—*rēmex*, *remĭgis*, rower.
5. **is**:—*sĕnex*, *sĕnis*, old man.

IX.

79. Nouns in **ix** form the genitive in **icis**: *rādix*, *radĭcis*, root.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ĭcis**:—*appendix*, appendix; *călix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *pix*, pitch; *sălix*, willow, and a few others.
2. **ĭgis**:—*strix*, screech owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dumnŏrix*, *Orgetŏrix*.
3. **ĭvis**:—*nix*, *nĭvis*, snow.

OX.

80. Nouns in **ox** are: *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names which form the genitive in **ŏcis** or **ŏgis**: *Cappădox*, *Cappadŏcis*; *Allŏbrox*, *Allobrŏgis*.

UX.

81. Nouns in **ux** form the genitive in **ŭcis**: *dux*, *dŭcis*, leader.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ucis**:—(1) **ūcis**: *lux*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollux*.—(2) **aucis**: *faux* (def.), *faucis*, throat.
2. **ugis**:—(1) **ūgis**: *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ŭgis**: *conjux*, *conjŭgis*, spouse.

YX.

82. Nouns in **yx** are from the Greek, and form the genitive variously: *Erȳx*, *Erȳcis*, Eryx; *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stygis*, Styx; *coccyx*, *coccygis*, cuckoo; *ŏnyx*, *onȳchis*, onyx.

X PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

83. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant change **x** into **cis**: *arx*, *arcis*, citadel.

EXCEPTIONS.—A few Greek nouns form it in **gis**: *phălanx, phalangis,* phalanx.

Dative Singular.

84. ENDING:—**ĭ**: *urbs, urbī,* city. But

The old dative in *e* also occurs: *aere,* for *aeri.*

Accusative Singular.

85. ENDING:—like Nom., **ĕm, ĭm.**

I. ENDING:—like nom. in neuters: *măre, mare,* sea.

II. ENDING:—**ĕm,** in most masculines and feminines: *urbs, urbĕm.*

III. ENDING:—**ĭm,** in the following:

1. In names of *rivers* and *places* in *is* not increasing in the genitive: *Tĭbĕris, Tĭbĕrim; Hispălis, Hispălim.*

2. In *amussis,* rule; *būris,* plough-tail; *rāvis,* hoarseness; *sĭtis,* thirst; *tussis,* cough; *vis,* force.

3. Generally in: *febris, pelvis, puppis, restis, secūris, turris;* sometimes in: *clāvis, messis, nāvis, pars.*

4. In Greek nouns in *is,* G. *is,* and in many in *is,* G. *ĭdos* or *ĭdis,* though the latter have also the regular *ĭdem: poēsis, poēsim; Agis* (Agĭdis), *Agim* or *Agĭdem.* For Greek nouns see also 93.

Vocative Singular.

86. ENDING:—like nominative; *rex, rex.* But

Some Greek nouns drop *s*: *Pallas, Palla; Orpheus, Orpheu.* See 94.

Ablative Singular.

87. ENDING:—**ĕ, ī.**

I. ENDING:—**ĕ,** in most nouns; *urbis, urbe,* city.

II. ENDING:—**ī,** in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters in **e, al,** and **ar**: *sedile, sedīli,* seat; *vectigal, vectigāli,* tax; *calcar, calcāri,* spur. But

The following have **e**:—(1) Names of towns in **e**; *Praeneste.*—(2) Nouns in **al** and **ar** with *a short* in Gen.: *sal, săle,* salt; *nectar, nectăre,* nectar.—(3) *Făr, farre,* corn.—(4) Generally *rēte,* net, and in poetry sometimes *măre.*

2. In adjectives in **er** and **is** used substantively: *September, Septembrī,* September;[1] *familiāris, familiārī,* friend. But

Adjectives used as proper names, and *juvĕnis,* youth, have **e**; *Juvenālis, Juvenāle,* Juvenal.

---

[1] Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis,* month, understood.

3. In nouns in **is** with **im** in the accusative (85): *Tĭbĕris, Tĭbĕrim, Tĭbĕri; sĭtis, sitim, siti.*

III. ENDING :—**ĕ** or **ī**; in nouns with **em** or **im** in the Acc.: *turris, turrem* or *turrim, turre* or *turri.* But

1. *Restis*, Acc. *restim*, rarely *em*, has *reste;* while *nāvis, navem*, rarely *im*, has generally *navi.*

2. *Greek nouns* in *is*, G. *ĭdis*, generally have *e*, even though the Acc. may have *im*: *Păris*, Acc. *Parim* or *Parĭdem*, Abl. *Parĭde.*

3. *Some other nouns* occasionally form the Abl. in *i.*—(1) several in *is*: *amnis, anguis, ăvis, bilis, civis, classis, collis, ignis, orbis, postis, rātis, unguis*, and a few others.—(2) some names of towns, to denote the place in which: *Carthagĭni*, at Carthage; *Tĭbŭri*, at Tibur.—(3) *imber, rus, sors, supellex, vesper*, and a few others.

Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.

88. ENDING :—ēs, ă, ĭă.

I. ENDING :—**ēs** in masculines and feminines: *urbs, urbes.*

II. ENDING :—**ă, ĭă** in neuters:

1. **a** in most neuters: *carmen, carmĭna.*

2. **ia** in neuters which admit *i* in the ablative (87. II.): *măre, maria.*

III. RARE ENDINGS are

1. *The ancient endings*—**ēis** and **īs** in the Acc. Plur. of masculines and feminines with *ium* in the Gen.: *cīvēis, civīs*, for *cives.*

2. *The Greek endings*—**ĕs, as, is, e.** See 95 and 98.

3. *Vis*, force, has Plur.: *vīres, virium, virĭbus, vires, vires, virĭbus.*

Genitive Plural.

89. ENDING :—um, ium.

I. ENDING :—**um** in most nouns: *leo, leŏnum.*

II. ENDING :—**ium** in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters with **ia** in the plural, i. e., those in *e, al*, and *ar* (*al* and *ar* with *ā* in Gen.); *măre, maria, marium; anĭmal, animālia, animalium*, animal.

2. In most nouns of more than one syllable in **ns** and **rs**:[1] *cliens, clientium*, client; *cohors, cohortium*, cohort.

3. In many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **es** and **is** not increasing:[2] *nūbes, nubium; ăvis, avium.*

2) *Căro*, flesh; *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *uter*, leathern sack; *venter*, belly; and generally *Insŭber*, Insubrian.

---

[1] Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *părens*, parent, generally has.

[2] But cānis, juvĕnis, strues, vātes, have *um;* ăpis, mensis, sēdes, volucris, *um* or *ium;* compes, *ium.*

4. In monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a *consonant*[1] and in a few in **s** and **x** preceded by a *vowel*:[2] *urbs, urbium*, city; *arx, arcium*, citadel; *nox, noctium*, night.

5. In many nouns in **as** and **is** (Plur. *ātes* and *ītes*). Thus

1) In names of nations: *Arpīnas, Arpinatium; Samnis, Samnitium.*

2) In *Optimātes* and *Penātes*, and occasionally in other nouns in *as*: *civītas, civitātum*, sometimes *civitatium.*

III. RARE ENDINGS.—*Bos* has *boum*: a few Greek words (especially titles of books) *on*: *Metamorphōses, Metamorphoseon.*

IV. WANTING.—The Gen. Plūr. is often wanting in monosyllables.

Dative and Ablative Plural.

90. ENDING:—**ĭbŭs**: *urbs, urbĭbus.*

RARE ENDINGS are:

1. **is** or **ĭbus**—in neuters in *a*: *poēma*; D. and A., *poemătis*, or *poemătĭbus*, poem.
2. **ubus**—in *bos, bŭbus* (rare *bōbus* for *bovĭbus*), ox; *sus, sŭbus* for *suĭbus*, swine.
3. **si, sin**—in Greek words. See 97.

GREEK PECULIARITIES.

91. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek, and some are entirely indeclinable.

Greek Genitive Singular.

92. ENDING:—sometimes **os** or **i** (rare) for *is*: *Daphnis, Daphnĭdos* for Daphnĭdis; *Xerxes, Xerxi* for Xerxis.

1. ENDING:—**os.** (1) Many nouns in *as* and *is* have *ados* and *idos* for *adis* and *idis*: *Pallas, Pallădos.*—(2) Those in *ys* may have *yos* or *ys*: *Tēthys, Tēthyos.*—(3) Those in *eus* have *eos*: *Orpheus, Orpheos.*—(4) *Pan* has *Pānos.*

2. ENDING:—**i.** Proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, sometimes have *i* for *is*: *Achilles, Achilli.*

3. ENDING:—**us.** Greek feminines in *o, ĕcho, Dĭdo, Sappho*, have regularly *us* in the Gen. and the Greek ending *o* in the other cases, rarely the Latin *ōni, ōnem, ōne; Dĭdo, Didus, Dido.*

Greek Accusative Singular.

93. ENDING:—often **a**: sometimes **im, in**; sometimes **en** for *em*: *Perĭcles, Periclea; pŏēsis, pŏēsim*, or *poesin*, poem; *Xerxes, Xerxen.*

1. THE ENDING **a** is used—(1) by prose writers in proper names and in *aër* and *aether*,—(2) by the poets both in proper and in common nouns.

[1] Except (*ops*) *ŏpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps, lynx, sphynx.*

[2] Namely, *faux, glis, lis, mas, nix, nox, os* (ossis), *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus.*

2. The Ending **im** or **in** is used in Greek nouns in *is*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *is*, Gen. *ĭdis*: *pŏesis, pŏesim, pŏesin; Păris* (Parĭdis), *Parĭdem, Parim, Parin.*

3. The Ending **en** is often used in proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *es*, Gen. *ētis*: *Aeschĭnes, Aeschĭnen; Thăles, Thalētem* or *Thalen.*

4. The Ending **ym** or **yn**.—Greek nouns in *ys* have *ym* or *yn*: *Othrys, Othrym* or *Othryn.*

Greek Vocative Singular.

94. Ending sometimes drops **s**: *Orpheus, Orpheu.* See 86.

1. **S** *is dropped,*—(1) regularly in nouns in *eus* and *ys*, together with proper names in *as*, Gen. *antis*: *Perseus, Perseu; Cŏtys, Coty; Atlas, Atla,*—(2) generally in nouns in *is* and sometimes in proper nouns in *es*: *Daphnis, Daphni; Socrătes, Socrătĕ*, or *Socrăte.*

2. *Proper names in* **es** shorten the ending to *ĕ*, when *s* is retained: *Socrătes, Socrătĕ.*

Greek Nominative and Vocative Plural.

95. Ending:—sometimes **ĕs** for *ēs*, especially in poetry: *Arcădĕs* for *Arcădes.*

1. The Ending **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mĕlos, mele*, song; these neuters are used only in the Nom. and Acc. *Tempe*, the vale Tempe, is plural.

2. The Ending **is** for *es* occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes.*

Greek Genitive Plural.

96. Ending:—**on**: only in a few words, almost exclusively titles of books: *Metamorphŏses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseon.*

Greek Dative and Ablative Plural.

97. Ending:—**si**, before vowels **sin**, poetic: *Troădes, Troăsin.*

Greek Accusative Plural.

98. Ending:—**as**: *Macedŏnes, Macedŏnas.*

1. The Ending **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mĕlos, mele; Tempe.* See 95. 1.

2. The Ending **is** occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes.*

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. The Gender of nouns of this declension, when not determined by the general rules (35), may be ascertained from their endings, as follows:[1]

[1] See also 48.

I. Masculine Endings.

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

O.

100. Nouns in **o** are masculine: *sermo*, discourse.

Exceptions.—*Feminine*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *ĭnis* (i. e., most nouns in *do* and *go*, 61. 2), except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cupīdo* and *margo*, masc. or fem.
2. *Căro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ĕcho*, an echo.
3. Abstract and collective nouns in *io*: *ratio*, reason; *concio*, an assembly; except numeral nouns in *io*, which (except *unio*) are masc.; *ternio*, *quaternio*.

OR.

101. Nouns in **or** are masculine: *dŏlor*, pain.

Exceptions.

1. *Feminine:*—*arbor*, tree.
2. *Neuter:*—*ădor*, spelt; *aequor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

OS.

102. Nouns in **os** are masculine: *mos*, cŭstom.

Exceptions.

1. *Feminine:*—*arbos*, tree; *cos*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *eos*, dawn.
2. *Neuter:*—*os*, mouth; *os*, bone; and a few Greek words: *chaos*, *ĕpos*, *ēthos*, *mĕlos*.

ER.

103. Nouns in **er** are masculine: *agger*, mound.

Exceptions.

1. *Feminine:*—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *Neuter:*—(1) *cadāver*, corpse; *ŭter*, way; *tŭber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *ver*, spring; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. ĕris: *ăcer*, maple tree; *papāver*, poppy; *pĭper*, pepper.

ES INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

104. Nouns in **es** increasing in the genitive are masculine: *pes*, genitive *pedis*, foot.

Exceptions.

1. *Feminine:*—*compes*, fetter; *merces*, reward; *merges*, sheaf; *quies*, rest (with its compounds); *sĕges*, crop; *tĕges*, mat; sometimes also *ăles*, bird, and *quadrŭpes*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter:*—*aes*, copper.

II. Feminine Endings.

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in genitive,* s *preceded by a consonant.*

AS.

105. Nouns in **as** are feminine: *aetas*, age.

Exceptions.

1. *Masculine*:—**as**, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *antis*, as *adămas*, adamant.
2. *Neuter*:—*vas*, vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *ătis*, as *erysipèlas*.

IS.

106. Nouns in **is** are feminine: *nāvis*, ship.

Exceptions.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *natālis*, birthday; *collis*, hill; *fascis*, bundle; *vŏmis*, ploughshare; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood; *torquis*, collar. But a few with these endings are occasionally feminine: *aquālis*, *canālis*, *cănis*, *clūnis*, *amnis*, *cĭnis*, *finis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis* (f.), path;[1] *cassis*, net; *caulis*, stem; *corbis* (f.), basket; *ensis*, sword; *fustis*, club; *glis*, dormouse; *lăpis*, stone; *mensis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *scrobis* (f.), ditch; *sentis*, brier; *tigris* (f.), tiger; *torris*, brand; *vectis*, lever.[2]
3. Compounds of **as** (a coin): *sēmis*, *decussis*. Also *Lucrētilis*, *mānes* (pl.).

YS.

107. Nouns in **ys** are feminine: *chlămys*, cloak.

Exceptions.—*Masculine*:—names of mountains, *Othrys*.

X.

108. Nouns in **x** are feminine: *pax*, peace.

Exceptions.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *cŏrax*, raven; *thōrax*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the six feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prex*), *supellex*, and such as are fem. by signification. 35. II.

---

[1] The examples marked (f.) are sometimes feminine. *Corbis* and *tigris* are often feminine.

[2] For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 35. I.

3. Four in **ix**: *călix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *varix* (f.), swollen vein.
4. One in **ux**: *trădux*, vine-layer.
5. Names of mountains in **yx**, and a few other words in **yx**.
6. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

ES NOT INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

109. Nouns in **es** not increasing in genitive are feminine: *nūbes*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine:—acinăces:* sometimes *palumbes* and *vepres*.
2. *Neuter:*—a few rare Greek nouns: *cacoēthes*, *hippomănes*

S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

110. Nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant are feminine: *urbs*, city.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine:*

1. *Dens*, tooth, *fons*, fountain, *mons*, mountain, *pons*, bridge; generally *ădeps*, fat, and *rŭdens*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood,—(1) *oriens, occĭdens* (sol), east, west,—(2) *confluens, torrens* (amnis), confluence, torrent,—(3) *bidens, tridens* (raster), two-pronged hoe, trident,—(4) *sextans, quadrans* (as), parts of an as.
3. *Chălybs*, steel, *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few Greek names of animals: *ĕpops, gryps, seps* (f.).
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animans*, animal, originally participle, is masc., fem., or neuter.

III. NEUTER ENDINGS.

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

A, E, I, Y, C, T, AR.

111. Nouns in **a, e, i, y, c, t, ar** are neuter: *poĕma*, poem; *măre*, sea; *lac*, milk; *căput*, head.

L.

112. Nouns in **l** are neuter: *animal*, animal.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine:—mūgil*, mullet; *sal* (also neuter in singular), salt; *sol*, sun.

N.

113. Nouns in **n** are neuter: *carmen*, song.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine:—pecten*, comb; *ren*, kidney; *lien*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an, en, in, on**: *paean*, paean; *cānon*, rule.
2. *Feminine:—ædon*, nightingale; *alcyon* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icon*, image; *sindon*, muslin.

UR.

114. Nouns in **ur** are neuter: *fulgur*, lightning.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine:—furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtledove; *vultur*, vulture.

US.

115. Nouns in **us** are neuter: *corpus*, body.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine:—lĕpus*, hare; *mus*, mouse; Greek nouns in **pus** and a few others: *tripus*, tripod.
2. *Feminine:—tellus*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtus*, virtue; *pălus*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in **us**,—*masculine;* **u**,—*neuter.*

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit.*	Cornu, *horn.*	Case-Endings.	
	SINGULAR.		
N. fructŭs	cornū	ŭs	ū
G. fructūs	cornūs	ūs	ūs
D. fructuī	cornū	uī	ū
A. fructŭm	cornū	ŭm	ū
V. fructŭs	cornū	ŭs	ū
A. fructū	cornū	ū	ū
	PLURAL.		
N. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
G. fructuŭm	cornuŭm	uŭm	uŭm
D. fructĭbŭs	cornĭbŭs	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs)
A. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
V. fructūs	cornuă	ūs	uă
A. fructĭbŭs.	cornĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus*, song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gĕnu*, knee.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fourth declension is but a modification of the third, produced by contraction: thus *fructus*, in the uncontracted form, was declined like *grus*, *gruis*, of Decl. III.: N. *fructus*, G. *fructuis* = *fructus*; D. *fructui*, A. *fructuem* = *fructum*, V. *fructus*; A. *fructue* = *fructu*: Plur. N. *fructues* = *fructus*, etc.

4. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **Ubŭs** for *ibŭs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lăcus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pĕcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spĕcus*, den; *trĭbus*, tribe; *vĕru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sĭnus*, and *tonĭtrus*.

2) **Uis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3) **U** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *equitātu* for *equitatui*, cavalry.

117. Second and Fourth Declensions.—Some nouns are partly of this declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dŏmus*, house, declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N.	domŭs	domūs
G.	domūs, domī	domuŭm, domōrŭm
D.	domuī (domō)	domĭbŭs
A.	domŭm	domōs, domūs
V.	domŭs	domūs
A.	domō (domū)	domĭbŭs.

In this word there is generally a difference of meaning between the forms of the second Decl. and those of the fourth; thus, G. *domus*, of a house; *domi*, at home: A. Pl. *domus*, houses; *domos*, often, homeward; to homes.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *fīcus*, *laurus*, *pīnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cŏlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senātus* and *tumultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senāti*, *tumulti*.

118. Gender in Fourth Declension.

Masculine ending: **us.**

Neuter ending: **u.**

Exceptions.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ăcus*, needle; *cŏlus*, distaff; *dŏmus*, house; *mănus*, hand; *portĭcus*, portico; *trĭbus*, tribe,—(2) *īdus*, ides; *Quinquātrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pĕnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spĕcus*, den,—(3) a few nouns

Fem. by signification (35. II.): *nŭrus*, daughter-in-law; *fĭcus*, fig tree.[1]

2. *Neuter* :—*sĕcus* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spĕcus*, den.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**,—*feminine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, *day*.	Res, *thing*.	Case-Endings.
	SINGULAR.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ēī**	r**ēī**	eī
D. di**ēī**	r**ēī**	eī
A. di**ĕm**	r**ĕm**	ĕm
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ē**	r**ē**	ē
	PLURAL.	
N. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
G. di**ērŭm**	r**ērŭm**	ērŭm
D. di**ēbŭs**	r**ēbŭs**	ēbŭs
A. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
V. di**ēs**	r**ēs**	ēs
A. di**ēbŭs.**	r**ēbŭs.**	ēbŭs.

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings presented in the above table.

E in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Acies*, battle array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fifth declension, like the fourth, seems to be a modification of the third. It is produced by contraction (*ees* = *ēs*: *eĭbus* = *ēbus*), except in the genitive, where *ei* comes from *eis*, by dropping *s*, and *ērum* from *eum*, by inserting *r*.

4. **Irregular Endings**:—*ē* or *ī* for *ei* in the Gen. and Dat.: *acie* for *aciēi*; *pernicii* for *perniciēi*.

5. **Defective.**—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

120. Gender in Fifth Declension.

Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine.

Exceptions.—*Masculine* :—*dies*, day, and *meridies*, midday, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

[1] Also *Fem.* when it means *fig*.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.[1]

SINGULAR.

	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		D. V
	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem
N.	ă	ŭs — [2]	ŭm	s (es, is)[3] —	ĕ —	ŭs	ū	ēs
G.	ae	ī	ī	ĭs	ĭs	ūs	ūs	ēī
D.	ae	ō	ō	ī	ī	uī	ū	ēī
A.	ăm	ŭm	ŭm	ĕm (ĭm)	like nom.	ŭm	ū	ĕm
V.	ă	ĕ —	ŭm	like nom.	like nom.	ŭs	ū	ēs
A.	ā	ō	ō	ĕ (ī)	ĕ (ī)	ū	ū	ē

PLURAL.

N.	ae	ī	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
G.	ārŭm	ōrŭm	ōrŭm	ŭm (ĭŭm)	ŭm (ĭŭm)	uŭm	uŭm	ērŭm
D.	īs	īs	īs	ībŭs	ībŭs	ībŭs (ŭbŭs)	ībŭs (ŭbŭs)	ēbŭs
A.	ās	ōs	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
V.	ae	ī	ă	ēs	ă (ĭă)	ūs	uă	ēs
A.	īs.	īs	īs.	ībŭs.	ībŭs.	ībŭs (ŭbŭs)	ībŭs (ŭbŭs).	ēbŭs.

122. By a close analysis it will be found,

1. That the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of declension.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems, with one general system of endings.

123. According to this analysis,

1. The stems in the five declensions end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a,	o,	consonant, (rarely i).	u,	e.

2. The general case-endings are as follows:[4]

---

[1] This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

[2] The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Decl. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45. 1).

[3] The inclosed endings are less common than the others.

[4] In this table observe,

1) That different endings characteristic of different genders may be found in one and the same declension.

2) That a slight difference of declension is however apparent in the double forms in *ĭa, ī; ēs, ī; ŭm, rŭm; ĭbŭs, ĭs;* but that in each of these double forms, the first seems to have been the original ending from which the second was derived.

	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*
	SINGULAR.	
N.	s —	ĕ, m —
G.	ĭs, ī	ĭs, ī
D.	ī	ī
A.	ĕm, m	like nom.
V.	like nom.	" "
A.	ĕ (ī)	ĕ (ī)
	PLURAL.	
N.	ēs, ī	ă (ĭă)
G.	ŭm, rŭm	ŭm, rŭm
D.	ĭbŭs, īs	ĭbŭs, īs
A.	ēs	like nom.
V.	like nom.	" "
A.	ĭbŭs, īs.	ĭbŭs, īs.

8. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
			SINGULAR.		
N.	*mensa-* mensă	*servo-s* servŭs	*reg-s* rex	*fructu-s* fructŭs	*re-s* rēs
G.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servī	*reg-ĭs* rēgĭs	*fructu-is* fructūs	*re-i(s)* rēī
D.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servō	*reg-i* regī	*fructu-i* fructuī	*re-i* rēī
A.	*mensa-m* mensăm	*servo-m* servŭm	*reg-em* regĕm	*fructu-(e)m* fructŭm	*re-(e)m* rĕm
V.	*mensa-* mensă	*servo-e* [1] servĕ	*reg-s* rex	*fructu-s* fructŭs	*re-s* rēs
A.	*mensa-e* mensā	*servo-e* servō	*reg-e* regĕ	*fructu-e* fructū	*re-e* rē
			PLURAL.		
N.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servī	*reg-es* regēs	*fructu-es* fructūs	*re-es* rēs
G.	*mensa-um* mensārŭm	*servo-um* servōrŭm	*reg-um* regŭm	*fructu-um* fructuŭm	*re-um* rērŭm
D.	*mensa-is* mensīs	*servo-is* servīs	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs	*fructu-ibus* fructĭbŭs	*re-ibus* rēbŭs
A.	*mensa-es* mensās	*servo-es* servōs	*reg-es* regēs	*fructu-es* fructūs	*re-es* rēs
V.	*mensa-i* mensae	*servo-i* servī	*reg-es* regēs	*fructu-es* fructūs	*re-es* rēs
A.	*mensa-is* mensīs.	*servo-is* servīs.	*reg-ibus* regĭbŭs.	*fructu-ibus* fructĭbŭs.	*re-ibus* rēbŭs.

[1] Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. have *e* instead of *s*.

124. General Table of Gender.

I. Gender independent of ending.[1] Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of Males, of Rivers, Winds, and Months.	Names of Females, of Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees.	Indeclinable Nouns, and Words and Clauses *used as Indeclinable Nouns.*

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.[2]

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
	Declension I.	
as, es.	**a, e.**	
	Declension II.	
er, ir, us, os.		**um, on.**
	Declension III.	
o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*	**as, is, ys, x, es** *not increasing in the genitive,* **s** *preceded by a consonant.*	**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**
	Declension IV.	
us.		**u.**
	Declension V.	
	es.	

DECLENSION OF COMPOUND AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respŭblĭca* = *res publĭca*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jus jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *paterfamilias* = *păter familias* (42. 3), or *păter familiae*, the father of a family.

---

[1] For exceptions, see 36.

[2] For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

126. Paradigms.

		SINGULAR.	
N.	respublĭca	jusjurandŭm	păterfamiliās
G.	rēīpublĭcae	jūrisjurandī	patrisfamilias
D.	rēīpublĭcae	jurijurandō	patrīfamilias
A.	rempublĭcām	jusjurandŭm	patremfamilias
V.	respublĭcă	jusjurandŭm	paterfamilias
A.	rēpublĭcā	jurejurandō	patrēfamilias
		PLURAL.	
N.	respublĭcae	jurajurandă	patresfamilias
G.	rērumpublicārŭm		patrumfamilias
D.	rēbuspublĭcīs		patrībusfamilias
A.	respublĭcās	jurajurandă	patresfamilias
V.	respublĭcae	jurajurandă.	patresfamilias
A.	rēbuspublĭcīs.		patrībusfamilias.

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *res publĭca; păter familias* or *familiae.*

2. The parts of *respublĭca* are *res* of the 5th Decl. and *publĭca* of the 1st.

3. The parts of *jusjurandum* are *jus* of the 3d Decl. and *jurandum* of the 2d. *Jusjurandum* wants the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur.

4. The parts of *paterfamilias* are *păter* of the 3d Decl. and *familias* (42. 3), the old Gen. of *familia*, of the 1st. Sometimes, though rarely, the Gen *familiārum* is used in the plural: *patrefamiliārum* for *patres familias.*

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. Indeclinable Nouns have but one form for all cases.

II. Defective Nouns want certain parts.

III. Heteroclites (*heteroclita*[1]) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. Heterogeneous Nouns (*heterogenea*[2]) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

I. Indeclinable Nouns.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns.

1. The principal examples are:

1) *Fas*, right; *nĕfas*, wrong; *instar*, equality; *mane*, morning; *nihil*, nothing; *pondo*, pound; *sĕcus*, sex.

2) The letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, alpha, beta*, etc.

3) Foreign words: *Jacob, Illeberri*; though these are often declined:

[1] From ἕτερος, *another*, and κλίσις, *inflection*, i. e., of different declensions.

[2] From ἕτερος, *another*, and γένος, *gender*, i. e., of different genders.

Jacōbus, Jacōbi; Illeberris, Illeberri. *Jēsus* has *Jesum* in the accusative and *Jesu* in the other cases.

2. Some indeclinable nouns are also defective: *mānes* wants the Gen. and Dat.; *fas* and *nĕfas*, the Gen., Dat., and Abl.

II. Defective Nouns.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

I. Nouns defective in Number.

130. Plural wanting.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

1) Proper names (except those used only in the plural): *Cicĕro, Rōma.*

2) Abstract Nouns: *fides*, faith; *justitia*, justice.

3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

4) A few others: *meridies*, midday; *specimen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *ver*, spring; *vespĕra*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families, classes;* names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *aera*, vessels of copper; *avaritiae*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plur.* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the sing.

131. Singular wanting.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postĕri*, descendants; *gemĭni*, twins; *libĕri*, children, etc.

2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi; *Argi*, Argos, though the Sing. *Argos* occurs in Nom. and Acc.

3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchanalia, Olympia, Saturnalia.*

4) Many names not included in these classes. Such are:

Arma, arms; *divitiae*, riches; *exsequiae*, funeral rites; *exuviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indutiae*, truce; *insidiae*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mĭnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *munia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *reliquiae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *unus ex* with the plural: *unus ex lĭbĕris*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. Plural with Change of Meaning.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural: Thus

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Aedes, *temple;*	aedes, (1) *temples*, (2) *a house.*[1]
Aqua, *water;*	aquae, (1) *waters*, (2) *mineral springs.*

[1] *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

Auxilium, *help;*	auxilia, *auxiliaries.*
Bōnum, *a good thing, blessing;*	bona, *riches, goods.*
Carcer, *prison, barrier;*	carcĕres, *barriers of a race-course.*
Castrum, *castle, hut;*	castra, *camp.*
Comitium, *name of a part of the Roman forum;*	comitia, *the assembly held in the comitium.*
Cōpia, *plenty, force;*	copiae, (1) *stores,* (2) *troops.*
Facultas, *ability;*	facultātes, *wealth, means.*
Fīnis, *end;*	fines, *borders, territory.*
Fortūna, *fortune;*	fortunae, *possessions, wealth.*
Gratia, *gratitude, favor;*	gratiae, *thanks.*
Hortus, *garden;*	horti, (1) *gardens,* (2) *pleasure grounds.*
Impedimentum, *hindrance;*	impedimenta, (1) *hindrances,* (2) *baggage.*
Littĕra, *letter of alphabet;*	litterae, (1) *letters of alphabet,* (2) *epistle, writing, letters, literature.*
Lūdus, *play, sport;*	ludi, (1) *plays,* (2) *public spectacle.*
Mos, *custom;*	mōres, *manners, character.*
Natālis (dies), *birth-day;*	natales, *pedigree, parentage.*
Opĕra, *work, service;*	operae, *workmen.*
Pars, *part;*	partes, (1) *parts,* (2) *a party.*
Rostrum, *beak of ship;*	rostra, (1) *beaks,* (2) *the rostra or tribune in Rome* (adorned with beaks).
Sal, *salt;*	sāles, *witty sayings.*

II. Nouns defective in Case.

133. Some nouns are defective in case. Thus

1. Some want the *nominative, dative, and vocative singular:* (Ops), ŏpis, *help;* (vix or vicis), vĭcis, *change.*

2. Some want the *nominative and vocative singular:* (Daps), dăpis, *food;* (ditio), ditiōnis, *sway;* (frux), frūgis, *fruit;* (internecio), internecĭōnis, *destruction;* (pollis), pollĭnis, *flour.*

3. Some want the *genitive, dative, and ablative plural:* thus most nouns of the fifth declension. See 119. 5.

So also many neuters: *far, fel, mel, pus, rus, tus;* especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases in the singular also: *ĕpos, mĕlos.*

4. Some want the *genitive plural:* thus many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex, pax, pix; cor, cos, ros; sal, sol, lux.*

III. Nouns defective in Number and Case.

134. Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other: *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte; lues*, pestilence, has *lues, luem, lue.* Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular: *jussu*, by order; *mandātu*, by command; *rogātu*, by request.

III. Heteroclites.—Two Classes.

I. Heteroclites with one form in the nominative singular.

II. Heteroclites with different forms in the nominative singular.

Class First.

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 117.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jugĕrum*, an acre; regularly of the second Decl., except in the Gen. Plur., which is *jugĕrum*, according to the third. Other forms of the third are rare.

2. *Vas*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing., and of the second in the Plur.: *vas, vāsis;* plural, *vāsa, vasōrum.*

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia: Bacchanalia, Saturnalia;* which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrum* of the second. *Ancīle*, a shield, and a few other words also occur.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requie* of the fifth.

2. *Fāmes*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famĕ*, of the third).

Class Second.[1]

138. FORMS IN **ia** AND **ies.**—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *barbaria, barbaries*, barbarism; *duritia, durities*, hardness; *luxuria, luxuries*, luxury; *materia, materies*, material; *mollitia, mollities*, softness.

139. FORMS IN **us** AND **um.**—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *conātus, conātum*, an attempt; *eventus, eventum*, event; *praetextus, praetextum*, pretext.

140. Many other Examples might be added. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventus* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *juventa* (ae): *senectus* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *senecta* (ae): *paupertas* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *pauperies* (ēi).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.—TWO CLASSES.

I. With one form in the nominative singular.

II. With different forms in the nominative singular.

Class First.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jŏcus, a jest; plur., *joci* and *joca.*
lŏcus, place; " *loci*, topics, passages in books, places; *loca*, places.
sibĭlus, hissing; " *sibili;* poetic, *sibila.*

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

[1] Sometimes called *Redundant nouns*, or *abundantia.*

Carbăsus, linen; plural, *carbasi* and *carbasa*, sails, &c.
margarīta, pearl; " *margaritae* and *margarita*, *ōrum*.
ostrea, oyster; " *ostreae* and *ostrea*, *ōrum*.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender; thus

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:
Coelum, heaven; plural, *coeli*.
2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:
Frēnum, bridle; plur., *freni*, sometimes *frena*.
rastrum, rake; " *rastri*, " *rastra*.
3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:
Epŭlum, public feast; plur., *epulae*, meal, banquet.

Class Second.

144. FORMS IN **us** AND **um**.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentarius*, *commentarium*, commentary; *cubĭtus*, *cubĭtum*, cubit; *jugŭlus*, *jugŭlum*, throat.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *conātus* (us), *conātum* (i), effort; *menda* (ae), *mendum* (i), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bŏnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.	Fem., Dec. I.	Neut., Dec. II.
us [1] —,	**a**,	**um.**

They are declined as follows:

Bŏnus, *good.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bŏn**ŭs**	bŏn**ă**	bŏn**ŭm**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**
Acc.	bon**ŭm**	bon**ăm**	bon**ŭm**
Voc.	bon**ĕ**	bon**ă**	bon**ŭm**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**

PLURAL.

Nom.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Gen.	bon**ōrŭm**	bon**ārŭm**	bon**ōrŭm**
Dat.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**ă**
Voc.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ă**
Abl.	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs.**

Lĭber, *free.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	lĭbĕr	lĭbĕr**ă**	lĭbĕr**ŭm**
Gen.	lĭbĕr**ī**	lĭbĕr**ae**	lĭbĕr**ī**
Dat.	lĭbĕr**ō**	lĭbĕr**ae**	lĭbĕr**ō**
Acc.	lĭbĕr**ŭm**	lĭbĕr**ăm**	lĭbĕr**ŭm**
Voc.	lĭbĕr	lĭbĕr**ă**	lĭbĕr**ŭm**
Abl.	lĭbĕr**ō**	lĭbĕr**ā**	lĭbĕr**ō**

PLURAL.

Nom.	lĭbĕr**ī**	lĭbĕr**ae**	lĭbĕr**ă**
Gen.	liber**ōrŭm**	liber**ārŭm**	liber**ōrŭm**
Dat.	lĭbĕr**īs**	lĭbĕr**īs**	lĭbĕr**īs**
Acc.	lĭbĕr**ōs**	lĭbĕr**ās**	lĭbĕr**ă**
Voc.	lĭbĕr**ī**	lĭbĕr**ae**	lĭbĕr**ă**
Abl.	lĭbĕr**īs**	lĭbĕr**īs**	lĭbĕr**īs.**

[1] The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45. 1.

Aeger, *sick.*

	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	aegĕr	aegră	aegrŭm
Gen.	aegrī	aegrae	aegrī
Dat.	aegrō	aegrae	aegrō
Acc.	aegrŭm	aegrăm	aegrŭm
Voc.	aeger	aegră	aegrŭm
Abl.	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō ;
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Gen.	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
Dat.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs
Acc.	aegrōs	aegrās	aegră
Voc.	aegrī	aegrae	aegră
Abl.	aegrīs	aegrīs	aegrīs.

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45. 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45. 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *liber*:

1) *Asper*, rough; *lăcer*, torn; *măser*, wretched; *prosper*, prosperous; *tĕner*, tender; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it: *dexter*, *dextĕra* or *dextra*.

2) *Sătur*, sated; *satur*, *satŭra*, *satŭrum*.

3) Compounds in **fer** and **ger**: *mortifer*, deadly; *alĭger*, winged.

149. Irregularities.—These nine adjectives have in the singular **ĭus** in the genitive and **ī** in the dative:

Alius, another; *nullus*, no one; *sōlus*, alone; *tōtus*, whole; *ullus*, any; *ūnus*, one; *alter*, *-tĕra*, *-tĕrum*, the other; *ŭter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two); *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, neither.

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives: *aliae*, *nulli*, for alĭus, nullĭus; *altĕro*, *altĕrae*, for alteri.

2. *I* in *ius* in poetry is sometimes short; generally so in *alterius*.

3. *Alius* has *aliud* for *alium* in the neuter, and shortens the genitive *alĭius* into *alīus*.

4. Like *uter* are declined its compounds: *uterque*, *utervis*, *uterlĭbet*, *utercunque*. In *alterŭter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alterĭus utrĭus*; and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutrīus*.

II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
er,	**is,**	**e.**

They are declined as follows:

Acer, *sharp.*

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	ācĕr	ācrĭs	ācrĕ
G.	acrĭs	acrĭs	acrĭs
D.	acrī	acrī	acrī
A.	acrĕm	acrĕm	acrĕ
V.	acĕr	acrĭs	acrĕ
A.	acrī	acrī	acrī;

PLURAL.

N.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
G.	acrĭum	acrĭum	acrĭum
D.	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs
A.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
V.	acrēs	acrēs	acrĭă
A.	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs	acrĭbŭs.

1. Like *Acer* are declined:

1) *Alăcer*, lively; *campester*, level; *celĕber*, famous; *cĕler*,[1] swift; *equester*, equestrian; *paluster*, marshy; *pedester*, pedestrian; *pŭter*, putrid; *salūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *volūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in **er** designating the months: *Octōber*, *bris.*[2]

2. The Masculine in **is**, like the Fem., also occurs: *salūbris*, *silvestris*, for salūber, silvester.

---

[1] This retains *e* in declension: *celer*, *celĕris*, *celĕre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

[2] See also 87. 2.

3. These forms in er are analogous to those in *er* (whether nouns or adjectives) of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*. Thus *ager*, originally *agrus*, drops *us*, giving *agr*, and then inserts *e* to facilitate pronunciation, giving *ager*; so *acer*, originally *acris*, drops *is* and inserts *e*; *acr*, *acer*.

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

	M. and F.	Neut.	
1.	**is**	**e**,	for positives.
2.	**ior (or)**	**ius (us)**,	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad.* Tristior, *more sad.*[1]

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. tristĭs	tristĕ	*N.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
G. tristĭs	tristĭs	*G.* tristiōrĭs	tristiōrĭs
D. tristī	tristī	*D.* tristiōrī	tristiōrī
A. tristĕm	tristĕ	*A.* tristiōrĕm	tristiŭs
V. tristĭs	tristĕ	*V.* tristiŏr	tristiŭs
A. tristī	tristī;	*A.* tristiōrĕ (ī)	tristiōrĕ (ī);

PLURAL.

N. tristēs	tristĭă	*N.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
G. tristĭum	tristĭum	*G.* tristiōrŭm	tristiōrŭm
D. tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs	*D.* tristiōrĭbŭs	tristiōrĭbŭs
A. tristēs	tristĭă	*A.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
V. tristēs	tristĭă	*V.* tristiōrēs	tristiōră
A. tristĭbŭs	tristĭbŭs.	*A.* tristiōrĭbŭs	tristiōrĭbŭs.

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Fēlix, *happy.* Prūdens, *prudent.*

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	*Neut.*	*M. and F.*	*Neut.*
N. fēlix	fēlix	*N.* prūdens	prūdens
G. fēlīcĭs	fēlīcĭs	*G.* prudentĭs	prudentĭs
D. fēlīcī	fēlīcī	*D.* prudentī	prudentī

[1] Comparative. For the declension of *Plus*, see 165. 1.

A. felicĕm	felix	*A.* prudentĕm	prudens
V. felix	felix	*V.* prudens	prudens
A. felicĕ, *or* ī	felicĕ, *or* ī;	*A.* prudentĕ, *or* ī	prudentĕ, *or* ī;
	PLURAL.		
N. felicēs	felicīă	*N.* prudentēs	prudentīă
G. felicĭum	felicĭum	*G.* prudentĭum	prudentĭum
D. felicĭbŭs	felicĭbŭs	*D.* prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs
A. felicēs	felicīă	*A.* prudentēs	prudentīă
V. felicēs	felicīă	*V.* prudentēs	prudentīă
A. felicĭbŭs	felicĭbŭs.	*A.* prudentĭbŭs	prudentĭbŭs.

FORMATION OF CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

154. Adjectives of the third declension form their cases in general like nouns of the same endings, but present the following peculiarities:

I. *Genitive Singular.*

155. This presents a few irregularities, but in general the same as in nouns (58–83). Thus

1. The following in **ĕs** form the genitive not in the regular **ĭtis**, but in
   1) **ĕtis**:—*hĕbes, indĭgĕs, praepes, tĕres.*
   2) **ĭdis**:—*dĕses, rĕses.*
2. The following in **ēs** form it in
   1) **ēdis**:—compounds of *pes*, foot, as, *alīpes, bīpes, trīpes.*
   2) **ĕris**:—*pūbes, impūbes* (sometimes *is*).
   3) **ētis**:—*inquies, locŭples.*
3. Adjectives in **ceps** form it in
   1) **cĭpis**, if compounded of **capio**: *princeps, princĭpis.*
   2) **cĭpĭtis**, if compounded of **căput**: *anceps, ancipĭtis.*
4. Four in **or** form it in **ŏris**:—*mĕmor, immĕmor, bicorpor, tricorpor.*
5. Other examples.—(1) *Compos* and *impos* form it in *ŏtis.*—(2) Compounds in *cors* from *cor* have *cordis: concors, discors.*—(3) *Caelebs* has *caelĭbis; dis, ditis; intercus, intercŭtis; praecox, praecŏcis; vĕtus, vetĕris.*

II. *Ablative Singular.*

156. I. ENDING:—**ĕ** *or* **ī**, in comparatives and adjectives of one ending: *tristiōrĕ* or *rī*; *audācĕ* or *cī.*

II. " **ī**, in other adjectives: *acrī, tristī.*

1. Comparatives generally have *e*, and adjectives of one ending, generally *i*; but participles in *ans* and *ens* have only *e*, except when used adjectively.

2. The Ablative in **e** in many adjectives of one ending cannot be verified from ancient authors.—The ablative in **i** is in general preferable.

3. Some have only **e** in general use.—(1) *Pauper*, *paupĕre*, poor; *pūbes*, *pubĕre*, mature;—(2) those in **es**, G. **ĭtis** or **ĭdis**: *āles*, *dēses*, *dīves*, *sospes*, *superstes*;—(3) *caelebs*, *compos*, *impos*, *princeps*.

4. The Ablative in **e** sometimes occurs in poetry in positives of more than one ending: *cognomĭne* for *cognomĭnī*, like named.

III. *Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural of Neuters.*

157. I. Ending:—**iă** in positives: *acriă*, *tristiă*.
II. " **ă** in comparatives: *tristiōră*.

1. *Vĕtus*, old, has *vetĕră*; *complūres*, several, has *compluriă* or *complūră*.

2. The neuter plural is wanting in most adjectives of one ending, except those in *as*, *ns*, *rs*, *ax*, *ix*, *ox*, and numerals in *plex*.

IV. *Genitive Plural.*

158. I. Ending: **iŭm** in positives: *acrium*, *tristium*.
II. " **ŭm** in comparatives: *tristiōrum*.

1. Some adjectives want the genitive plural.

2. *Plūres*, more, and *complūres*, several, have **ium**.

3. The following have **um**:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only **e** in the ablative singular (156. 3): *pauper*, *paupĕrum*.

2) Those with the genitive in **ĕris**, **ŏris**, **ŭris**: *vĕtus*, *vetĕrum*, old; *mĕmor*, *memŏrum*, mindful; *cĭcur*, *cicŭrum*, tame.

3) Those in **ceps**: *anceps*, *ancĭpitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have **um**: *inops* (ops, ŏpum), *inŏpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. **Indeclinable**: *frūgi*, frugal, good; *nēquam*, worthless; *mille*, thousand.

II. **Defective**: (cetĕrus) *cetĕra*, *cetĕrum*, the other, the rest; (sons) *sontis*, guilty.

III. **Heteroclites.**—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilărus* and *hilăris*, joyful; *exanĭmus* and *exanĭmis*, lifeless.

1. The Latin has but few indeclinable adjectives, except numerals (175).

2. Some adjectives want

1) The nominative singular masculine: (cetĕrus) *cetĕra*, *cetĕrum*, the other; (ludĭcer) *ludicra*, *ludicrum*, sportive.

2) One or more cases in full: (semĭnex) *seminĕcis*, half dead, defective in the nominative; *exspes*, hopeless, only used in the nominative; *exlex*, law-

less, only in nominative and accusative; *pernox*, through the night, only in nominative and ablative.

3) The neuter gender or genitive plural. See 157. 2 and 158. 1.

4) The singular: *pauci, ae, a*, few; *plerique*, the most; the latter wants also the genitive plural, supplied by *plurimi*. The singular of *plerique* occurs, but is very rare. In good prose *extĕrus* wants the singular; and *infĕrus, supĕrus*, and *postĕrus* are used in the singular only in particular expressions: *mare infĕrum*, the lower sea, i. e., south of Italy; *mare supĕrum*, the upper sea, i. e., north of Italy, the Adriatic; *postĕrus* in expressions of time: *diem postĕrum*, the following day; *nocte postĕra*, on the following night.

3. In most heteroclites only one form is in common use in classic prose; in a few, as in the examples under 159. III., both forms are approved.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus, altior, altissĭmus*, high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most: doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissĭmus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

I. Terminational Comparison.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
iŏr,	**iŏr,**	**iŭs.**	**issĭmŭs,**	**issĭmă,**	**issĭmŭm.**

Examples.

Altus, altior, altissĭmus: *high, higher, highest.*
lēvis, levior, levissĭmus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

Irregular Terminational Comparison.

163. **Irregular Superlatives.**—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rĭmus** to the positive: *ācer, acrior, acerrĭmus*, sharp.

Vĕtus has *vetĕrrĭmus; mātūrus*, both *maturrĭmus* and *maturissĭmus; dexter, dextĭmus.*

2. Six in **ĭlis** add **lĭmus** to the stem:

Facĭlis,	difficĭlis;	*easy, difficult.*
simĭlis,	dissimĭlis;	*like, unlike.*
gracĭlis,	humĭlis;	*slender, low;*

thus: *facilis, facilior, facillĭmus. Imbecillis* has *imbecillĭmus*, but *imbecillus* is regular.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

Extĕrus,	exterior,	extrēmus	*and* extĭmus,	*outward.*
infĕrus,	inferior,	infĭmus	*and* īmus,	*lower.*
supĕrus,	superior,	suprēmus	*and* summus,	*upper.*
postĕrus,	posterior,	postrēmus	*and* postŭmus,	*next.*

164. Compounds in **dicus, ficus**, and **volus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissĭmus**, as if from forms in *ens*:

Maledĭcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissĭmus,	*slanderous.*
munifĭcus,	munificentior,	munificentissĭmus,	*liberal.*
benevŏlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissĭmus,	*benevolent.*

1. *Ēgēnus* and *provĭdus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ĕgens* and *providens:* hence *egentior, egentissĭmus*, etc.

2. *Mirificissĭmus* occurs as the superlative of *mirĭficus*, wonderful.

3. Many adjectives in *dicus* and *ficus* want the comparative and superlative.

165. **Special Irregularities of Comparison.**

Bŏnus,	melior,	optĭmus,	*good.*
mălus,	pējor,	pessĭmus,	*bad.*
magnus,	mājor,	maxĭmus,	*great.*
parvus,	mĭnor,	minĭmus,	*small.*
multus,	plus,	plurĭmus,	*much.*

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plūris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plūres* (m. and f.), *plūra* (n.), G. *plurium*, D. and A. *plurĭbus.*

2. *Dīves, frūgi, nēquam:*

Dīves,	{ divitior, / { ditior,	{ divitissĭmus, / { ditissĭmus,	*rich.*
frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissĭmus,	*frugal.*
nēquam,	nequior,	nequissĭmus,	*worthless.*

Defective Terminational Comparison.

166. **Positive Wanting:**

Citerior,	citĭmus,	*nearer.*	prior,	prīmus,	*former.*
deterior,	deterrĭmus,	*worse.*	propior,	proxĭmus,	*nearer.*
interior,	intĭmus,	*inner.*	ulterior,	ultĭmus,	*farther.*[1]
ocior,	ocissĭmus,	*swifter.*			

[1] These adjectives are formed from *citra, de, intra, Greek* ὠκύς, *prae* or *pro, prope, ultra.*

167. Comparative Wanting.—The comparative is wanting

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives:

Diversus,	diversissimus,	*different.*	nŏvus,	novissimus,	*new.*
falsus,	falsissimus,	*false.*	sācer,	sacerrimus,	*sacred.*
inclȳtus,	inclytissimus,	*renowned.*	vĕtus,	veterrimus,	*old.*

168. Superlative Wanting.—The superlative is wanting

1. In most verbals in **ĭlis** and **bĭlis**: *docĭlis*, *docilior*, docile; *optabĭlis*, *optabilior*, desirable. But of these

Some are compared in full: *amabĭlis*, *facĭlis*, *fertĭlis*, *mobĭlis*, *nobĭlis*, *utĭlis*, etc.

2. In many adjectives in **ālis** and **ĭlis**: *capitālis*, *capitalior*, capital; *civīlis*, *civilior*, civil.

3. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adolescens,	adolescentior,	minĭmus nātu,[1]	*young.*
juvĕnis,	junior,	minĭmus nātu,	*young.*
sĕnex,	senior,	maxĭmus nātu,[1]	*old.*

4. A few other adjectives want the superlative: *agrestis*, *alăcer*, *caecus*, *diuturnus*, *infīnĭtus*, *longinquus*, *opīmus*, *proclīvis*, *propinquus*, *salutāris*, *supīnus*, *surdus*, *tĕres*, *vulgāris*.

169. Both Comparative and Superlative Wanting.—Many adjectives have no terminational comparison:

1. Many from the nature of their signification, admitting no comparison; especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *adamantĭnus*, adamantine; *paternus*, paternal; *Romānus*, Roman; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *aestīvus*, of summer; *hibernus*, of winter.

2. Many others.—Thus

1) Those in *us preceded by a vowel*, except those in *quus*: *idoneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful. But a few in *uus* have the superlative: *assiduus*, *strenuus*. Other exceptions occur, especially in the poets: *pius*, *piissimus*; *egregius*, *egregiissimus*.

2) Many derivatives and compounds, especially (1) derivatives in *ālis*, *ĭlis*, *ŭlus*, *ōsus*, *ĭnus*, *ōrus*: *mortālis* (mors), mortal; (2) compounds of verbs or of nouns: *particeps* (capio), sharing; *magnanĭmus* (anĭmus), magnanimous.

3) Also *albus*, *almus*, *cadūcus*, *fĕrus*, *fessus*, *gnārus*, *lassus*, *mīrus*, *mutilus*, *nāvus*, *nefastus*, *rūdis*, etc.

II.—Adverbial Comparison.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *măgis*, more, and *maxĭme*, most, to the positive:

[1] Smallest or youngest in age; greatest or eldest in age. *Natu* is sometimes omitted.

Arduus, măgis arduus, maxĭme arduus, *arduous.*

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admŏdum, valde, oppĭdo,* very; *imprīmis, apprīme,* in the highest degree; *minus,* less; *mĭnime,* least: *valde magna,* very great. *Per* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very; perdifficilis,* very difficult; *praeclārus,* very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are sometimes used.—(1) With the comparative: *etiam,* even, *multo, longe,* much, far: *etiam diligentior,* even more diligent; *multo diligentior,* much more diligent.—(2) With the superlative: *multo, longe,* much, by far; *quam,* as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissĭmus,* by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissĭmus,* as diligent as possible.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

I. Numeral Adjectives.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. Cardinal Numbers: *ūnus,* one; *duo,* two.

2. Ordinal Numbers: *prīmus,* first; *secundus,* second.

3. Distributives: *singŭli,* one by one; *bīni,* two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added

1. Multiplicatives.—These are adjectives in *plex,* G. *plĭcis,* denoting so many fold: *simplex,* single; *duplex,* double; *triplex,* three-fold.

2. Proportionals.—These are declined like *bŏnus,* and denote so many times as great: *duplus,* twice as great; *triplus,* three times as great.

174. Table of Numeral Adjectives.

Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	prīmus,[1] *first,*	singŭli, *one by one.*
2. duo, duae, duo,	secundus,[1] *second,*	bīni, *two by two.*
3. tres, tria,	tertius, *third,*	terni (trini).
4. quattuor,	quartus, *fourth,*	quaterni.
5. quinque,	quintus, *fifth,*	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septem,	septĭmus,	septēni.
8. octo,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. nŏvem,	nōnus,	novēni.
10. dĕcem,	decĭmus,	dēni.
11. undĕcim,	undecĭmus,	undēni.

[1] *Prior* is used in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus.*

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
12. duodĕcim,	duodecĭmus,	duodēni.
13. tredĕcim *or* decem et tres,	tertius decĭmus,[6]	terni dēni.
14. quattuordĕcim,	quartus decĭmus,	quaterni dēni.
15. quindĕcim,	quintus decĭmus,	quīni dēni.
16. sedĕcim *or* sexdĕcim,[1]	sextus decĭmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendĕcim,[1]	septĭmus decĭmus,	septēni dēni.
18. duodeviginti,[2]	duodevicesĭmus,[7]	duodevicēni.
19. undeviginti,[2]	undevicesĭmus,[7]	undevicēni.
20. viginti,	vicesĭmus,[8]	vicēni.
21. viginti ūnus, / ūnus et viginti,[3]	vicesĭmus prīmus, / ūnus et vicesĭmus,[3]	vicēni singŭli. / singŭli et vicēni.
22. viginti duo, / duo et viginti,	vicesĭmus secundus, / alter et vicesĭmus,	vicēni bīni. / bīni et vicēni.
30. triginta,	tricesĭmus,[8]	tricēni.
40. quadraginta,	quadragesĭmus,	quadragēni.
50. quinquaginta,	quinquagesĭmus,	quinquagēni.
60. sexaginta,	sexagesĭmus,	sexagēni.
70. septuaginta,	septuagesĭmus,	septuagēni.
80. octoginta,	octogesĭmus,	octogēni.
90. nonaginta,	nonagesĭmus,	nonagēni.
100. centum,	centesĭmus,	centēni.
101. centum ūnus, / centum et ūnus,[4]	centesĭmus prīmus, / centesĭmus et prīmus	centēni singŭli. / centēni et singŭli.
200. ducenti, ae, a,	ducentesĭmus,	ducēni.
300. trecenti,	trecentesĭmus,	trecēni.
400. quadringenti,	quadringentesĭmus,	quadringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentesĭmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentesĭmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentesĭmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentesĭmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentesĭmus,	nongēni.
1,000. mille,	millesĭmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000. duo millia,[5]	bis millesĭmus,	bīna millia.

[1] Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et sex; decem et septem.*

[2] Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo; decem et novem;* so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *triginta*, etc., or by addition to *viginti; duodetriginta* or *octo et viginti.*

[3] If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

[4] In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti*, 1,120.

[5] Sometimes *bina millia* or *bis mille.*

[6] Sometimes *decimus* precedes with or without *et: decimus et tertius* or *decimus tertius.*

[7] Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decimus* and *nonus decimus.*

[8] Sometimes written with *g*: *vigesĭmus; trigesĭmus.*

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
10,000. dĕcem millia,	decies millesĭmus,	dēna millia.
100,000. centum millia,	centies millesĭmus,	centēna millia.
1,000,000. decies centēna millia,[1]	decies centies millesĭmus,	decies centēna millia.

1. *Ordinals with Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. *Distributives* are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece; ternos denarios accepĕrunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bīna castra*, two camps. Here for *singŭli* and *terni*, *ūni* and *trīni* are used: *unae littĕrae*, one letter; *trinae littĕrae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bīni scўphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bīna hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for duodĕcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordĕcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. On the declension of cardinals observe

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum* are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

1. Unus, *one*.

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
N.	ūnŭs,	ūnă,	ūnŭm,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūnă,
G.	unīŭs,	unīŭs,	unīŭs,	unōrŭm,	unārŭm,	unōrŭm,
D.	unī,	unī,	unī,	unīs,	unīs,	unīs,
A.	unŭm,	unăm,	unŭm,	unōs,	unās,	ună,
V.	unĕ,	ună,	unŭm,			
A.	unō,	unā,	unō;	unīs,	unīs,	unīs.

2. Duo, *two*.

N.	duŏ,	duae,	duŏ,
G.	đuōrŭm,	duārŭm,	duōrŭm,[2]

3. Tres, *three*.

trēs, *m. and f.*		triă, *n.*
triŭm,		triŭm,

[1] Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia: centies centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

[2] *Duōrum* and *duārum* are sometimes shortened to *duum*.

D.	duōbŭs,	duābŭs, duōbŭs,	trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs,
A.	duōs, duŏ,	duās, duŏ,	trēs,	trĭă,
A.	duōbŭs,	duābŭs, duōbŭs.	trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littĕrae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plūrimi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

177. Hundreds, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bŏnus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* is used both as an adjective and as a substantive. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *mărе* (50): *millia*, *millium*, *millĭbus*.

With the *substantive Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hominum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trecentī milĭtes*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus* and distributives like the *plural* of *bonus*, but the latter often have *um* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *bīnum* for *binōrum*.

180. Numeral Symbols.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	16.	XVI.	101.	CI.
2.	II.	17.	XVII.	200.	CC.
3.	III.	18.	XVIII.	300.	CCC.
4.	IV.	19.	XIX.	400.	CCCC.
5.	V.	20.	XX.	500.	IↃ, *or* D.
6.	VI.	21.	XXI.	600.	DC.
7.	VII.	22.	XXII.	700.	DCC.
8.	VIII.	30.	XXX.	800.	DCCC.
9.	IX.	40.	XL.	900.	DCCCC.
10.	X.	50.	L.	1,000.	CIↃ, *or* M.
11.	XI.	60.	LX.	2,000.	CIↃCIↃ, *or* MM.
12.	XII.	70.	LXX.	10,000.	CCIↃↃ.
13.	XIII.	80.	LXXX.	100,000.	CCCIↃↃↃ.
14.	XIV.	90.	XC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIↃↃↃↃ.
15.	XV.	100.	C.		

1. **Latin Numeral Symbols** are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IↃ *or* D = 500; CIↃ *or* M = 1,000.[1]

[1] Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{\text{II}} = 2{,}000$; $\overline{\text{V}} = 5{,}000$.

2. **In the Combination of these symbols**, except IↃ, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5−1); VI = 6 (5+1).

3. **In the Combination of IↃ** observe

1) That each Ↄ (inverted C) after IↃ increases the value ten-fold: IↃ = 500; IↃↃ = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IↃↃↃ = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as Ↄ stands after it: IↃ = 500; CIↃ = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IↃↃ = 5,000; CCIↃↃ = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IↃ = 500; IↃC = 600; IↃCC = 700.

II. Numeral Adverbs.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sĕmel, *once*	15. quinquiesdecies / quindecies	80. octogies
2. bis, *twice*		90. nonagies
3. ter, *three times*	16. sexiesdecies / sedecies	100. centies
4. quăter		101. centies semel
5. quinquies	17. septiesdecies	200. ducenties
6. sexies	18. duodevicies / octiesdecies	300. trecenties
7. septies		400. quadringenties
8. octies	19. undevicies / noviesdecies	500. quingenties
9. nŏvies		600. sexcenties
10. dĕcies	20. vicies	700. septingenties
11. undecies	21. sĕmel et vicies	800. octingenties
12. duodecies	22. bis et vicies	900. noningenties [1]
13. terdecies / tredecies	30. tricies	1,000. millies
	40. quadragies	2,000. bis millies
14. quaterdecies / quattuordecies	50. quinquagies	10,000. decies millies
	60. sexagies	100,000. centies millies
	70. septuagies	1,000,000. millies millies.

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies;* the tens however with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies.*

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *o* is formed from the ordinals: *prīmum, prīmo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium, tertio*, for the third time.

---

[1] Also written *nongenties.*

[2] *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times.*

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

I. Personal Pronouns.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ĕgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

N.	ĕgŏ	tū	
G.	meī	tuī	suī
D.	mihĭ	tĭbĭ	sĭbĭ
A.	mē	tē	sē
V.		tū	
A.	mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

N.	nōs	vōs	
G.	nostrŭm / nostrī [1]	vestrŭm / vestrī [1]	suī
D.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sĭbĭ
A.	nōs	vōs	sē
V.		vōs	
A.	nōbīs.	vōbis.	sē.

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

[1] On the use of these two forms see 446. 8.

3. **Emphatic Forms** in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egŏmet*, I myself; *mihĭmet*, *tĭbimet*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tūte* and *tutĕmet*, for tūmet.

4. **Reduplicated Forms**:—*sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmĕ*, for se, te, me.

5. **Ancient** and **Rare Forms**:—*mīs* for mei; *tīs* for tui; *mī* and *mē* for mihi; *mēhe*, *med*, and *mepte* for me; *ted* for te.

6. **Cum**, when used with the *ablative* of these pronouns, is appended to them: *mēcum*, *tēcum*.

II. Possessive Pronouns.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

meus, *my*,	noster, *our*,
tuus, *thy*, *your*,	vester, *your*,
suus, *his*, *her*, *its*,	suus, *their*.

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: *meus*, *mea*, *meum*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

1. **Emphatic Forms**, in *pte* and *met* occur, especially in the Abl. Sing.: *suapte*, *suāmet*.

2. **The Patrials**, *nostras*, of our country, and *vestras*, of your country, are also possessives. They have the genitive in *ātis*, and are declined as adjectives of Decl. III., but are little used.

3. **Cujus** and **Cujas**.—*Cujus* (a, um, whose?) and the patrial *cujas* (ātis, of what country?) also belong to possessives, though, not like other possessives, formed from personal pronouns, but from the interrogative *quis*, *cujus*. See 188.

III. Demonstrative Pronouns.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hic, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*, *is*, *idem*.

They are declined as follows:

Hic, *this*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	hĭc	haec	hŏc	hī	hae	hæc
G.	hujŭs	hujŭs	hujŭs	hōrŭm	hārŭm	hōrŭm
D.	huic	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
A.	hunc	hanc	hŏc	hōs	hās	haec
V.						
A.	hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

Illĕ, *he* or *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	illĕ	illă	illŭd	illī	illae	illă
G.	illĭŭs	illĭŭs	illĭŭs	illōrŭm	illārŭm	illōrŭm
D.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
A.	illŭm	illăm	illŭd	illōs	illās	illă
V.						
A.	illō	illā	illō;	illīs	illīs	illīs.

Istĕ, *that.*

Istĕ, *that*, is declined like *illĕ*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

Ipsĕ, *self, he.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ipsĕ	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsă
G.	ipsĭŭs	ipsĭŭs	ipsĭŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
A.	ipsŭm	ipsăm	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
V.						
A.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.

Is, *he, that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭs	eă	ĭd	iī	eae	eă
G.	ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D.	eī	eī	eī	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)
A.	eŭm	eăm	ĭd	eōs	eās	eă
V.						
A.	eō	eā	eō;	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs)	iīs (eīs).

Idem, *the same.*

Idem, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *ĭdem* and *iddem* to *ĭdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	ĭdĕm	eădĕm	ĭdĕm	iīdĕm	eaedĕm	eădĕm
G.	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	ejusdĕm	eōrundĕm	eārundĕm	eōrundĕm
D.	eīdĕm	eidĕm	eīdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm [1]
A.	eundĕm	eandĕm	ĭdĕm	eōsdĕm	eāsdĕm	eădĕm
V.						
A.	eōdĕm	eādĕm	eōdĕm;	iisdĕm	iisdĕm	iisdĕm.[1]

[1] Sometimes *eisdem* in all genders. Iidem and iisdem are in poetry dissyllables, and are sometimes written idem and isdem.

1. **Emphatic Forms** in *ce* occur in the several cases of *hic* and sometimes in other demonstratives: *hicce, haecce, hocce* (also *hice, haece* or *haec*, etc.), *hujusce, hosce, hisce; harumce, harunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hārunc* (*e* dropped). Before the interrogative *ne, ce* becomes *ci:* hiccine, hoscine.

2. **Illic** and **istic** or **isthic** for *ille* and *iste* occur. They are declined alike, and are used only in certain cases. Thus

Sing.,	*Nom.*	illīc,	illaec, illōc or illūc,
	Acc.	illunc,	illanc, illōc,
	Abl.	illōc,	illāc, illōc;
Plur.		illaec, *generally Neut., sometimes Fem.*	

3. **Ancient** and **Rare Forms**:

1) Of ILLE and ISTE: *illi, illae, illi*, Gen. for illius; *isti, istae, isti* for istius; *illae* and *istae*, Dat. Fem. for illi and isti; also forms from *ollus* for ille: *olli, olla, ollos*, etc.

2) Of IPSE, compounded of *is* and *pse* (is-pse = ipse); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse, eampse*, Abl. *eopse, eapse;* with re: *re eapse, reapse* for re ipsa, in reality; also *ipsus, a, um*, etc., for ipse, a, um.

3) Of Is: *eii, eae, eii*, Dat. for ei; *iibus* (*ibus*), *eābus, iibus* (*ibus*) for iis.

4) SYNCOPATED FORMS, compounded of *ecce* or *en*, lo, see, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is; eccum* for ecce eum; *eccam* for ecce eam; *eccos* for ecce eos; *eccillum*, ecce illum, *eccillam*, ecce illam; *ellum*, en illum; *ellam*, en illam.

4. **Demonstrative Adjectives**: *tālis*, e, such; *tantus*, a, um, so great; *tŏt*, so many; *tōtus*, a, um, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mŏdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind) is often used: *hujusmŏdi, ejusmŏdi*, of this kind, such; *illiusmŏdi, istiusmŏdi*, of that kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quī	quae	quŏd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quŏd	quōs	quās	quae
V.						
A.	quō	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

1. **Ancient** and **Rare Forms**: *quojus* and *quoi* for cujus and cuī; *quī* for quo, qua, quo; *quīs* (queis) for quĭbus.

2. **Cum**, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

3. **Cujus**, a, um, *whose*, as a possessive formed from the genitive *cujus*, sometimes occurs.

4. **Quicunque** and **Quisquis**, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicunque* (quicumque) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis, quidquid* (quicquid), *quōquō*; but an old genitive cuicui for cujuscujus occurs.

5. **Compounds resolved.**—*Quīcunque* and similar compounds are sometimes resolved and their parts separated by one or more words: *qua re cunque*.

6. **Uter** and **Utercunque**, *which* and *whichever*, also occur with the force of relatives.

7. **Relative Adjectives**: *quālis*, e, such as; *quantus*, a, um, so great; *quŏt*, as many as; *quŏtus*, a, um, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *qualisquālis, qualiscunque; quantusquantus, quantuscunque; quotquot, quotcunque; quotuscunque.*

Quotquot is indeclinable; in the other double forms both parts are declined; in the forms in *cunque*, of course only the first part is declined.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mŏdi* is often used: *cujusmŏdi* (sometimes *cuimŏdi*), *cujuscemŏdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscunquemŏdi, cuicuimŏdi* (for *cujuscujusmŏdi*, 4), of whatever kind.

V. Interrogative Pronouns.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

Quis (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	quĭs	quae	quĭd	quī	quae	quae
G.	cujŭs	cujŭs	cujŭs	quōrŭm	quārŭm	quōrŭm
D.	cuī	cuī	cuī	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs
A.	quĕm	quăm	quĭd	quōs	quās	quae
V.						
A.	quŏ	quā	quō;	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs	quĭbŭs.

Quī (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui.*

1. **Quis** and **Quem** sometimes occur as feminine forms.

2. **Qui** as an *ablative* with an adverbial force in the sense of *how?* sometimes occurs. The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative, 187. 1.

3. **Compounds** of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam, quīnam, ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae.*

4. **Interrogative Adjectives**: (1) *Quālis*, e, what? *quantus*, a, um, how great? *quŏt*, how many? *quŏtus*, a, um, of what number? *uter*, utra, utrum, which (of two)? See 149. (2) The Possessive interrogative, *cujus*, a, um, whose? and the Patrial *cujas*, ātis, of what country?

Cujus is defective and little used. It has the Nom. and Acc. Sing., and in the feminine also the Abl. Sing. and the Nom. and Accus. Plur.

VI. Indefinite Pronouns.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui* with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.

1. **Quis** and **Qui** are generally used after *si*, *nĭsi*, *ne*, and *num*; si quis, si qui. But they also occur without such accompaniment.

2. **Qua** for **Quae.**—After *si*, *nĭsi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua*: si quae, si qua.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites:*

alĭquis,	alĭqua,	alĭquid	*or* alĭquod,	*some, some one.*
quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam [1]	*or* quodpiam,	*some, some one.*
quĭdam,	quaedam,	quiddam	*or* quoddam,	*certain, certain one.*
quisquam,	quaequam	quidquam,[1]		*any one.*

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque,	quaeque,	quidque[2]	*or* quodque,	*every, every one.*
quīvis,	quaevis,	quidvis	*or* quodvis,	*any one you please.*
quilĭbet,	quaelĭbet,	quidlĭbet	*or* quodlĭbet,	*any one you please.*

1. **Declension.**—It may be remarked

1) That these compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2) That *alĭquis* has *alĭqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Alĭqui* for *aliquis* occurs.

3) That *quĭdam* generally changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

4) That *quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5) That *ūnus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque, unaquaeque*, etc.

2. **Other Indefinites** are: *alius, alter, ŭter, alterŭter, neuter, ullus, nullus, nemo.*

3. **Other General Indefinites** may be formed from uter: *uterque*, both, each; *utervis, uterlĭbet*, either you please.

4. **Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives**: *qualislĭbet*, qualelĭbet, of any sort; *aliquantus*, a, um, of some size; *alĭquot* (indeclinable), several.

For *qualislĭbet* the Gen. of an indefinite pronoun with *mŏdi* may be used: *cujusdammŏdi*, of some kind.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. Verbs in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lĕgit*, he reads.

[1] Sometimes written respectively, *quippiam* and *quicquam*.

[2] Sometimes written *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action: *servum verbĕrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:

I. The ACTIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acting or existing: *păter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

II. The PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. **Passive Wanting.**—Intransitive Verbs generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301. 3.

2. **Active Wanting.**—Deponent Verbs[1] are Passive in form, but not in sense: *lŏquor*, to speak. But see 221.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. The INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *legitne*, is he reading?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

[1] So called from *depŏno*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

1. The INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number: *legĕre*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandi*, of loving; *amandi causa*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular: amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future—*amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future—*amātus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavĕram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavĕro*, I shall have loved.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect** and **Historical Perfect.**—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite;* and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite.*

2. **Principal** and **Historical.**—Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*:—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*:—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.**—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

IV. Numbers.

199. There are two numbers: Singular and Plural.[1]

V. Persons.

200. There are three persons: First, Second, and Third.[1]

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āre,	**ēre,**	**ĕre,**	**ire.**

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb,—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine,—are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb

1. The Present Stem[2] may be found by dropping the infinitive ending: *amāre;* stem, *am.*

2. The Principal Parts may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The Entire Conjugation of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of proper endings.[3]

---

[1] As in Nouns. See 87.

[2] For fuller treatment of stems, see 241. 242.

[3] In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am.*

Sum is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sŭm,	essĕ,	fuī,	—.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense.

I am.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sŭm,	*I am,*	sŭmŭs,	*we are,*
ĕs,	*thou art,*[1]	estĭs,	*you are,*
est,	*he is;*	sunt,	*they are.*

Imperfect.

I was.

ĕrăm,	*I was,*	ĕrāmŭs,	*we were,*
erās,	*thou wast,*	erātĭs,	*you were,*
erăt,	*he was;*	erant,	*they were.*

Future.

I shall or *will be.*

ĕrŏ,	*I shall be,*	ĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall be,*
erĭs,	*thou wilt be,*	erĭtĭs,	*you will be,*
erĭt,	*he will be;*	erunt,	*they will be.*

Perfect.

I have been, was.

fuī,	*I have been,*	fuīmŭs,	*we have been,*
fuistī,	*thou hast been,*	fuistĭs,	*you have been,*
fuĭt,	*he has been;*	fuērunt, fuērĕ,	*they have been.*

Pluperfect.

I had been.

fuĕrăm,	*I had been,*	fuĕrāmŭs,	*we had been,*
fuĕrās,	*thou hadst been,*	fuĕrātĭs,	*you had been,*
fuĕrăt,	*he had been;*	fuĕrant,	*they had been.*

Future Perfect.

I shall or *will have been.*

fuĕrŏ,	*I shall have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we shall have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you will have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he will have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they will have been.*

[1] Or *you are; thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse; in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sĭm,	*I may be,*	sīmŭs,	*we may be,*
sīs,	*thou mayst be,*	sītĭs,	*you may be,*
sĭt	*he may be;*	sint,	*they may be.*

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be.*

essĕm,	*I might be,*	essēmŭs,	*we might be,*
essēs,	*thou mightst be,*	essētĭs,	*you might be,*
essĕt,	*he might be;*	essent,	*they might be.*

PERFECT.

I may or *can have been.*

fuĕrĭm,	*I may have been,*	fuĕrĭmŭs,	*we may have been,*
fuĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have been,*	fuĕrĭtĭs,	*you may have been,*
fuĕrĭt,	*he may have been;*	fuĕrint,	*they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been.*

fuissĕm,	*I might have been,*	fuissēmŭs,	*we might have been,*
fuissēs,	*thou mightst have been,*	fuissētĭs,	*you might have been.*
fuissĕt,	*he might have been;*	fuissent,	*they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ĕs,	*be thou,*		estĕ,	*be ye,*
FUT.	estŏ,	*thou shalt be,*[1]		estōtĕ,	*ye shall be,*
	estŏ,	*he shall be*[1]*;*		suntŏ,	*they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. essĕ, *to be,*
PERF. fuissĕ, *to have been,*
FUT. fŭtūrŭs[2] essĕ, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. fŭtūrŭs,[2] *about to be.*

1. **Rare Forms** are: *fŏrĕm, fŏrēs, fŏrĕt, fŏrent,* and *fŏrĕ,* for *essem, esses, esset, essent,* and *futūrus esse.* See 297. III. 2.

2. **Antiquated Forms** are: *siĕm, siēs, siĕt, sient,* for *sim, sis, sit, sint;* also *fuăm, fuās, fuăt, fuant,* for the same.

---

[1] The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres. or with *let: be thou; let him be.*

[2] *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus.* So in the Infinitive: *futūrus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
ămŏ,	**ămārĕ,**	**ămāvī,**	**ămātŭm.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămŏ,	*I love,*	**ămāmŭs,**	*we love,*
ămās,	*thou lovest,*	**ămātĭs,**	*you love,*
ămăt,	*he loves;*	**ămant,**	*they love.*

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

ămābăm,	*I was loving,*	**ămābāmŭs,**	*we were loving,*
ămābās,	*thou wast loving,*	**ămābātĭs,**	*you were loving,*
ămābăt,	*he was loving;*	**ămābant,**	*they were loving.*

FUTURE.

I shall or *will love.*

ămābŏ,	*I shall love,*	**ămābĭmŭs,**	*we shall love,*
ămābĭs,	*thou wilt love,*	**ămābĭtĭs,**	*you will love,*
ămābĭt,	*he will love;*	**ămābunt,**	*they will love.*

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

ămāvī,	*I have loved,*	**ămāvĭmŭs,**	*we have loved,*
ămāvistī,	*thou hast loved,*	**ămāvistĭs,**	*you have loved,*
ămāvĭt,	*he has loved;*	**ămāvērunt, ērĕ,**	*they have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

ămāvĕrăm,	*I had loved,*	**ămāvĕrāmŭs,**	*we had loved,*
ămāvĕrās,	*thou hadst loved,*	**ămāvĕrātĭs,**	*you had loved,*
ămāvĕrăt,	*he had loved;*	**ămāvĕrant,**	*they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have loved.*

ămāvĕrŏ,	*I shall have loved,*	**ămāvĕrĭmŭs,**	*we shall have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou wilt have loved,*	**ămāvĕrĭtĭs,**	*you will have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he will have loved;*	**ămāvĕrint,**	*they will have loved.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
ămĕm,	*I may love,*	ămēmŭs,	*we may love,*
ămēs,	*thou mayst love,*	ămētĭs,	*you may love,*
ămĕt,	*he may love;*	ăment,	*they may love.*

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should love.*

ămārĕm,	*I might love,*	ămārēmŭs,	*we might love,*
ămārēs,	*thou mightst love,*	ămārētĭs,	*you might love,*
ămārĕt,	*he might love;*	ămārent,	*they might love.*

PERFECT.

I may or *can have loved.*

ămāvĕrĭm,	*I may have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭmŭs,	*we may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭs,	*thou mayst have loved,*	ămāvĕrĭtĭs,	*you may have loved,*
ămāvĕrĭt,	*he may have loved;*	ămāvĕrĭnt,	*they may have loved.*

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have loved.*

ămāvissĕm,	*I might have loved,*	ămāvissēmŭs,	*we might have loved,*
ămāvissēs,	*thou mightst have loved,*	ămāvissētĭs,	*you might have loved,*
ămāvissĕt,	*he might have loved;*	ămāvissent,	*they might have loved.*

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ămā, *love thou;*	ămātĕ,	*love ye.*
FUT.	ămātō, *thou shalt love,*	ămātōtĕ,	*ye shall love,*
	ămātō, *he shall love;*	ămantō,	*they shall love.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ămārĕ,	*to love.*
PERF.	ămāvissĕ,	*to have loved.*
FUT.	ămātūrŭs[2] essĕ,	*to be about to love.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ămans,[1]	*loving.*
FUT.	ămātūrŭs,[2]	*about to love.*

GERUND.

Gen.	ămandī,	*of loving,*
Dat.	ămandō,	*for loving,*
Acc.	ămandŭm,	*loving,*
Abl.	ămandō,	*by loving.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	ămātŭm,	*to love,*
Abl.	ămātū,	*to love, be loved.*

[1] Decline like *prudens*, 158. [2] Decline like *bonus*, 148.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămŏr,	**ămārī,**	**ămātŭs sŭm.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămŏr	**ămāmŭr**
ămārĭs, *or* **rĕ**	**ămāmĭnī**
ămātŭr;	**ămantŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ămābăr	**ămābāmŭr**
ămābārĭs, *or* **rĕ**	**ămābāmĭnī**
ămābātŭr;	**ămābantŭr.**

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be loved.*

ămābŏr	**ămābĭmŭr**
ămābĕrĭs, *or* **rĕ**	**ămābĭmĭnī**
ămābĭtŭr;	**ămābuntŭr.**

PERFECT.

I have been or *was loved.*

ămātŭs sŭm [1]	**ămātī sŭmŭs**
ămātŭs ĕs	**ămātī estĭs**
ămātŭs est;	**ămātī sunt.**

PLUPERFECT.

I had been loved.

ămātŭs ĕrăm [1]	**ămātī ĕrāmŭs**
ămātŭs ĕrās	**ămātī ĕrātĭs**
ămātŭs ĕrăt;	**ămātī ĕrant.**

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been loved.*

ămātŭs ĕrŏ [1]	**ămātī ĕrĭmŭs**
ămātŭs ĕrĭs	**ămātī ĕrĭtĭs**
ămātŭs ĕrĭt;	**ămātī ĕrunt.**

[1] *Fui, fuisti,* etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es,* etc., thus, *amātus fui* for *amātus sum.* So *fuĕram, fuĕras,* etc., for *ĕram, ĕras,* etc.; also *fuĕro, fuĕris,* etc., for *ĕro, ĕris,* etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămĕr	ămēmŭr
ămĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	ămēmĭnĭ
ămētŭr;	ămentŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be loved.*

ămārĕr	ămārēmŭr
ămārērĭs, *or* rĕ	ămārēmĭnĭ
ămārētŭr;	ămārentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămātŭs sĭm [1]	ămātī sīmŭs
ămātŭs sĭs	ămātī sītĭs
ămātŭs sĭt;	ămātī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been loved.*

ămātŭs essĕm [1]	ămātī essēmŭs
ămātŭs essēs	ămātī essētĭs
ămātŭs essĕt;	ămātī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămārĕ, *be thou loved;*	ămāmĭnĭ, *be ye loved.*
FUT. ămātŏr, *thou shalt be loved,* ămātŏr, *he shall be loved;*	ămantŏr, *they shall be loved.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămārī, *to be loved.*	
PERF. ămātŭs essĕ, [1] *to have been loved.*	PERF. ămātŭs, *having been loved.*
FUT. ămātŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*	FUT. ămandŭs, *to be loved.*

[1] *Fuĕrim, fuĕris,* etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis,* etc. So also *fuissem, fuisses,* etc., for *essem, esses,* etc.; rarely *fuisse* for *esse.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mŏneŏ,	mŏnērĕ,	mŏnuī,	mŏnĭtŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏneŏ	mŏnēmŭs
mŏnēs	mŏnētis
mŏnĕt;	mŏnent.

IMPERFECT.

I was advising.

mŏnēbăm	mŏnēbāmŭs
mŏnēbās	mŏnēbātis
mŏnēbăt;	mŏnēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will advise.*

mŏnēbŏ	mŏnēbĭmŭs
mŏnēbĭs	mŏnēbĭtis
mŏnēbĭt;	mŏnēbunt.

PERFECT.

I advised or *have advised.*

mŏnuĭ	mŏnuĭmŭs
mŏnuĭstī	mŏnuistis
mŏnuĭt;	mŏnuērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had advised.

mŏnuĕrăm	mŏnuĕrāmŭs
mŏnuĕrās	mŏnuĕrātis
mŏnuĕrăt;	mŏnuĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have advised.*

mŏnuĕrŏ	mŏnuĕrĭmŭs
mŏnuĕrĭs	mŏnuĕrĭtis
mŏnuĕrĭt;	mŏnuĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăm**	mŏne**āmŭs**
mŏne**ās**	mŏne**ātis**
mŏne**ăt**;	mŏne**ant.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should advise.*

mŏn**ērĕm**	mŏn**ērēmŭs**
mŏn**ērēs**	mŏn**ērētis**
mŏn**ērĕt**;	mŏn**erent.**

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mŏnu**ĕrim**	mŏnu**ĕrimŭs**
mŏnu**ĕris**	mŏnu**ĕritis**
mŏnu**ĕrit**;	mŏnu**ĕrint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have advised.*

mŏnu**issĕm**	mŏnu**issēmŭs**
mŏnu**issēs**	mŏnu**issētis**
mŏnu**issĕt**;	mŏnu**issent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	mŏn**ē**, *advise thou;*	mŏn**ētĕ**, *advise ye.*
FUT.	mŏn**ētŏ**, *thou shalt advise,* mŏn**ētŏ**, *he shall advise;*	mŏn**ētōtĕ**, *ye shall advise,* mŏn**entŏ**, *they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	mŏn**ērĕ**, *to advise.*
PERF.	mŏnu**issĕ**, *to have advised.*
FUT.	mŏnĭt**ūrŭs essĕ**, *to be about to advise.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	mŏn**ens**, *advising.*
FUT.	mŏnĭt**ūrŭs**, *about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen.	mŏn**endī**, *of advising,*
Dat.	mŏn**endŏ**, *for advising,*
Acc.	mŏn**endŭm**, *advising,*
Abl.	mŏn**endŏ**, *by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	mŏnĭt**ūm**, *to advise,*
Abl.	mŏnĭt**ū**, *to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mŏneŏr,	mŏnērī,	mŏnĭtŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏneŏr	mŏnēmŭr
mŏnērĭs, *or* rĕ	mŏnēmĭnī
mŏnētŭr;	mŏnentŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was advised.

mŏnēbăr	mŏnēbāmŭr
mŏnēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	mŏnēbāmĭnī
mŏnēbātŭr;	mŏnēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be advised.*

mŏnēbŏr	mŏnēbĭmŭr
mŏnēbĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	mŏnēbĭmĭnī
mŏnēbĭtŭr;	mŏnēbuntŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been or *was advised.*

mŏnĭtŭs sŭm [1]	mŏnĭtī sŭmŭs
mŏnĭtŭs ĕs	mŏnĭtī estĭs
mŏnĭtŭs est;	mŏnĭtī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been advised.

mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăm [1]	mŏnĭtī ĕrāmŭs
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrās	mŏnĭtī ĕrātĭs
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt;	mŏnĭtī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been advised.*

mŏnĭtŭs ĕrŏ [1]	mŏnĭtī ĕrĭmŭs
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭs	mŏnĭtī ĕrĭtĭs
mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt;	mŏnĭtī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mŏne**ăr**	mŏne**āmŭr**
mŏne**ārĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏne**āmĭnĭ**
mŏne**ātŭr**;	mŏne**antŭr.**

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be advised.*

mŏnē**rĕr**	mŏnē**rēmŭr**
mŏnē**rērĭs**, *or* **rĕ**	mŏnē**rēmĭnĭ**
mŏnē**rētŭr**;	mŏnē**rentŭr.**

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mŏnĭtŭs **sĭm** [1]	mŏnĭtī **sĭmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **sĭs**	mŏnĭtī **sĭtĭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **sĭt**;	mŏnĭtī **sint.**

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been advised.*

mŏnĭtŭs **essĕm** [1]	mŏnĭtī **essēmŭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **essēs**	mŏnĭtī **essētĭs**
mŏnĭtŭs **essĕt**;	mŏnĭtī **essent.**

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mŏnē**rĕ**, *be thou advised;*	mŏnē**mĭnĭ**, *be ye advised.*
FUT. mŏnē**tŏr**, *thou shalt be advised,*	
mŏnē**tŏr**, *he shall be advised;*	mŏne**ntŏr**, *they shall be advised*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mŏnē**rī**, *to be advised,*	
PERF. mŏnĭtŭs **essĕ**, [1] *to have been advised,*	PERF. mŏnĭtŭs, *advised,*
FUT. mŏnĭtŭm **īrī**, *to be about to be advised.*	FUT. mŏne**ndŭs**, *to be advised.*

[1] See 206, foot notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rĕgŏ,	rĕgĕrĕ,	rexī,	rectŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgŏ	rĕgĭmŭs
rĕgĭs	rĕgĭtĭs
rĕgĭt ;	rĕgunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruling.

rĕgēbăm	rĕgēbāmŭs
rĕgēbās	rĕgēbātĭs
rĕgēbăt ;	rĕgēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will rule.*

rĕgăm	rĕgēmŭs
rĕgēs	rĕgētĭs
rĕgĕt ;	rĕgent.

PERFECT.

I ruled or *have ruled.*

rexī	rexĭmŭs
rexistī	rexistĭs
rexĭt ;	rexērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had ruled.

rexĕrăm	rexĕrāmŭs
rexĕrās	rexĕrātĭs
rexĕrăt ;	rexĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have ruled.*

rexĕrŏ	rexĕrĭmŭs
rexĕrĭs	rexĕrĭtĭs
rexĕrĭt ;	rexĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgăm	rĕgāmŭs
rĕgās	rĕgātĭs
rĕgăt;	rĕgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should rule.*

rĕgĕrĕm	rĕgĕrēmŭs
rĕgĕrēs	rĕgĕrētĭs
rĕgĕrĕt;	rĕgĕrent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexĕrĭm	rexĕrĭmŭs
rexĕrĭs	rexĕrĭtĭs
rexĕrĭt;	rexĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have ruled.*

rexissĕm	rexissēmŭs
rexissēs	rexissētĭs
rexissĕt;	rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕ, *rule thou;*	rĕgĭtĕ, *rule ye.*
FUT.	rĕgĭtō, *thou shalt rule,*	rĕgĭtōtĕ, *ye shall rule,*
	rĕgĭtō, *he shall rule;*	rĕguntō, *they shall rule.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule.*	
PERF.	rexissĕ, *to have ruled.*	
FUT.	rectūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule.*	

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	rĕgens, *ruling.*	
FUT.	rectūrŭs, *about to rule.*	

GERUND.

Gen.	rĕgendĭ,	*of ruling,*
Dat.	rĕgendŏ,	*for ruling,*
Acc.	rĕgendŭm,	*ruling,*
Abl.	rĕgendŏ,	*by ruling.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	rectŭm,	*to rule,*
Abl.	rectū,	*to rule, be ruled.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
rĕgŏr,	rĕgī,	rectŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgŏr	rĕgĭmŭr
rĕgĕrĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgĭmĭnī
rĕgĭtŭr;	rĕguntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rĕgēbăr	rĕgēbāmŭr
rĕgēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgēbāmĭnī
rĕgēbātŭr;	rĕgēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be ruled.*

rĕgăr	rĕgēmŭr
rĕgēris, *or* rĕ	rĕgēmĭnī
rĕgētŭr;	rĕgentŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been or *was ruled.*

rectŭs sŭm [1]	rectī sŭmŭs
rectŭs ĕs	rectī estĭs
rectŭs est;	rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been ruled.

rectŭs ĕrăm [1]	rectī ĕrāmŭs
rectŭs ĕrās	rectī ĕrātĭs
rectŭs ĕrăt;	rectī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been ruled.*

rectŭs ĕrŏ [1]	rectī ĕrĭmŭs
rectŭs ĕrĭs	rectī ĕrĭtĭs
rectŭs ĕrĭt;	rectī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rĕgăr	rĕgāmŭr
rĕgārĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgāmĭnĭ
rĕgātŭr;	rĕgantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be ruled.*

rĕgĕrĕr	rĕgĕrēmŭr
rĕgĕrērĭs, *or* rĕ	rĕgĕrēmĭnĭ
rĕgĕrētŭr;	rĕgĕrentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectŭs sĭm [1]	rectī sĭmŭs
rectŭs sĭs	rectī sĭtĭs
rectŭs sĭt;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been ruled.*

rectŭs essĕm [1]	rectī essēmŭs.
rectŭs essēs	rectī essētĭs
rectŭs essĕt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	rĕgĕrĕ, *be thou ruled;*	rĕgĭmĭnĭ, *be ye ruled.*
FUT.	rĕgĭtŏr, *thou shalt be ruled,*	
	rĕgĭtŏr, *he shall be ruled;*	rĕguntŏr, *they shall be ruled.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled.*	
PERF. rectŭs essĕ, [1] *to have-been ruled.*	PERF. rectŭs, *ruled.*
FUT. rectŭm īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*	FUT. rĕgendŭs, *to be ruled.*

[1] See 206, foot notes.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiŏ,	audīrĕ,	audīvī,	audītŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiŏ	audīmŭs
audīs	audītĭs
audĭt ;	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

I was hearing.

audiēbăm	audiēbāmŭs
audiēbās	audiēbātĭs
audiēbăt ;	audiēbant.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will hear.*

audiăm	audiēmŭs
audiēs	audiētĭs
audiĕt ;	audient.

PERFECT.

I heard or *have heard.*

audīvī	audīvĭmŭs
audīvistī	audīvistĭs
audīvĭt ;	audīvērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard.

audīvĕrăm	audīvĕrāmŭs
audīvĕrās	audīvĕrātĭs
audīverăt ;	audīvĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have heard.*

audīvĕrŏ	audīvĕrĭmŭs
audīvĕrĭs	audīvĕrĭtĭs
audīvĕrĭt ;	audīvĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiăm	audiāmŭs
audiās	audiātis
audiăt ;	audiant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should hear.*

audīrĕm	audīrēmŭs
audīrēs	audīrētis
audīrĕt ;	audīrent.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audīvĕrim	audīvĕrimŭs
audīvĕris	audīvĕritis
audīvĕrit ;	audīvĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have heard.*

audīvissĕm	audīvissēmŭs
audīvissēs	audīvissētis
audīvissĕt ;	audīvissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audī, *hear thou ;*	audītĕ, *hear ye.*
FUT.	audītō, *thou shalt hear,*	audītōtĕ, *ye shall hear,*
	audītō, *he shall hear ;*	audiuntō, *they shall hear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audīrĕ, *to hear.*
PERF.	audīvissĕ, *to have heard.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear.*

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	audiens, *hearing.*
FUT.	auditūrŭs, *about to hear.*

GERUND.

Gen.	audiendī, *of hearing.*
Dat.	audiendō, *for hearing.*
Acc.	audiendŭm, *hearing.*
Abl.	audiendō, *by hearing.*

SUPINE.

Acc.	auditŭm, *to hear.*
Abl.	auditū, *to hear, be heard.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiŏr,	audīrī,	audītŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiŏr	audīmŭr
audīrĭs, *or* rĕ	audīmĭnī
audītŭr ;	audiuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbăr	audiēbāmŭr
audiēbārĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēbāmĭnī
audiēbātŭr ;	audiēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

I shall or *will be heard.*

audiăr	audiēmŭr
audiērĭs, *or* rĕ	audiēmĭnī
audiētŭr ;	audiēntŭr.

PERFECT.

I have been heard.

audītŭs sŭm [1]	audītī sŭmŭs
audītŭs ĕs	audītī estĭs
audītŭs est ;	audītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been heard.

audītŭs ĕrăm [1]	audītī ĕrāmŭs
audītŭs ĕrās	audītī ĕrātĭs
audītŭs ĕrăt ;	audītī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or *will have been heard.*

audītŭs ĕrŏ [1]	audītī ĕrĭmŭs
audītŭs ĕrĭs	audītī ĕrĭtĭs
audītŭs ĕrĭt ;	audītī ĕrunt.

[1] See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or *can be heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiăr	audiāmŭr
audiāris, *or* rĕ	audiāmini
audiātŭr ;	audiantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should be heard.*

audirĕr	audirēmŭr
audirēris, *or* rĕ	audirēmini
audirētŭr ;	audirentŭr.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

auditŭs sim [1]	auditi sīmŭs
auditŭs sis	auditi sītis
auditŭs sit ;	auditi sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or *should have been heard.*

auditŭs essĕm [1]	auditi essēmŭs
auditŭs essēs	auditi essētis
auditŭs essĕt ;	auditi essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audirĕ, *be thou heard;*	audimini, *be ye heard.*
FUT.	auditŏr, *thou shalt be heard,* auditŏr, *he shall be heard;*	audiuntŏr, *they shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	audirī, *to be heard.*	
PERF.	auditŭs essĕ, [1] *to have been heard.*	PERF. auditŭs, *heard.*
FUT.	auditŭm īrī, *to be about to be heard.*	FUT. audiendŭs, *to be heard.*

PARTICIPLE.

[1] See 206, foot notes.

VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation, and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

ACTIVE VOICE.

214. Capio, *I take.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
căpĭŏ,	căpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpĭŏ, căpĭs, căpĭt;	căpĭmŭs, căpĭtĭs, căpiunt.

IMPERFECT.

căpiēbăm, -iēbās, -iēbăt;	căpiēbāmŭs, -iēbātĭs, -iēbant.

FUTURE.

căpiăm, -iēs, -iĕt;	căpiēmŭs, -iētĭs, -ient.

PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -ĭt;	cēpĭmŭs, -istĭs, -ērunt, *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpĕrăm, -ĕrās, -ĕrăt;	cēpĕrāmŭs, -ĕrātĭs, -ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpĕrŏ, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

căpiăm, -iās, -iăt;	căpiāmŭs, -iātĭs, -iant.

IMPERFECT.

căpĕrĕm, -ĕrēs, ĕrĕt;	căpĕrēmŭs, -ĕrētĭs, -ĕrent.

PERFECT.

cēpĕrĭm, -ĕrĭs, -ĕrĭt;	cēpĕrĭmŭs, -ĕrĭtĭs, -ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

cēpissĕm, -issēs, -issĕt;	cēpissēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	căpĕ;	căpĭtĕ.
FUT.	căpĭtŏ, căpĭtŏ;	căpĭtōtĕ, căpiuntŏ.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. căpĕrĕ.	PRES. căpiens.
PERF. cēpissĕ.	
FUT. captūrŭs essĕ.	FUT. captūrŭs.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Gen. căpiendī.	
Dat. căpiendŏ.	
Acc. căpiendŭm.	*Acc.* captŭm.
Abl. căpiendŏ.	*Abl.* captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiŏr,	căpī,	captŭs sŭm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiŏr, căpĕrĭs, căpĭtŭr;	căpĭmŭr, căpĭmĭnī, căpiuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

căpiēbăr, -iēbārĭs, -iēbātŭr;	căpiēbāmŭr, -iēbāmĭnī, -iēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

căpiăr, -iērĭs, -iētŭr;	căpiēmŭr, -iēmĭnī, -ientur.

PERFECT.

captŭs sŭm, ĕs, est;	captī sŭmŭs, estĭs, sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

captŭs ĕrăm, ĕrās, ĕrăt;	captī ĕrāmŭs, ĕrātĭs, ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

captŭs ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, ĕrĭt;	captī ĕrĭmŭs, ĕrĭtĭs, ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiăr, -iārīs, -iātŭr;	căpiāmŭr, -iāmĭnī, -iantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

căpĕrĕr, -ĕrērīs, -ĕrētŭr;	căpĕrēmŭr, -ĕrēmĭnī, -ĕrentŭr.

PERFECT.

captŭs sĭm, sīs, sĭt;	captī sīmŭs, sītĭs, sint.

PLUPERFECT.

captŭs essĕm, essēs, essĕt;	captī essēmŭs, essētĭs, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	căpĕrĕ;	căpĭmĭnī.
FUT.	căpĭtŏr, căpĭtŏr;	căpiuntŏr.

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. căpī.	
PERF. captŭs essĕ.	PERF. captŭs.
FUT. captŭm īrī.	FUT. căpiendŭs.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

216. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

ămŏ, ămārĕ, ămāvī, ămātŭm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.[1]

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. ămŏ	ămĕm	ămā	ămārĕ	ămans.
Imp. ămābăm	ămārĕm			
Fut. ămābŏ		ămātŏ	ămātūrŭs essĕ	ămātūrŭs.
Perf. ămāvī	ămāvĕrĭm		ămāvissĕ	
Plup. ămāvĕrăm	ămāvissĕm			
F. P. ămāvĕrŏ				

Gerund, ămandī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, ămātŭm, ū.

[1] These tables, it will be observed, are so arranged as to exhibit not only the synopsis of each mood through the different tenses, as, INDIC. *amo, amābam*, etc., but also the synopsis of each tense through the different moods, as, PRES. *amo, amem, ama*, etc. The pupil should make himself so familiar with the verbs, as they occur in his reading lessons, as to be able to give the synopsis of any mood through all the tenses, or of any tense through all the moods.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

ămŏr, ămārī, ămātŭs sŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	ămŏr	ămĕr	ămārĕ	ămārī	
Imp.	ămābăr	ămārĕr			
Fut.	ămābŏr		ămātŏr	ămātŭm īrī	ămandŭs.
Perf.	ămātŭs sŭm	ămātŭs sĭm		ămātŭs essĕ	ămātŭs.
Plup.	ămātŭs ĕrăm	ămātŭs essĕm			
F. P.	ămātŭs ĕrŏ				

217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

mŏneŏ, mŏnērĕ, mŏnuī, mŏnĭtŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	mŏneŏ	mŏneăm	mŏnē	mŏnērĕ	mŏnens.
Imp.	mŏnēbăm	mŏnērĕm			
Fut.	mŏnēbŏ		mŏnētŏ	mŏnĭturŭs essĕ	mŏnĭturŭs.
Perf.	mŏnuī	mŏnuĕrĭm		mŏnuissĕ	
Plup.	mŏnuĕrăm	mŏnuissĕm			
F. P.	mŏnuĕrŏ				

Gerund, mŏnendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, mŏnĭtŭm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

mŏneor, mŏnērī, mŏnĭtŭs sŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	mŏneŏr	mŏneăr	mŏnērĕ	mŏnērī	
Imp.	mŏnēbăr	mŏnērĕr			
Fut.	mŏnēbŏr		mŏnētŏr	mŏnĭtŭm īrī	mŏnendŭs.
Perf.	mŏnĭtŭs sŭm	mŏnĭtŭs sĭm		mŏnĭtŭs essĕ	mŏnĭtŭs.
Plup.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăm	mŏnĭtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	mŏnĭtŭs ĕrŏ				

218. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

rĕgŏ, rĕgĕrĕ, rexī, rectŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. rĕgŏ	rĕgăm	rĕgĕ	rĕgĕrĕ	rĕgens.
Imp. rĕgēbăm	rĕgĕrĕm			
Fut. rĕgăm		rĕgĭtŏ	rectūrŭs essĕ	rectūrŭs.
Perf. rexī	rexĕrĭm		rexissĕ	
Plup. rexĕrăm	rexissĕm			
F. P. rexĕrŏ				

Gerund, regendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, rectŭm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

rĕgŏr, rĕgī, rectŭs sŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres. rĕgŏr	rĕgăr	rĕgĕrĕ	rĕgī	
Imp. rĕgēbăr	rĕgĕrĕr			
Fut. rĕgăr		rĕgĭtŏr	rectŭm īrī	rĕgendŭs.
Perf. rectŭs sŭm	rectŭs sĭm		rectŭs essĕ	rectŭs.
Plup. rectŭs ĕrăm	rectŭs essĕm			
F. P. rectŭs ĕrŏ				

219. VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

căpiŏ, căpĕrĕ, cēpī, captŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres. căpiŏ	căpiăm	căpĕ	căpĕrĕ	căpiens.
Imp. căpiēbăm	căpĕrĕm			
Fut. căpiăm		căpĭtŏ	captūrŭs essĕ	căptūrŭs.
Perf. cēpī	cēpĕrĭm		cēpissĕ	
Plup. cēpĕrăm	cēpissĕm			
F. P. cēpĕrŏ				

Gerund, căpiendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, captŭm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

căpiŏr, căpī, captŭs sŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	căpiŏr	căpiăr	căpĕrĕ	căpī	
Imp.	căpiēbăr	căpĕrĕr			
Fut.	căpiăr		căpĭtŏr	captŭm īrī	căpiendŭs.
Perf.	captŭs sŭm	captŭs sĭm		captŭs essĕ	captŭs.
Plup.	captŭs ĕrăm	captŭs essĕm			
F. P.	captŭs ĕrŏ				

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

audiŏ, audīrĕ, audīvī, audītŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	audiŏ	audiăm	audī	audīrĕ	audiens.
Imp.	audiēbăm	audīrĕm			
Fut.	audiăm		audītŏ	audītūrŭs essĕ	audītūrŭs.
Perf.	audīvī	audīvĕrĭm		audīvissĕ	
Plup.	audīvĕrăm	audīvissĕm			
F. P.	audīvĕrŏ				

Gerund, audiendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, audītŭm, ū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Principal Parts.

audiŏr, audīrī, audītŭs sŭm.

2. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	audiŏr	audiăr	audīrĕ	audīrī	
Imp.	audiēbăr	audīrĕr			
Fut.	audiăr		audītŏr	audītŭm īrī	audiendŭs.
Perf.	audītŭs sŭm	audītŭs sĭm		audītŭs essĕ	audītŭs.
Plup.	audītŭs ĕrăm	audītŭs essĕm			
F. P.	audītŭs ĕrŏ				

DEPONENT VERBS.

221. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The Future passive participle generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect passive; *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

222. Hortor, *I exhort.*

I. Principal Parts.

hortŏr, hortārī, hortātŭs sŭm.

II. Moods and Tenses.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	hortŏr [1]	hortĕr	hortārĕ	hortārī	hortans.
Imp.	hortābăr	hortārĕr			
Fut.	hortābŏr		hortātŏr	hortātūrŭs essĕ	hortātūrŭs. / hortandŭs.
Perf.	hortātŭs sŭm	hortātŭs sĭm		hortātŭs essĕ	hortātŭs.
Plup.	hortātŭs ĕrăm	hortātŭs essĕm			
F. P.	hortātŭs ĕrŏ				

Gerund, hortandī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, hortātŭm, ū.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

223. Vereor, *I fear.*

I. Principal Parts.

vĕrĕŏr, vĕrērī, vĕrītus sŭm.

II. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	vĕrĕŏr	vĕreăr	vĕrērĕ	vĕrērī	vĕrens.
Imp.	vĕrēbăr	vĕrērĕr			
Fut.	vĕrēbŏr		vĕrētŏr	vĕrĭtūrŭs essĕ	vĕrĭtūrŭs. / vĕrendŭs.
Perf.	vĕrĭtŭs sŭm	vĕrĭtŭs sĭm		vĕrĭtŭs esse	vĕrĭtŭs.
Plup.	vĕrĭtŭs ĕrăm	vĕrĭtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	vĕrĭtŭs ĕrŏ				

Gerund, vĕrendī, dŏ. *Supine*, vĕrĭtŭm, ū.

---

[1] The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers; *hortŏr, hortāris, hortātŭr, hortāmŭr, hortāmĭnī, hortantŭr.*

All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort, I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Part. in dus*, which has the passive force, *about to be exhorted, to be exhorted.* From its passive force this Part. cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 2 and 3.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

224. Sequor, *I follow.*

I. Principal Parts.

sĕquŏr, sĕquī, sĕcūtŭs sŭm.

II. Moods and Tenses.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres.	sĕquŏr	sĕquăr	sĕquĕrĕ	sĕquī	sĕquens.
Imp.	sĕquēbăr	sĕquĕrĕr			
Fut.	sĕquăr		sĕquĭtŏr	sĕcūtūrŭs essĕ	sĕcūtūrŭs. / sĕquendŭs.
Perf.	sĕcūtŭs sŭm	sĕcūtŭs sĭm		sĕcūtŭs essĕ	sĕcūtus.
Plup.	sĕcūtŭs ĕrăm	sĕcūtŭs essĕm			
F. P.	sĕcūtŭs ĕrŏ				

Gerund, sĕquendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, sĕcūtŭm, ū.

225. Patior, *I suffer.*

I. Principal Parts.

pătiŏr, pătī, passŭs sŭm.

II. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	pătiŏr	pătiăr	pătĕrĕ	pătī	pătiens.
Imp.	pătiēbăr	pătĕrĕr			
Fut.	pătiăr		pătĭtŏr	passūrŭs essĕ	passūrŭs. / pătiendŭs.
Perf.	passŭs sŭm	passŭs sĭm		passŭs essĕ	passŭs.
Plup.	passŭs ĕrăm	passŭs essĕm			
F. P.	passŭs ĕrŏ				

Gerund, pătiendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, passŭm, ū.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

226. Blandiŏr, *I flatter.*

I. Principal Parts.

blandiŏr, blandīrī, blandītŭs sŭm.

II. Moods and Tenses.

Pres.	blandiŏr	blandiăr	blandīrĕ	blandīrī	blandiens.
Imp.	blandiēbăr	blandīrĕr			
Fut.	blandiăr		blandītŏr	blandītūrŭs essĕ	blanditūrŭs / blandiendŭs
Perf.	blandītŭs sŭm	blandītŭs sĭm		blandītŭs essĕ	blandītus.
Plup.	blandītŭs ĕrăm	blandītŭs essĕm			
F. P.	blandītŭs ĕrŏ				

Gerund, blandiendī, dŏ, etc. *Supine*, blandītŭm, ū.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

227. The Latin has also two Periphrastic conjugations, formed respectively from the two regular future participles combined with the various tenses of the auxiliary *sum*.

228. The First or Active Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Active participle and *sum*, expresses an intended or future action or state: *amatūrus sum*, I am about to love; *monitūrus sum*, I am about to advise.

229. The Second or Passive Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Passive participle and *sum*, expresses necessity or duty: *amandus sum*, I must be loved.

I. Active Periphrastic Conjugation.

230. Amatūrus sum, *I am about to love.*

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Pres.	ămātūrŭs sŭm [1]	ămātūrŭs sĭm	ămātūrŭs essĕ.
Imp.	ămātūrŭs ĕrăm	ămātūrŭs essĕm	
Fut.	ămātūrŭs ĕrŏ		
Perf.	ămātūrŭs fuī	ămātūrŭs fuĕrĭm	ămātūrŭs fuissĕ.
Plup.	ămātūrŭs fuĕrăm	ămātūrŭs fuissĕm	
Fut. Perf.	ămātūrŭs fuĕrŏ [1]		

II. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.

231. Amandus sum, *I must be loved.* [2]

Pres.	ămandŭs sŭm	ămandŭs sĭm	ămandŭs essĕ.
Imp.	ămandŭs ĕrăm	ămandŭs essĕm	
Fut.	ămandŭs ĕrŏ		
Perf.	ămandŭs fuī	ămandŭs fuĕrĭm	ămandŭs fuissĕ.
Plup.	ămandŭs fuĕrăm	ămandŭs fuissĕm	
Fut. Perf.	ămandŭs fuĕrŏ		

232. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with sum: *amans est*, he is loving; *amatūrus est*, he is about to love; *amātus est*, he has been loved; *amandus est*, he is to be loved, or must be loved. But as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

233. The First Periphrastic conjugation may be formed from either transitive or intransitive verbs; the Second from transitive verbs only, except in an impersonal sense. See 301. 2.

---

[1] The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, es, est.* The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

[2] Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved.*

CONTRACTIONS AND PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in **āvi, ēvi, īvi,** and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r.** Thus

A-i and **a-e** become **ā**: *amavisti* (amaisti), *amasti; amavĕram* (amaeram), *amāram; amavisse* (amaisse), *amasse.*

E-i and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (neisti), *nesti; nevērunt,* (neerunt), *nērunt.*

I-i becomes **ī**: *audivisti* (audiisti), *audisti; audivissem* (audiissem), *audissem.*

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi, audii, audiit, audĭĕram; audivisti, audiisti* or *audisti.*

2. Perfects in *ōvi.*—The perfect of *nosco,* to know, and *mŏveo,* to move, sometimes drops *v* and suffers contraction before *r* and *s*: *novisti, nosti.*

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is, iss,* or *sis*: *scripsisti, scripsti; dixisse, dixe; accessistis, accestis.*

235. **Erĕ** for **ērunt,** as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v.* In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

236. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. **Dic, duc, fac,** and **fer,** for *dīce, dūce, făce,* and *fĕre,* are the Imperatives of *dico, duco, facio,* and *fero,* to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dīce, dūce,* and *făce* occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *facio* which change *a* into *i*: *confĭce.*

238. **Undus** and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Fut. Pass. Part. and of the Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dīcundus* from *dīco,* to say; *pŏtiundus,* from *pŏtior,* to obtain.

239. Ancient and Rare Forms.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. *ibam* for *iēbam,* in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scibam* for *sciēbam.* See Imp. of *eo,* to go, 295.

2. *ibo, ibor,* for *iam, iar,* in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servibo* for *serviam; opperibor* for *opperiar.* See Fut. of *eo,* 295.

3. *im* for *am* or *em,* in the Pres. Subj.: *edim, edis,* etc., for *edam, as,* etc.; *duim* (from *duo,* for *do*), for *dem.*—In *sim, velim, nolim, malim* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. *asso, esso,* and *so,* in the Fut. Perf., and *assim, essim,* and *sim,* in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III.: *faxo* (facso) for *fecĕro* (from *facio*); *faxim* for *fecĕrim; ausim,* for *ausus sim* (for *ausĕrim,* from *audeo*). Rare examples are: *levasso* for *levavĕro; prohibesso* for *prohibuĕro; capso* for *cepĕro; axo* for *egĕro; jusso* for *jussĕro; occĭsit* for *occiderit; taxis* for *tetigĕris.*

5. *to* and *mino* for *tor,* the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep.: *arbitrāto, arbitramino* for *arbitrātor; utunto* for *utuntor.*

6. *ier* for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin.: *amarier* for *amāri; viderier* for *vidēri.*

FORMATION OF THE VARIOUS PARTS OF THE VERB.

240. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that the Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings:[1]

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	*1. In a few verbs:*			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	2. In most verbs:			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ĭtum.
III.	*1. In consonant stems:*			
	o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	2. In vowel stems:			
	o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
II.	1. Deleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*to destroy.*
	2. Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
III.	1. Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
	2. Acuo,	acuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
IV.	Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*to hear.*

241. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—Again, from an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems of forms:

[1] The forms in *ēvi* and *ētum* of Conj. II. do not occur in the paradigms given above, but belong to the regular forms of those conjugations. For a fuller statement of the formation of the *Principal Parts with Exceptions,* see 246–260.

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present*, *Imperfect*, and *Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present* and *Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active* and *Future Passive Participle.*
6. The *Gerund.*

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive of the several conjugations, by dropping the endings—*āre*, *ēre*, *ĕre*, *īre* of the Active, or—*āri*, *ēri*, *i*, *īri*, of the Passive: *amāre*, present stem, AM; *monēre*, MON; *regĕre*, REG; *audīre*, AUD.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, and *Future Perfect Indicative.*
2. The *Perfect* and *Pluperfect Subjunctive.*
3. The *Perfect Infinitive.*

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*; *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *u*, the former of which with *īri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive.*
2. The *Future Active* and *Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System.*

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem, AMAT; *monĭtum*, MONIT.

242. VERB STEM.—The true basis of all verbal inflections is the *Verb Stem;* but this is generally identical with the Present Stem. Accordingly in nearly all verbs the Present Stem is also the Verb Stem. Thus AM, the Present Stem of *amo*, is also its Verb Stem.

1. In a few verbs the Present Stem has assumed one or more letters not found in the Verb Stem. Thus in *fundo, vinco*, the Verb Stems are *fud, vic*, but the Present Stems are *fund, vinc*, strengthened by assuming *n*.

2. We add the following table of verbal inflections.

TABLE OF PRESENT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ŏ	-ās,	-ăt;	-āmŭs,	-ātĭs,	-ant.
mŏn	-eŏ,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
rĕg	-ŏ	-ĭs,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-ĭtĭs,	-unt.
aud	-iŏ,	-ĭs,	-ĭt;	-īmŭs,	-ītĭs,	-iunt.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ābăm,	-ābās,	-ābăt;	-ābāmŭs,	-ābātĭs,	-ābant.
mŏn	-ēbăm,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
rĕg	-ēbăm,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.
aud	-iēbăm,	-iēbās,	-iēbăt;	-iēbāmŭs,	-iēbātĭs,	-iēbant.

FUTURE.

ăm	-ābŏ,	-ābĭs,	-ābĭt;	-ābĭmŭs,	-ābĭtĭs,	-ābunt.
mŏn	-ēbŏ,	-ēbĭs,	-ēbĭt;	-ēbĭmŭs,	-ēbĭtĭs,	-ēbunt.
rĕg	-ăm,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētis,	-ent.
aud	-iăm,	-iēs,	-iĕt;	-iēmŭs,	-iētĭs,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ĕm,	-ēs,	-ĕt;	-ēmŭs,	-ētĭs,	-ent.
mŏn	-eăm,	-eās,	-eăt;	-eāmŭs,	-eātĭs,	-eant.
rĕg	-ăm,	-ās,	-ăt;	-āmŭs,	-ātis,	-ant.
aud	-iăm,	-iās,	-iăt;	-iāmŭs,	-iātis,	-iant.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ārĕm,	-ārēs,	-ārĕt;	-ārēmŭs,	-ārētĭs,	-ārent.
mŏn	-ērĕm,	-ērēs,	-ērĕt;	-ērēmŭs,	-ērētĭs,	-ērent.
rĕg	-ĕrĕm,	-ĕrēs,	-ĕrĕt;	-ĕrēmŭs,	-ĕrētĭs,	-ĕrent.
aud	-īrĕm,	-īrēs,	-īrĕt;	-īrēmŭs,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

IMPERATIVE.

	PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ăm	-ā,	-ātĕ;	-ātŏ, -ātŏ;	-ātōtĕ, -antŏ.
mŏn	-ē,	-ētĕ;	-ētŏ, -ētŏ;	-ētōtĕ, -entŏ.
rĕg	-ĕ,	-ĭtĕ;	-ĭtŏ, -ĭtŏ;	-ĭtōtĕ, -untŏ.
aud	-ī,	-ītĕ;	-ītŏ, -ītŏ;	-ītōtĕ, -iuntŏ.

PRES. INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.	GERUND.
ăm -ārĕ;	-ans;	-andī.
mŏn -ērĕ;	-ens;	-endī.
rĕg -ĕrĕ;	-ens;	-endī.
aud -īrĕ;	-iens;	-iendī.

Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV. See 213.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

PRESENT SYSTEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ŏr,	-ārĭs *or* ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnī,	-antŭr.
mŏn	-eŏr,	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr.
rĕg	-ŏr,	-ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ,	-ĭtŭr;	-ĭmŭr,	-ĭmĭnī,	-untŭr.
aud	-iŏr,	-īrĭs *or* īrĕ,	-itŭr;	-imŭr,	-īmĭnī,	-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ābăr,	-ābārĭs *or* ābārĕ,	-ābātŭr;	-ābāmŭr,	-ābāmĭnī,	-ābantŭr.
mŏn	-ēbăr,	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr;	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr.
rĕg	-ēbăr,	-ēbārĭs *or* ēbārĕ,	-ēbātŭr;	-ēbāmŭr,	-ēbāmĭnī,	-ēbantŭr.
aud	-iēbăr,	-iēbārĭs *or* iēbārĕ,	-iēbātŭr;	-iēbāmŭr,	-iēbāmĭnī,	-iēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

ăm	-ābŏr,	-ābĕrĭs *or* ābĕrĕ,	-ābĭtŭr;	-ābĭmŭr,	-ābĭmĭnī,	-ābuntŭr.
mŏn	-ēbŏr,	-ēbĕrĭs *or* ēbĕrĕ,	-ēbĭtŭr;	-ēbĭmŭr,	-ēbĭmĭnī,	-ēbuntŭr.
rĕg	-ăr,	-ĕrĭs *or* ĕrĕ,	-ĕtŭr;	-ĕmŭr,	-ĕmĭnī,	-entŭr.
aud	-iăr,	-iērĭs *or* iērĕ,	-iētŭr;	-iēmŭr,	-iēmĭnī,	-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ăm	-ĕr,	-ērĭs *or* ērĕ,	-ētŭr;	-ēmŭr,	-ēmĭnī,	-entŭr.
mŏn	-eăr,	-eārĭs *or* eārĕ,	-eātŭr;	-eāmŭr,	-eāmĭnī,	-eantŭr.
rĕg	-ăr,	-ārĭs *or* ārĕ,	-ātŭr;	-āmŭr,	-āmĭnī,	-antŭr.
aud	-iăr,	-iārĭs *or* iārĕ,	-iātŭr;	-iāmŭr,	-iāmĭnī,	-iantŭr.

IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ārĕr,	-ārērĭs *or* ārērĕ,	-ārētŭr;	-ārēmŭr,	-ārēmĭnī,	-ārentŭr.
mŏn	-ērĕr,	-ērērĭs *or* ērērĕ,	-ērētŭr;	-ērēmŭr,	-ērēmĭnī,	-ērentŭr.
rĕg	-ĕrĕr,	-ĕrērĭs *or* ĕrērĕ,	-ĕrētŭr;	-ĕrēmŭr,	-ĕrēmĭnī,	-ĕrentŭr.
aud	-īrĕr,	-īrērĭs *or* īrērĕ,	-īrētŭr;	-īrēmŭr,	-īrēmĭnī,	-īrentŭr.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

	SING.	PLUR.
ăm	-ārĕ,	-āmĭnī;
mŏn	-ērĕ,	-ēmĭnī;
rĕg	-ĕrĕ,	-ĭmĭnī;
aud	-īrĕ,	-īmĭnī;

FUTURE.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
-ātŏr,	-ātŏr;	——	-antŏr.
-ētŏr,	-ētŏr;	——	-entŏr.
-ĭtŏr,	-ĭtŏr;	——	-untŏr.
-ītŏr,	-ītŏr;	——	-iuntŏr.

PRES. INFINITIVE.

ăm	-ārī;
mŏn	-ērī;
rĕg	-ī;
aud	-īrī;

FUT. PARTICIPLE.

-andŭs.
-endŭs.
-endŭs.
-iendŭs.

TABLE OF

PERFECT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-ī,	-istī,	-ĭt;	-ĭmŭs,	-istĭs,	-ērunt, -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-ĕrăm,	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt;	-ĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-ĕrŏ,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-ĕrĭm,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	-ĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

PLUPERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-issĕm,	-issēs,	-issĕt;	-issēmŭs,	-issētĭs,	-issent.

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămāv mŏnu rex audīv	-issĕ.

SUPINE SYSTEM.

INFINITIVE FUT.	PART. FUT.	SUPINE.
ămāt mŏnĭt rect audīt	-ūrŭs essĕ.	-ūrŭs.	-ŭm, -ū.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

SUPINE SYSTEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs[1]						
mŏnĭt -ŭs	sŭm,	ĕs,	est;	sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.
rect -ŭs						
audīt -ŭs						

PLUPERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs						
mŏnĭt -ŭs	ĕrăm,	ĕrās,	ĕrăt;	ĕrāmŭs,	ĕrātĭs,	ĕrant.
rect -ŭs						
audīt -ŭs						

FUTURE PERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs						
mŏnĭt -ŭs	ĕrŏ,	ĕrĭs,	ĕrĭt;	ĕrĭmŭs,	ĕrĭtĭs,	ĕrunt.
rect -ŭs						
audīt -ŭs						

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs						
mŏnĭt -ŭs	sĭm,	sīs,	sĭt;	sīmŭs,	sītĭs,	sint.
rect -ŭs						
audīt -ŭs						

PLUPERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs						
mŏnĭt -ŭs	essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt;	essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent.
rect -ŭs						
audit -ŭs						

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămāt -ŭs	
mŏnĭt -ŭs	essĕ.
rect -ŭs	
audīt -ŭs	

INFINITIVE FUT.	PART. PERF.
ămāt	
mŏnĭt -ŭm īrĭ.	-ŭs.
rect	
audīt	

[1] In the plural, *-us* becomes *-i: -i sumus*, etc.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

243. The Four Conjugations, it will be seen from this table, differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System.*

244. But by a close analysis it will be found

1. That even these differences in a great measure disappear, and that the four conjugations become only varieties of one general system of conjugation.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

245. According to this analysis

1. The stems in the four conjugations end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
a,	e,	consonant *or* u,[1]	i.

2. The general endings are

1) *For Principal Parts:*

o,	ĕre,	si (i), vi,	tum.

2) *For Other Parts:*—the endings given above for the third conjugation, but in the Future, *bo* and *bor* are regular endings as well as *am* and *ar*, and in the Infinitive Passive, *ĕri* as well as *i*.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

I.	*Ama-o* Amo,[2]	*ama-ĕre* amāre,	*ama-vi* amāvi,	*ama-tum* amātum.
II.	*Mone-o* Moneo,	*mone-ĕre* monēre,	*mone-vi* *mon-vi* monui,	*mone-tum*[3] *mon-tum* monĭtum.[4]
III.	*Reg-o* Rego,	*reg-ĕre* regĕre,	*reg-si* rexi,	*reg-tum* rectum.
IV.	*Audi-o* Audio,	*audi-ĕre* audīre,	*audi-vi* audīvi,	*audi-tum* audītum.

[1] Rarely *o*.

[2] By contraction: *ama-o* = *amo*.

[3] Like *deleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum*. See 240. II.

[4] For changes see 247. 1.

PRESENT SYSTEM.—*Active Voice.*[1]

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
1.	*ama-o* amo	*mone-o* moneo	*reg-o* rego	*audi-o* audio
2.	*ama-is* amās	*mone-is* monēs	*reg-is* regis	*audi-is* audīs
3.	*ama-it* amat	*mone-it* monet	*reg-it* regit	*audi-it* audit
1.	*ama-ĭmus* amāmus	*mone-ĭmus* monēmus	*reg-ĭmus* regĭmus	*audi-ĭmus* audīmus
2.	*ama-ĭtis* amātis	*mone-ĭtis* monētis	*reg-ĭtis* regĭtis	*audi-ĭtis* audītis
3.	*ama-unt* amant.	*mone-unt* monent.	*reg-unt* regunt.	*audi-unt* audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

ama-ēbam amābam.	*mone-ēbam* monēbam.	*reg-ēbam* regēbam.	*audi-ēbam* audiēbam.

FUTURE.

ama-ĕbo amābo.	*mone-ĕbo* monēbo.	*reg-am* regam.	*audi-am* audiam.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

ama-am amem.[2]	*mone-am* moneam.	*reg-am* regam.	*audi-am* audiam.

IMPERFECT.

ama-ĕrem amārem	*mone-ĕrem* monērem.	*reg-ĕrem* regĕrem.	*audi-ĕrem* audīrem.

IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.

S.	*ama-e* ama	*mone-e* mone	*reg-e* rege	*audi-e* audi
P.	*ama-ĭte* amāte.	*mone-ĭte* monēte.	*reg-ĭte* regĭte.	*audi-ĭte* audīte.

---

[1] The Passive has the same changes as the Active: *ama-or* = *amor*; *ama-ĕris* = *amāris*; *mone-ĕris* = *monēris*; *audi-ĕris* = *audīris*, etc.

[2] *A* changed to *e*, so throughout; ama-as = ames, etc.

FUTURE.

2 S.	*ama-ĭto* amāto	*mone-ĭto* monēto	*reg-ito* regĭto	*audi-ĭto* audīto
3 S.	*ama-ĭto* amāto	*mone-ĭto* monēto	*reg-ĭto* regito	*audi-ĭto* audīto
2 P.	*ama-ĭtōte* amatōte	*mone-ĭtōte* monētōte	*reg-ĭtōte* regĭtōte	*audi-ĭtōte* auditōte
3 P.	*ama-unto* amanto.	*mone-unto* monento.	*reg-unto* regunto.	*audi-unto* audiunto.

INFINITIVE.

PRESENT.

ama-ĕre amāre.	*mone-ĕre* monēre.	*reg-ĕre* regĕre.	*audi-ĕre* audīre.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ama-ens amans.	*mone-ens* monens.	*reg-ens* regens.	*audi-ens* audiens.

GERUND.

ama-endi amandi.	*mone-endi* monendi.	*reg-endi* regendi.	*audi-endi* audiendi.

FORMATION OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

246. The general rule for obtaining these forms has already been given (240), but as they are the basis of all verbal inflections, a fuller treatment of the subject is desirable. We notice

I. Regular Formations.

II. Irregular Formations.

I. REGULAR FORMATIONS.

247. The Principal Parts of verbs in the four conjugations are formed with the following endings:[1]

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. *In a few verbs:* eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	2. *In most verbs:* eo,	ēre,	ui,	ĭtum.
III.	1. *In consonant stems:* o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	2. *In vowel stems:* o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	īre,	īvi,	ītum.

[1] For examples, see 240.

1. The Endings *ui* and *itum* are only shortened forms of *ĕvi* and *ĕtum*: thus the full forms in *moneo* would be, *monĕvi, monĕtum*; by dropping *e*, we have *monvi, montum*; but to facilitate pronunciation, the consonant *v* after *n* is changed into its corresponding vowel *u*; *monui* (for *monvi*), and the two successive consonants in *montum* are separated by a short *i*; *monĭtum* (for *montum*).

2. Analysis of Endings.—If we analyze the endings of the Perfect, we shall find that the final *i* is the ending of the first person, the preceding *v* the tense-sign of the Perfect, and the preceding vowel the characteristic of the conjugation. In the ending *si*, *s* is the tense-sign, while in the ending *i* the tense-sign is wanting.

3. The Supine Ending is properly *tum* (245. 2), as the preceding vowels, *ā*, *ē*, and *ī*, are the characteristics of the conjugation, and *ĭ* in Conj. III. is the connecting vowel. Practically, however, it is more convenient and simple to treat these vowels as a part of the endings.

Euphonic Changes in the Regular Formation.

248. Before *si* and *tum* in the Principal Parts of the Third Conjugation, certain euphonic changes take place.

I. Before si of the Perfect.

1. A **k-sound** (*c, g, qu*) or **h**[1] generally[2] unites with the *s* and forms *x*:[3] *dūco, duxi* (ducsi); *rĕgo, rexi* (regsi); *cŏquo, coxi* (coqusi); *trăho, traxi* (trahsi).

2. A **t-sound** (*d, t*) is generally dropped:[4] *claudo, clausi* (claudsi); *mitto, mīsi* (mittsi).

3. **B** is changed to *p*: *scrībo, scripsi* (scribsi).

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated and sometimes strengthened with *p*: *prĕmo, pressi* (premsi); *sūmo, sumpsi* (sumsi).

5. **R** is sometimes assimilated: *gĕro, gessi* (gersi).

II. Before tum of the Supine.

1. A **k-sound** (*c, g, qu*) or **h**[5] becomes *c*: *rĕgo, rectum* (regtum); *cŏquo, coctum* (coqutum); *trăho, tractum* (trahtum).

2. **B** becomes *p*, as in the perfect: *scrībo, scriptum* (scribtum).

3. **M** is strengthened with *p*:[6] *sūmo, sumptum* (sumtum).

4. **N** is often dropped: *vinco, victum* (vinctum). See 242. 253. 2.

5. **R** sometimes becomes *s*: *gĕro, gestum* (gertum).

---

[1] Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *exstinguo, exstinxi*; *vivo, victum*.

[2] But is sometimes dropped: *mergo, mersi* (for *mergsi, mersi*): *parco, parsi*.

[3] *Fluo, fluxi*, and *struo, struxi*, form their perfects in *xi* as if from a stem in a *k-sound*.

[4] Sometimes assimilated: *cedo, cessi* (cedsi).

[5] Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *exstinguo, exstinctum*; *vivo, victum*. But *v* is often changed into its corresponding vowel *u*: *solvo, solūtum* (solvtum).

[6] But dropped in *rumpo, ruptum* (rumptum).

II. Irregular Formations.

I. Present Indicative.

249. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior,** like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. These are

1. The following with their compounds:

Căpio, to take; *cŭpio*, to desire; *făcio*, to make; *fŏdio*, to dig; *fŭgio*, to flee; *jăcio*, to throw; *părio*, to bear;[1] *quătio*, to shake; *răpio*, to seize; *săpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lăcio*, to entice, and *spĕcio*, to look; *allicio*, *elicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grădior*, to go; *mŏrior*, to die; *pătior*, to suffer.

II. Present Infinitive.

250. *Do*, *dăre*, to give, is irregular in having *ăre*, instead of *āre*.

III. Perfect Indicative Active.

251. The Perfect presents three distinct Irregularities.

252. First Irregularity.—*Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.*—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations:

Sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui (2d),	*to sound.*
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi (*augsi*, 3d),	*to increase.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi (4th),	*to seek.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi (*vincsi*, 3d),	*to bind.*

1. Explanation.—*Sŏno*, it will be observed, though a verb of the first conjugation, forms its perfect in *ui*, after the analogy of the second; *augeo*, of the second, forms its perfect in *si* (*xi* = *gsi*) after the analogy of the third; *pĕto*, of the third, follows the analogy of the fourth, and *vincio*, of the fourth, the analogy of the third. Strictly speaking, such verbs are partly of one conjugation and partly of another, but they are generally classed with the conjugation to which the infinitive belongs.

2. In the First Conjugation, a few verbs[2] follow the analogy of the Second: *dŏmo*, *domāre*, *domui*, to tame.

3. In the Second, a few[2] follow the analogy of the Third: *augeo*, *augēre*, *auxi* (*augsi*), to increase.

---

[1] Compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

[2] For lists, see under Classification of Verbs, 261, sqq.

4. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the FIRST, SECOND, or FOURTH: *sterno, sternĕre, strāvi* (1), to strew; *frĕmo, fremĕre, fremui* (2), to rage; *pĕto, petĕre, petīvi* (4), to seek.

5. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND OR THIRD: *ăpĕrio, aperīre, aperui* (2), to open; *vincio, vincīre, vinxi* (3), to bind.

253. Second Irregularity.—*Stem-vowel lengthened.*—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect in **i**, but lengthen the stem-vowel:

Jŭvo,	jŭvāre,	jūvi,	*to assist.*
Vĭdeo,	vĭdēre,	vīdi,	*to see.*
Edo,	ĕdĕre,	ēdi,	*to eat.*
Vĕnio,	venīre,	vēni,	*to come.*

1. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowels *ă* and (in compounds) *i* often become *ĕ*: *făcio, fēci*, to make; *efficio, effēci*, to effect.

2. *M* OR *N* DROPPED.—The Present Stem in a few of these verbs is strengthened by the insertion of *M* or *N*, which disappears in the Perfect: *rumpo, rūpi* (rumpi), to break; *vinco, vīci* (vinci), to conquer. See 242. 1.

254. Third Irregularity.—*Reduplication.*—A few verbs of the First, Second, and Third conjugations form the Perfect in **i**, but reduplicate the stem:

Do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	*to give.*
Mordeo,	mordēre,	mŏmordi,	*to bite.*
Curro,	currĕre,	cŭcurri,	*to run.*

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e, i, o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples above.

2. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowel is often changed: *cado, cĕcĭdi* (for *cecădi*), to fall.

3. *N* DROPPED.—*N* is sometimes dropped, because it does not belong to the Verb Stem, but has been inserted in the Present: *tundo, tŭtŭdi*, to beat.

4. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo, spŏpondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto, stĕti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

5. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run; *re-spondeo, respondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do, circum-dĕdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto, circum-stĕti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *ĭ*: *ad-do, addĭdi* (for *ad-dĕdi*), to add.

IV. Supine.

255. The Supine presents two principal Irregularities.

256. First Irregularity.—*Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.*—A few verbs in each conjugation

form the Supine according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations:

Sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum (2d),	*to sound.*
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi,	auctum (3d),	*to increase.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi,	petītum (4th),	*to seek.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum (3d),	*to bind.*

1. In the First Conjugation, a few verbs[1] follow the analogy of the Second or Third: *dŏmo, domāre, domui, domĭtum* (2d), to tame; *sĕco, secāre, secui* (2d), *sectum* (3d), to cut.

2. In the Second, a few follow the analogy of the Third: *augeo, augēre, auxi, auctum*, to increase.

3. In the Third, a few follow the analogy of the Second or Fourth: *frĕmo, fremĕre, fremui, fremĭtum* (2d), to rage; *cŭpio, cupĕre, cupīvi, cupītum* (4th), to desire.

4. In the Fourth, a few follow the analogy of the Third: *vĕnio, venīre, vēni, ventum*, to come.

257. **Second Irregularity.**—*Ending Sum.*—Some verbs of the Second conjugation, many in the Third, and a very few in the Fourth form the Supine in *sum:*

Măneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*to remain.*
Claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*to close.*
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,	*to perceive.*

1. Euphonic Changes are the same in supines in *sum* as in perfects in *si* (248. I.): *claudo, clausi, clausum* (248. I. 2); *mergo, mersi, mersum* (248. I. 1), to merge; *flecto, flexi* (for *flecsi*, for *flectsi*, 248. I. 1 and 2), *flexum* (for *flecsum*, for *flectsum*, 248. I. 1 and 2), to turn.

2. In the Fourth Conjugation, only *raucio*, to be hoarse, and *sentio*, to perceive, with its compounds, have *sum*.

258. The several modes above described for the formation of the Perfect and Supine may be presented for convenience of reference in the following table:

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

I. Perfect.

1. REGULAR PERFECT.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āvi.	ēvi.	si.	ivi.
	ui.	i.	

2. IRREGULAR PERFECT.

First Irregularity.

analogy of Conj. II.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. I., II. *or* IV.	analogy of Conj. II. *or* III.

[1] For lists, see under *Classification of Verbs*, 261, sqq.

Second Irregularity.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
stem-vowel lengthened.	stem-vowel lengthened.	stem-vowel lengthened (and often changed).	stem-vowel lengthened.

Third Irregularity.

reduplication.	reduplication.	reduplication.	

II. SUPINE.

1. REGULAR SUPINE.

ātum.	**ētum.** **ĭtum.**	**tum.**	**ĭtum.**

2. IRREGULAR SUPINE.

First Irregularity.

analogy of Conj. II. *or* III.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. II. *or* IV.	analogy of Conj. III.

Second Irregularity.

	sum.	**sum.**	**sum.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS IN COMPOUND VERBS.

259. I. Compound verbs generally form their principal parts like simple verbs:

Mŏneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
Ad-mŏneo,	admonēre,	admonui,	admonĭtum,	*to admonish.*

260. II. But compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts:

1. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **e** *of the simple verb:*

1) The Perfect and Supine generally resume the **e**:

Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Di-rĭgo,	dirigĕre,	direxi,	directum,	*to direct.*

2) But sometimes only the Supine resumes the **e**:

Tĕneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	*to hold.*
De-tĭneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	*to detain.*

2. *When the Present of the compound has* **i** *for* **a** *of the simple verb:*

1) The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes **e**, sometimes **a**:

Căpio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*to take.*
Ac-cĭpio,	accipĕre,	accēpi,	acceptum,	*to accept.*

2) But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e**:

Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*to seize.*
Di-rĭpio,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	*to tear asunder.*

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

According to the Perfect-Formation.[1]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Class I. Regular Formation.

261. Principal Parts in: **o, āre, āvi, ātum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation: the following are examples:

Amo,	āmāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	*to love.*
Cūro,	curāre,	curāvi,	curātum,	*to care for.*
Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	*to bestow.*
Hăbĭto,	habitāre,	habitāvi,	habitātum,	*to dwell.*
Hŏnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	*to honor.*
Lĭbĕro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	*to free.*
Nōmĭno,	nominăre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	*to name.*
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	*to fight.*
Spĕro,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	*to hope.*
Vŏco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	*to call.*

Class II. Irregular Formation.[2]—*Three Irregularities.*

262. First Irregularity.—*Perfect* (and generally *Supine*) *after the Analogy of the Second Conjugation.*

Principal Parts in: **o, āre, ui, ĭtum** (*generally*).

Crĕpo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	*to creak.*

Increpo, āre, ui (āvi), itum, (ātum); discrepo, āre, ui (āvi) ——.

Cŭbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	*to recline.*[3]
Dŏmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	*to tame.*
Enĕco,	enecāre,	enĕcui,	enectum,	*to kill.*[4]

[1] The Perfect-Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation.

[2] The lists contain all the simple verbs which belong to this class and such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

[3] Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 276. II. 1.

[4] The simple *nĕco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *āvi* and *ātum* occur.

Frĭco,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricātum,	*to rub.*
Mĭco,	micāre,	micui,	———	*to glitter.*

Dimĭco, āre, āvi (ui), ātum; emĭco, āre, ui, ātum.

Plĭco,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicĭtum, plicātum,	*to fold.*

Duplĭco, multiplĭco, replĭco, and *supplĭco* are regular: *āre, āvi, ātum.*

Sĕco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	*to cut.*

Participle, *secatūrus.*

Sŏno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonĭtum,	*to sound.*

Participle, *sonatūrus.* Most compounds want Sup. *Resŏno* has Perf. *resonāvi.*

Tŏno,	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonĭtum),	*to thunder.*
Vĕto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetĭtum,	*to forbid.*

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum,* to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *coenātus* and *jurātus* (*coeno,* to dine, and *jūro,* to swear) are active in signification, *having dined,* etc. *Pōtus,* from *pōto,* is also sometime active.

263. **Second Irregularity.**—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.*

Principal Parts in: **o, āre, i, tum.**

Jŭvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	*to assist.*

Participle *juvatūrus,* but in compounds *jutūrus* is also used.

Lăvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lotum, lavātum,	*to wash.*

In poetry this is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lăvo, lavĕre, lāvi,* etc.

264. **Third Irregularity.**—*Perfect Reduplicated.*

Principal Parts in: **o, āre, i, tum.**

Do,	dăre,	dĕdi,	dătum,	*to give.*
Sto,	stāre,	stĕti,	stātum,	*to stand.*

1. In *do* the characteristic is short by exception: *dădam, dădo, dărem,* etc. Four compounds of do, *circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo* and *venumdo,* are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the third Conj. (280).

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stĭti* for *stĕti: adsto, adstāre, adstĭti, adstātum. Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

265. Deponent Verbs.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular. Thus,

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	*to endeavor.*
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	*to exhort.*
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	*to admire.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Class I. Regular Formation.

266. Principal Parts in: { I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.[1] / II. eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. / III. eo, ēre, ui, tum *or* sum.

I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo,	complēre,	complēvi,	completum,	*to fill.*

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo, impleo.*

Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	*to destroy.*
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	*to weep.*
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	*to spin.*

1. *Abŏleo, abolēre, abolēvi, abolĭtum,* to destroy, is compounded of *ab* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco,* and are of the third conjugation. See *abŏlesco,* 276. II. 1.

2. *Vieo, viēre, viētum,* to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus.*

II. eo, ēre, ui, ĭtum.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Căreo,	carēre,	carui,	carĭtum,	*to be without.*
Dēbeo,	debēre,	debui,	debĭtum,	*to owe.*
Hăbeo,	habēre,	habui,	habĭtum,	*to have.*
Mŏneo,	monēre,	monui,	monĭtum,	*to advise.*
Nŏceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocĭtum,	*to hurt.*
Pāreo,	parēre,	parui,	parĭtum,	*to obey.*
Plăceo,	placēre,	placui,	placĭtum	*to please.*
Tăceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacĭtum,	*to be silent.*

III. eo, ēre, ui, tum *or* sum.

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Censeo,	censēre,	censui,	censum,	*to think.*

Perf. Part. *census* and *censĭtus.*—*Percenseo* wants Sup.; *recenseo* has *recensum* and *recensĭtum.*

Dŏceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	*to teach.*
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	mistum, / mixtum,	*to mix.*
Tĕneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	*to hold.*

Detĭneo, ēre, ui, detentum; so *obtĭneo* and *retĭneo;* other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	*to roast.*

[1] We class *ēvi* and *ētum,* though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ĭtum* are derived. See 247. 1.

267. Supine Wanting.—Many verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine: the following are the most important:

Aceo, *to be sour.*	Mădeo, *to be wet.*	Sordeo, *to be sordid.*
Calleo, *to be skilled.*	Nĭteo, to shine.	Splendeo, *to shine.*
Candeo, *to shine.*	Oleo, *to smell.*	Stŭdeo, *to study.*
Egeo, *to want.*	Palleo, *to be pale.*	Stŭpeo, *to be amazed*
Emĭneo, *to stand forth.*	Păteo, *to be open.*	Tĭmeo, *to fear.*
Flōreo, *to bloom.*	Rĭgeo, *to be stiff.*	Torpeo, *to be torpid.*
Frondeo, *to bear leaves.*	Rŭbeo, *to be red.*	Tŭmeo, *to swell.*
Horreo, *to shudder.*	Sĭleo, *to be silent.*	Vĭgeo, *to flourish.*
Lăteo, *to be hid.*	Sorbeo, *to swallow.*	Vĭreo, *to be green.*

268. Perfect and Supine Wanting.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine: the following are the most important:

Albeo, *to be white.*	Hĕbeo, *to be blunt.*	Polleo, *to be powerful.*
Aveo, *to covet.*	Hūmeo, *to be moist.*	Renĭdeo, *to shine.*
Calveo, *to be bald.*	Immĭneo, *to threaten.*	Scăteo, *to gush forth.*
Cāneo, *to be gray.*	Lacteo, *to suck.*	Squălleo, *to be filthy.*
Flāveo, *to be yellow.*	Lĭveo, *to be livid.*	Vĕgeo, *to be lively.*
Foeteo, *to be fetid.*	Macreo, *to be sad.*	

Class II. Irregular Formation.—*Three Irregularities.*

269. First Irregularity.—*Perfect in* **si** (rarely **i**) *after the Analogy of the Third Conjugation:*

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si (i), tum** *or* **sum.**

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	——	*to be cold.*
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	*to burn.*
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi (*gsi*),	auctum,	*to increase.*
Connīveo,	connīvēre.	connīvi, connixi,	——	*to wink at.*
Ferveo,	fervēre,	fervi, ferbui,		*to boil.*
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi (*rare*),	——	*to be cold.*
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	——	*to shine.*

Poetic *fulgo, fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	*to stick.*
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	*to indulge.*
Jŭbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	*to order.*
Langueo,	languēre,	langui,	——	*to be languid.*
Lĭqueo,	liquēre,	liqui (licui),	——	*to be liquid.*
Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	——	*to shine.*
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	——	*to mourn.*
Măneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	*to remain.*
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*to caress.*

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum.*

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	*to milk.*
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	*to dine.*

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined.*

Rīdeo,	rīdēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	*to laugh.*
Strīdeo,	strīdēre,	strīdi,	——	*to creak.*
Suādeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suasum,	*to advise.*
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe.*

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ĕre, si, sum.*

Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	*to twist.*
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (*rare*),	——	*to swell.*
Urgeo (urgueo)	urgēre,	ursi,	——	*to press.*

1. *Cieo, cīĕre, cīvi, cītum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio, cīre, cīvi, cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth.*
2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* in the Perfect, see 248. I.

270. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.*

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, tum (sum).**

Căveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	*to beware.*
Făveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	*to favor.*
Fŏveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	*to cherish.*
Mŏveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	*to move.*
Păveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	——	*to fear.*
Sĕdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	*to sit.*

So *circumsĕdeo* and *supersĕdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assĭdeo, ēre, assēdi, assessum;* but *dissĭdeo, praesĭdeo*, and *resĭdeo* want Supine.

Vĭdeo,	vīdēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	*to see.*
Vŏveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	*to vow.*

271. Third Irregularity.—*Perfect Reduplicated.*

Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mŏmordi,	morsum,	*to bite.*
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	*to hang.*
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spŏpondi,	sponsum,	*to promise.*
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tŏtondi,	tonsum,	*to shear.*

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5.

272. Deponent Verbs.

1. *Regular.*

Lĭceor,	licēri,	licĭtus sum,	*to bid.*
Mĕreor,	merēri,	merĭtus sum,	*to deserve.*
Pollĭceor,	pollicēri,	pollicĭtus sum,	*to promise.*
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuĭtus sum,	*to protect.*
Vĕreor,	verēri,	verĭtus sum,	*to fear.*

2. *Irregular.*

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	*to confess.*[1]
Mĕdeor,	medēri,	———	*to cure.*

[1] Confĭteor, ēri, confessus; so profĭteor

Misĕreor,	miserēri,	{ miserĭtus sum, misertus sum,	*to pity.*
Reor,	rēri,	rătus sum,	*to think.*

3. *Semi-Deponent.*—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	*to dare.*
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus sum,	*to rejoice.*
Sŏleo,	solēre,	solĭtus sum,	*to be accustomed.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Class I. Regular Formation in the Perfect.

273. Principal Parts in: { I. o (io), ĕre, si, tum. / II. o, ĕre, i, tum. / III. o, ĕre, si *or* i, sum.

I. o (io), ĕre, si, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant; the following are examples: [1]

Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	*to pluck.*
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi (*gsi*),	cinctum,	*to gird.*
Cōmo,	comĕre,	compsi,	comptum,	*to adorn.*
Dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	*to take away.*
Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	*to say.*
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	*to lead.*
Fingo,	fingĕre,	finxi,	fictum,	*to feign.*
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	*to carry.*
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	*to marry.*
Pingo,	pingĕre,	pinxi,	pictum,	*to paint.*
Prōmo,	promĕre,	prompsi,	promptum,	*to bring out.*
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexi,	rectum,	*to rule.*
Scalpo,	scalpĕre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	*to engrave.*
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	*to take.*
Trăho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	*to draw.*
Uro,	ūrĕre,	ussi,	ustum,	*to burn.*
Vĕho,	vehĕre,	vexi,	vectum,	*to carry.*
Vīvo,	vivĕre,	vixi,	victum,	*to live.*

1. *Change of Stem-Vowel in Compounds;* see 260.
Carpo: de-cerpo, decerpĕre, decerpsi, decerptum, *to pluck off.*
Rĕgo: di-rĭgo, dirigĕre, direxi, directum (260. I.), *to direct.*
Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirigo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres. and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.
2. *Compounds of Obsolete Simple Verbs* present the same vowel changes:
Lăcio (obs.): al-lĭcio, allicĕre, allexi, allectum (260. II.), *to allure.*
So *illicio, pellicio.* For *elicio*, see 276. II.
Spĕcio (obs.): a-spĭcio, aspicĕre, aspexi, aspectum, *to look at.*

[1] For *Euphonic Changes*, see 248.

II. o, ĕre, i, tum

These are the regular endings of verbs whose stems end in *u*; the following are examples:

Acuo,	ăcuĕre,	acui,	acūtum,	*to sharpen.*
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argūtum,	*to convict.*

Coarguo and *redarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbūtum,	*to imbue.*
Mĭnuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minūtum,	*to diminish.*
Ruo,	ruĕre,	rui,	rŭtum,	*to fall.*

Part. *rutūrus.*—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuĕre,	stătui,	statūtum,	*to place.*

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constĭtuo.*

Trĭbuo,	tribuĕre,	trĭbui,	tribūtum,	*to impart.*

1. *Perfect xi.*—The following in *uo* form the Perf. in *xi.*

Cŏquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	*to cook.*
Exstinguo,	exstinguĕre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	*to extinguish.*

So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*to flow.*
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	*to build.*

2. *Like verbs in uo* are the following:

Ico,	īcĕre,	īci,	ictum,	*to strike.*
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	solūtum,[1]	*to loose.*
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	volūtum,[1]	*to roll.*

III. o, ĕre, si *or* i, sum.[2]

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	*to kindle.*

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo, succendo.*

Cēdo,	cedĕre,	cessi,	cessum,	*to yield.*
Claudo,	claudĕre,	clausi,	clausum,	*to close.*

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclūdo, exclūdo.*

Cūdo,	cudĕre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	*to forge.*
Dĕfendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	*to defend.*

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo*, etc.

Dīvĭdo,	dividĕre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	*to divide.*
Evādo,	evadĕre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	*to evade.*

So other compounds of *vado*, 275.

Fīgo,	figĕre,	fixi,	fixum,	*to fasten.*
Findo,	findĕre,	fĭdi (findi),	fissum,	*to part.*
Flecto,	flectĕre,	flexi,	flexum,	*to bend.*

[1] *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *volūtum* for *volvtum.*

[2] For euphonic changes before *sum*, see 257. 1.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	*to flow.*
Frendo,	frendĕre,	——	frēsum, / fressum,	*to gnash.*
Laedo,	laedĕre,	laesi,	laesum,	*to hurt.*

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illīdo*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludĕre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	*to play.*
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	*to chew.*
Mergo,	mergĕre,	mersi,	mersum,	*to dip.*
Mitto,	mittĕre,	mīsi,	missum,	*to send.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	nexi, / nexui,[1]	nexum,	*to bind.*
Pando,	pandĕre,	pandi,	passum, / pansum,	*to open.*
Pecto,	pectĕre,	pexi,	pexum,	*to comb.*
Pinso (pīso),	pinsĕre,	pinsi, / pinsui,	pinsĭtum, / pistum, / pinsum,	*to pound.*
Plecto,	plectĕre,	plexi,	plexum,	*to plait.*
Plaudo,	plaudĕre,	plausi,	plausum,	*to applaud.*

[1] So *applaudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explōdo*, etc.

Prĕhendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	*to grasp.*

Often written, *prendo, prendĕre*, etc.

Prĕmo,	premĕre,	pressi,	pressum (248. I. 4),	*to press.*
Quătio,	quatĕre,	quassi,	quassum (248. I. 2),	*to shake.*

Compounds have *cu* for *qua*: *concŭtio*, etc.

Rādo,	radĕre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	*to shave.*
Rōdo,	rodĕre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	*to gnaw.*
Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	*to climb.*

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo, descendo.*

Scindo,	scindĕre,	scĭdi,	scissum,	*to rend.*
Spargo,	spargĕre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	*to scatter.*

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo, respergo.*

Tergo,	tergĕre,	tersi,	tersum,	*to wipe off.*

Also *tergeo, tergēre* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trūdo,	trudĕre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	*to thrust.*
Vello,	vellĕre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	*to pluck.*

Compounds in good use generally have *vellĭ.*

Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	*to brush.*
Verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	*to turn.*

Compounds of *de, prae, re*, are generally deponent in the *Pres., Imperf.*, and *Future.*

Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	vīsum,	*to visit.*

[1] Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

274. SUPINE WANTING.—The following verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine:

Ango, ĕre, anxi, *to strangle.*
Annuo, ĕre, i, *to assent.*
So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo*, has Part. *abnuitūrus.*
Bătuo, ĕre, i, *to beat.*
Bĭbo, ĕre, i, *to drink.*
Congruo, ĕre, i, *to agree.*
Ingruo, ĕre, i, *to assail.*
Lambo, ĕre, i, *to lick.*
Luo, ĕre, i, *to wash.*
Part. luitūrus. Compounds—*abluo, alluo*, etc. have Sup. *lūtum.*
Mĕtuo, ĕre, i, *to fear.*
Ningo, ĕre, ninxi, *to snow.*
Nuo, *obs.*; *see* annuo.
Pluo, ĕre, i *or* vi, *to rain.*
Psallo, ĕre, i, *to play on a stringed instrument.*
Sīdo, ĕre, i, *to sit down.*
Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sĕdeo*; hence *sēdi, sessum.* So in compounds.
Strīdo, ĕre, i, *to creak.*
Also *strideo, ēre* (Conj. II.).
Sternuo, ĕre, i, *to sneeze.*

275. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine.

1. The following:

Clango, *to clang.*
Claudo, *to be lame.*
Glisco, *to grow.*
Hisco, *to gape.*
Stinguo, *to quench*; but *distinguo, ĕre, distinxi, distinctum*; so *exstinguo.*
Temno, *to despise*; but *contemno, ĕre, contempsi, contemptum.*
Vādo, *to go.* See evādo, 273. III.
Vergo, *to incline.*

2. Many Inceptives. See 281. II. 1.

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Three Irregularities.*[1]

276. First Irregularity.—*Perfect after the Analogy of other Conjugations.*

I. Perfect in **āvi,** *as in Conjugation I.*

Invĕterasco,	inveterascĕre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	*to grow old.*
Pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*to feed.*
Sterno,	sternĕre,	strāvi,	strātum,	*to strew.*
Vĕtĕrasco,	veterascĕre,	veterāvi,	——	*to grow old.*

II. Perfect in **ēvi, ui,** *as in Conjugation II.*

1. The following:

Abŏlesco,	abolescĕre,	abolēvi,	abolĭtum,	*to disappear.*

So *inŏlesco*; but *adŏlesco* has Supine *adultum*; *exŏlesco, exolētum*; *obsŏlesco, obsolētum.*

Accumbo,	accumbĕre,	accŭbui,	accubĭtum,	*to recline.*

So other compounds of *cumbo, cubo.* See *cubo*, 262.

[1] For convenience of reference a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

Alo,	ălĕre,	alui,	{ alĭtum, altum,	*to nourish.*
Cello, *obsolete.*	*See* excello *below.*			
Cerno,	cernĕre	crēvi,	crētum,	*to decide.*
Cŏlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	*to cultivate.*
Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	——	*to restrain.*
Consŭlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	*to consult.*
Cresco,	crescere,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to grow.*

Incresco and *succresco* want Supine.

Cumbo *for* cubo, *in compounds: see* accumbo.

Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	{ depsĭtum, depstum,	*to knead.*
Ellĭcio,	ēlicĕre,	elicui,	elicĭtum,	*to elicit.*

Other compounds of *lăcio*, thus: *allĭcio, ĕre, allexi, allectum.*

Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui (*rare*),	——	*to excel.*

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello, percellĕre, percŭli, perculsum.*

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	*to rage.*
Fŭro,	furĕre,	furui,	——	*to rage.*
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	*to groan.*
Gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui (*f. gĕno*),	genĭtum,	*to beget.*
Lacio, *obsolete.*	*See* ellĭcio.			
Lĭno,	linĕre,	lēvi, līvi,	lĭtum,	*to smear.*
Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	*to reap.*
Mŏlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	*to grind.*
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexui, nexi,	nexum,	*to bind.*
Occŭlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	*to hide.*
Olesco, *obsolete.*	*See* abŏlesco.			
Pinso,	pinsĕre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	*to crush.*
Pōno,	ponĕre,	posui,	posĭtum,	*to place.*
Quiesco,	quiescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	*to rest.*
Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	*to snatch.*

Compounds thus: *corrĭpio, corripĕre, corripui, correptum.*

Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	*to connect.*
Sĕro,	serĕre,	sēvi,	sătum,	*to sow.*

Compounds thus: *consĕro, ĕre, consēvi, consĭtum.*

Sperno,	spernĕre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	*to spurn.*
Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	——	*to snore.*
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	*to make a noise.*
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*to become accustomed.*
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	*to weave.*
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	——	*to tremble.*
Vŏmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	*to vomit.*

2. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

III. Perfect in ĭvi, *as in Conjugation IV.*

1. The following:

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	*to call for.*
Căpesso,	capessĕre,	capessīvi,	capessītum,	*to lay hold of.*
Cŭpio,	cupĕre,	cupīvi,	cupītum,	*to desire.*
Făcesso,	facessĕre,	facessīvi, facessi,	facessītum,	*to make.*
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessīvi *or* -cessi,	——	*to attack.*
Lăcesso,	lacessĕre,	lacessīvi,	lacessītum,	*to provoke.*
Lĭno,	linĕre,	līvi *or* lēvi,	lītum,	*to smear.*
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petīvi,	petītum,	*to ask.*
Quaero,	quaerĕre,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	*to seek.*

Compounds thus: *acquīro, ĕre, acquisīvi, acquisītum.*

Rŭdo,	rudĕre,	rudīvi,	rudītum,	*to bray.*
Săpio,	sapĕre,	sapīvi, sapui,	——	*to taste.*

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *resīpio*. *Desīpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

Sĭno,	sinere,	sīvi,	sĭtum,	*to permit.*
Tĕro,	terĕre,	trīvi,	trītum,	*to rub.*

2. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *īvi* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

277. Perfect in ōvi.—*Nosco* and its compounds form the perfect in *ōvi* after the analogy of *ĭvi*, *ēvi*, and *īvi*:

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*to know.*

So *ignosco.—Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *ĭtum* in Sup., *agnĭtum; dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

278. Vowel Conjugation.—*Nosco*, verbs in *uo*, and regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form a complete *vowel-conjugation*, whose Perfects and Supines in the full form are entirely analogous, as follows:

ao,	āvi,	ātum;	amo (ao),	amāvi,	amātum.
eo,	ēvi,	ētum;	deleo,	delēvi,	delētum.
io,	īvi,	ītum;	audio,	audīvi,	audītum.
oo,	ōvi,	ōtum;	nosco (noo),	nōvi,	nōtum.
uo,	u(v)i,	ūtum;	acuo,	acu(v)i,	acūtum.

279. **Second Irregularity.**—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.* See 253. 1 and 2.

Ago,	ăgĕre,	ēgi,	actum,	*to drive.*

So *circumăgo* and *perăgo; satăgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *abĭgo, ĕre, abēgi, abactum;* but *cŏigo* becomes *cōgo, ĕre, coēgi, coactum*, and *dĕĭgo, dēgo, ĕre, dēgi*, without Sup. *Prodĭgo* wants Sup., and *ambĭgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Căpio,	capĕre,	cēpi,	captum,	*to take.*

So *antecăpio;* other compounds thus: *accĭpio, ĕre, accēpi, acceptum.*

Edo,	ĕdĕre,	ēdi,	ēsum,	*to eat.*
Emo,	ĕmĕre,	ēmi,	emptum,	*to buy.*

So *coëmo;* other compounds thus: *adĭmo, ĕre, adēmi, ademptum.*

Făcio,	facĕre,	fēci,	factum,	*to make.*

Passive irregular: *fio, fĭĕri, factus sum.* See 294.

So *satisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficio, conficĕre, confēci, confectum,* with regular Pass. *conficior, confĭci, confectus sum.*—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *significo, āre, āvi, ātum.*

Fŏdio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossum,	*to dig.*
Frango,	frangĕre,	frēgi,	fractum,	*to break.*

Compounds thus: *confringo, ĕre, confrēgi, confractum.*

Fŭgio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugĭtum,	*to flee.*
Fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fusum,	*to pour.*
Jăcio,	jacĕre,	jēci,	jactum,	*to throw.*

Superjacio has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio, ĕre, abjēci, abjectum.*

Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lēgi,	lectum,	*to read.*

So compounds, except (1) *collĭgo, ĕre, collēgi, collectum;* so *delĭgo, elĭgo, seligo,*—(2) *diligo, ĕre, dilexi, dilectum;* so *intellĭgo, neglĭgo.*

Linquo,	linquĕre,	līqui,	——	*to leave.*

Compounds with Sup.: *relinquo, ĕre, relīqui, relictum.*

Rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	*to burst.*
Scăbo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	——	*to scratch.*
Vinco,	vincĕre,	vīci,	victum,	*to conquer.*

280. Third Irregularity.—*Perfect Reduplicated.* See 254. 1–5.

Abdo,	abdĕre,	abdĭdi,	abdĭtum,	*to hide.*

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (264): *addo, condo, crēdo, dēdo, ēdo, indo, obdo, perdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo;* but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi.*

CăDo,	cadĕre,	cĕcĭdi,	cāsum,	*to fall.*

Incido, ĕre, incĭdi, incāsum; so *occido* and *recido;* other compounds want *supine.*

Caedo,	caedĕre,	cĕcīdi,	caesum,	*to cut.*

Compounds thus: *concido, ĕre, concīdi, concīsum.*

Căno,	canĕre,	cĕcĭni,	cantum,	*to sing.*

Concino, ĕre, concĭnui, ——; so *occino* and *praecino;* other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdo,	credĕre,	credĭdi,	credĭtum,[1]	*to believe.*

[1] Explained as compound of *do;* see *abdo.*

Curro,	currĕre,	cŭcurri,	cursum,	*to run.*

Excurro and *praecurro* generally retain the reduplication, *excŭcurri*, *praecŭcurri*; other compounds generally drop it.

Disco,	discĕre,	dĭdĭci,	——	*to learn.*
Do, *Conj. I.*	*See* abdo.			
Fallo,	fallĕre,	fĕfelli,	falsum,	*to deceive.*

Refello, ĕre, refelli, without Supine.

Pango,	pangĕre,	pĕpĭgi,	pactum,	*to bargain.*
Pango,	pangĕre,	panxi, / pĕgi,	panctum, / pactum,	*to fix in.*

Compingo, ĕre, compĕgi, compactum; so also *impingo*. *Depango* wants Perf.; *repango*, Perf. and Sup.

Parco,	parcĕre,	pĕrpĕrci (parsi),	parsum,	*to spare.*

Comparco, ĕre, comparsi, comparsum, also with *e* for *a*: *comperco, ĕre*, etc. *Imparco* and *reparco* want Perf. and Sup.

Părio,	parĕre,	pĕpĕri,	partum,	*to bring forth.*

Participle *paritūrus*; compounds are of Conj. IV.

Pello,	pellĕre,	pĕpŭli,	pulsum,[1]	*to drive.*
Pendo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,[1]	*to weigh.*
Posco,	poscĕre,	pŏposci,	——[2]	*to demand*
Pungo,	pungĕre,	pŭpŭgi,	punctum,	*to prick.*

Compounds thus: *compungo, ĕre, compunxi, compunctum.*

Sisto,	sistĕre,	stĭti,	stătum,	*to place.*

Sisto seems to have been derived from *sto*, and forms the Perf. and Sup. after that analogy.—Compounds thus: *consisto, ĕre, constĭti, constĭtum*; but *circumstĕti* also occurs.

Tango,	tangĕre,	tĕtĭgi,	tactum,	*to touch.*

Compounds thus: *attingo, ĕre, attĭgi, attactum.*

Tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	tentum, / tensum,	*to stretch.*

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum*; and *extendo, protendo* and *retendo* have both forms.

Tollo,	tollĕre,	tĕtŭli (obs.), / sustŭli,	sublātum,	*to raise.*

Attollo and *extollo* want Perf. and Sup.

Tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	tunsum, / tūsum,	*to beat.*

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tūsum* in Sup.

Vendo,	vendĕre,	vendĭdi,	venditum,[3]	*to sell.*

[1] Compounds drop reduplication, 254. 5.
[2] Compounds retain reduplication, 254. 5.
[3] Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo.*

281. Inceptives.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

I. Verbal Inceptives.

1. Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives.

The following are examples:

Acesco	(*aceo*),	acescĕre,	acui,	——	*to become sour.*
Aresco	(*areo*),	arescĕre,	arui,	——	*to become dry.*
Călesco	(*căleo*),	calescĕre,	calui,	——	*to become warm.*
Flōresco	(*flōreo*),	florescĕre,	florui,	——	*to begin to bloom.*
Mădesco	(*mădeo*),	madescĕre,	madui,	——	*to become moist.*
Tĕpesco	(*tĕpeo*),	tepescĕre,	tĕpui,	——	*to become warm.*
Vīresco	(*vīreo*),	virescĕre,	vīrui,	——	*to become green.*

2. The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives:

Abŏlesco	(*ab, oleo*),	ĕre,	ăbolēvi,	abolĭtum,[1]	*to disappear.*
Coălesco	(*con, alo*),	ĕre,	coălui,	coalĭtum,	*to coalesce.*
Concŭpisco	(*con, cupio*),	ĕre,	concupīvi,	concupĭtum,	*to desire.*
Convălesco	(*con, valeo*),	ĕre,	convălui,	convalĭtum,	*to grow strong.*
Exardesco	(*ex, ardeo*),	ĕre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	*to burn.*
Invĕtĕrasco	(*invĕtĕro*),	ĕre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	*to grow old.*
Obdormisco	(*ob, dormio*),	ĕre,	obdormīvi,	obdormītum,	*to fall asleep.*
Rĕvīvisco	(*re, vivo*),	ĕre,	revixi,	revictum,	*to revive.*
Scisco,	(*scio*),	ĕre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*to enact.*

3. The following are Inceptives only in form:

Cresco,	crescĕre,	crēvi,	crētum,	*to grow.*
Fătisco,	fatiscĕre,	——	——	*to gape.*
Glisco,	gliscĕre,	——	——	*to swell.*
Nosco,	noscĕre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	*to know.*
Pasco,	pascĕre,	pāvi,	pastum,	*to feed.*
Quiesco,	quiescĕre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	*to be quiet.*
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suēvi,	suētum,	*to be accustomed.*

II. Denominative Inceptives.

1. Most denominative inceptives want both Perfect and Supine. Thus

Aegresco (*aeger*),	*to grow sick.*	Jŭvĕnesco, (*juvĕnis*),	*to become a youth.*
Dītesco (*dīves*),	*to grow rich.*	Mītesco (*mītis*),	*to grow mild.*
Dulcesco (*dulcis*),	*to become sweet.*	Mollesco (*mollis*),	*to grow soft.*
Grandesco (*grandis*),	*to grow large.*	Puĕrasco (*puer*),	*to become a boy.*
Grăvesco (*grăvis*),	*to grow heavy.*	Pinguesco (*pinguis*),	*to grow fat.*

2. The following have the Perfect in *ui*:

Crēbresco	(*creber*),	ĕre,	crēbrui,	*to become frequent.*
Dūresco	(*durus*),	ĕre,	dūrui,	*to become hard.*

[1] So *inŏlesco*; but *adŏlesco* has Sup. *adultum*; *exŏlesco*, *exolētum*; *obsŏlesco*, *obsolētum*.

Evānesco	(*e, vanus*),	ĕre,	ēvānui,	*to vanish.*
Innōtesco	(*in, notus*),	ĕre,	innōtui,	*to become known.*
Macresco	(*macer*),	ĕre,	macrui,	*to become lean.*
Mātūresco	(*matūrus*),	ĕre,	mātūrui,	*to ripen.*
Nigresco	(*niger*),	ĕre,	nigrui,	*to become black.*
Obmūtesco	(*ob, mūtus*),	ĕre,	obmūtui,	*to grow dumb.*
Obsurdesco	(*ob, surdus*),	ĕre,	obsurdui,	*to become deaf.*
Recrūdesco	(*re, crūdus*),	ĕre,	recrūdui,	*to bleed afresh.*
Vīlesco	(*vilis*),	ĕre,	vīlui,	*to become worthless.*

282. Deponent Verbs.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	*to embrace.*

So *complector, circumplector.*

Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	*to obtain.*

Ădĭpiscor, i, adeptus sum, so *indĭpiscor.*

Commĭniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	*to devise.*

Rĕmĭniscor wants Perf.

Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	*to awake.*
Fătiscor,	i,	———	*to gape.*

Defĕtiscor, i, defessus sum.

Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum, fruĭtus sum,	*to enjoy.*

Part. *fruĭtūrus.*

Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	*to perform.*
Grădior,	i,	gressus sum,	*to walk.*

Compounds thus: *aggrĕdior, i, aggressus sum.*

Irascor,	i,	———	*to be angry.*
Lăbor,	i,	lapsus sum,	*to fall.*
Līquor,	i,	———	*to melt.*
Lŏquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	*to speak.*

Mĭniscor, *obsolete; see* commĭniscor.

Mŏrior,	i (īri, *rare*),	mortuus sum,	*to die.*

Part. *morĭtūrus.*

Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nanctus) sum,	*to obtain.*
Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	*to be born.*

Part. *nascĭtūrus.*

Nītor,	i,	{ nīsus sum, nixus sum,	*to strive.*
Oblīviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	*to forget.*
Păciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	*to bargain*
Pătior,	i,	passus sum,	*to suffer.*

Perpĕtior, i, perpessus sum.

Plector, *not used as Dep.; see* amplector.

Prŏfĭciscor,	i,	profectus sum,	*to set out.*
Quĕror,	i,	questus sum,	*to complain.*
Rĕmĭniscor,	i,	———	*to remember.*
Ringor,	i,	———	*to growl.*
Sĕquor,	i,	secūtus sum,	*to follow.*

Tuor, *antiquated form for tueor*, 272. 1.			
Ulciscor,	i,	ultus sum,	*to avenge.*
Utor,	i,	ūsus sum,	*to use.*
Vertor; *see* devertor, praevertor, revertor, 273. III.			
Vescor,	i,	———	*to eat.*

Semi-Deponent.

Fīdo,	fidĕre,	fīsus sum,	*to trust.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Class I. Regular Formation.

283. Principal Parts in: io, ire, ivi, itum.

The following are examples:

Audio,	audīre,	audīvi,	audītum,	*to hear.*
Condio,	condīre,	condīvi,	condītum,	*to season.*
Finio,	finīre,	finīvi,	finītum,	*to finish.*
Lēnio,	lenīre,	lenīvi,	lenītum,	*to alleviate.*
Mūnio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	*to fortify.*
Pūnio,	punīre,	punīvi,	punītum,	*to punish.*
Scio,	scīre,	scīvi,	scītum,	*to know.*
Sĕpĕlio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvi,	sepultum,[1]	*to bury.*
Sītio,	sitīre,	sitīvi,	———	*to thirst.*
Vāgio,	vagīre,	vagīvi,	———	*to cry.*

1. *Perfect in* ii *for* ivi.—*V* is often dropped in the ending of the Perfect; *audii* for *audivi*. See 234. 1.

2. *Perfect and Supine Wanting.*—Desideratives (332. III.), except *esŭrio, ire, —, itum; nuptūrio, ire, ivi,* and *partūrio, ire, ivi,* want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others:

Balbūtio,	*to stammer.*	Gannio,	*to bark.*	Singultio,	*to sob.*
Caecūtio,	*to be blind.*	Ineptio,	*to trifle.*	Sŭperbio,	*to be proud.*
Fĕrio,	*to strike.*	Sāgio,	*to be wise.*	Tussio,	*to cough.*
Fĕrōcio,	*to be fierce.*				

Class II. Irregular Formation.—*Two Irregularities.*

284. First Irregularity.—*Perfect after the Analogy of the Second and Third Conjugations.*

I. Perfect in ui, *as in Conjugation II.*

Principal Parts in: io, ire, ui, tum.

Amĭcio,	ămicīre,	(amicui [2]),	amictum,	*to clothe.*
Apĕrio,	ăpĕrīre,	aperui,	apertum,	*to open.*[3]
Opĕrio,	ŏperīre,	operui,	opertum,	*to cover.*[3]
Sălio,	salīre,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	*to leap.*

Compounds thus: *desĭlio, ire, ui (ii), (desultum).*

[1] Supine irregular. [2] Probably not in actual use. [3] From *pdrio* of Conj. III.

II. Perfect in **si (i)**, *as in Conjugation III.*

Principal Parts in: **io, īre, si (i), tum (sum).**

Compĕrio,	comperīre,	compĕri,	compertum,	*to learn.*[1]
Farcio,	farcīre,	farsi,	{ fartum, farctum,	*to stuff.*

Compounds thus: *confercio, īre, confersi, confertum.*

Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	*to prop.*
Haurio,	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	*to draw.*
Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	rausum,	*to be hoarse.*
Rĕpĕrio,	reperīre,	repĕri,	repertum,	*to find.*[1]
Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi,	{ sancītum, sanctum,	*to ratify.*
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	*to patch.*
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum,[2]	*to feel.*
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	*to hedge in.*
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	*to bind.*

285. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.*

Vĕnio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	*to come.*

So compounds: *advenio, convenio, devenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio,* etc.

286. Deponent Verbs.

1. *Regular.*

Blandior,	īri,	blandītus sum,	*to flatter.*
Largior,	īri,	largītus sum,	*to bestow.*
Mentior,	īri,	mentītus sum,	*to lie.*
Mōlior,	īri,	molītus sum,	*to strive.*
Partior,	īri,	partītus sum,	*to divide.*

Impertior, īri, impertītus sum; so *dispertior.*

Pŏtior,	īri,	potītus sum,[3]	*to obtain.*
Sortior,	īri,	sortītus sum,	*to draw lots.*

2. *Irregular.*

Assentior,	īri,	assensus sum,[4]	*to assent.*
Expĕrior,	īri,	expertus sum,[5]	*to try.*
Mētior,	īri,	mensus sum,	*to measure.*
Oppĕrior,	īri,	{ oppertus sum,[5] opperītus sum,	*to await.*
Ordior,	īri,	orsus sum,	*to begin.*
Orior,	īri,	ortus sum,	*to rise.*

Part. *orītūrus.*—Pres. Ind. of Conj. III., *orĕris, orĭtur.* Imp. Subj., *orīrer* or *orĕrer.*—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conj. IV.

---

[1] From *pārio* of Conj. III.

[2] Comp. *assentio* has a deponent form, *assentior.* See 286. 2.

[3] In the Pres. Ind. and Imp. Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

[4] Compounded of *ad* and *sentio.* See *sentio*, 284. II.

[5] Compounded of *ex* and *pario*; *ob* and *pario.* See *comperio*, 284. II.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

287. A few verbs which have unusual personal endings, are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

Sum, *edo*, *fero*, *volo*, *fio*, *eo*, *queo*,

and their compounds.

288. Sum, *I am.*

The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204.); its numerous compounds—*absum*,[1] *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,[1] etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

289. Possum, *I am able.*

possŭm, possĕ, pŏtŭi.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

possŭm,	pŏtĕs,	pŏtest;	possŭmŭs,	pŏtestĭs,	possunt.

IMPERFECT.

pŏtĕrăm,	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt;	pŏtĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant.

FUTURE.

pŏtĕrŏ,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	pŏtĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrunt.

PERFECT.

pŏtŭī,	-istī,	-ĭt;	pŏtŭĭmus,	-istĭs,	-ērunt *or* ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

pŏtuĕrăm,	-ĕrās,	-ĕrăt;	pŏtuĕrāmŭs,	-ĕrātĭs,	-ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

pŏtuĕrŏ,	-ĕrĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	pŏtuĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

possĭm,	possīs,	possĭt;	possīmŭs,	possītĭs,	possint.

IMPERFECT.

possĕm,	possēs,	possĕt;	possēmŭs,	possētĭs,	possent.

PERFECT.

pŏtuĕrĭm,	-erĭs,	-ĕrĭt;	pŏtuĕrĭmŭs,	-ĕrĭtĭs,	-ĕrint.

[1] *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

PLUPERFECT.

pŏtuissĕm, -issēs, -issĕt; pŏtuissēmŭs, -issētĭs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.— *Wanting.*

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
PRES.	possĕ.	PRES.	pŏtens (*as an adjective*).
PERF.	pŏtuissĕ.		

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *pŏtis sum*, *pŏtis sŭmus*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is* and that *t* final of the stem is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204. 1 and 2.

290. *Prōsum*, I profit, is compounded of *pro*, for, and *sum*, to be. It inserts *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*; *prōsum*, *prōdĕs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. Edo, *I eat.*

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms like those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus:

Edŏ, ĕdĕrĕ, ēdī, ēsŭm.

INDICATIVE.—*Present.*

ĕdŏ,	ĕdĭs,	ĕdĭt;	ĕdĭmŭs,	ĕdĭtĭs,	ĕdunt.
——	ēs,	est;	——	estis,	——

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Imperfect.*

ĕdĕrĕm,	ĕdĕrēs,	ĕdĕrĕt;	ĕdĕrēmŭs,	ĕdĕrētĭs,	ĕdĕrent.
essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt;	essēmŭs,	essētĭs,	essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ĕdĕ;	ĕdĭtĕ.	
	ēs;	estĕ.	
FUT.	ĕdĭtŏ;	ĕdĭtōtĕ,	ĕduntŏ.
	estŏ;	estōtĕ,	——

INFINITIVE.—*Present.*

ĕdĕrĕ, essĕ.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estŭr* for *ĕdĭtŭr* (Indic. Pres.) and *essētŭr* for *ĕdĕrētŭr* (Subj. Imp.) also occur.

2. FORMS IN IM for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ĕdim*, *ĕdis*, *ĕdit*, etc., for *ĕdăm*, *ĕdās*, *ĕdăt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comĕdo* has in Sup. *comēsum* or *comestum*.

292. Fero, *I bear.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fĕrŏ, ferrĕ, tŭli, lātŭm.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	fĕrŏ, fers, fert;	fĕrĭmŭs, fertĭs,[1] fĕrunt.
IMP.	fĕrēbăm;	fĕrēbāmŭs.
FUT.	fĕrăm;	fĕrēmŭs.
PERF.	tŭlī;	tŭlĭmŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlĕrăm;	tŭlĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	tŭlĕrŏ;	tŭlĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fĕrăm;	fĕrāmŭs.
IMP.	ferrĕm;	ferrēmŭs.[2]
PERF.	tŭlĕrĭm;	tŭlĕrĭmŭs.
PLUP.	tŭlissĕm;	tŭlissēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fĕr;[3]	fertĕ.
FUT.	fertŏ,	fertōtĕ
	fertŏ;	feruntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrĕ.[2]
PERF.	tŭlissĕ.
FUT.	lātūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	fĕrens.
FUT.	lātūrŭs.

GERUND.

Gen.	fĕrendī.
Dat.	fĕrendŏ.
Acc.	fĕrendŭm.
Abl.	fĕrendŏ.

SUPINE.

Acc.	lātŭm.
Abl.	lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fĕrŏr, ferrī, latus sum.

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fĕrŏr, ferrĭs, fertŭr;[4]	fĕrĭmŭr, fĕrĭmĭnī, fĕruntŭr.
IMP.	fĕrēbăr;	fĕrēbāmŭr.
FUT.	fĕrăr;	fĕrēmŭr.
PERF.	lātŭs sŭm;	lātī sŭmŭs.
PLUP.	lātŭs ĕrăm;	lātī ĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	lātŭs ĕrŏ;	lātī ĕrĭmŭs.

---

[1] *Fers* for *fĕris*; *fert* for *fĕrit*; *fertĭs* for *fĕrĭtĭs* (*i* dropped).

[2] *Ferrem*, etc. for *fĕrĕrĕm*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrĕrĕ* (*e* dropped).

[3] *Fĕr* for *fĕrĕ*; *fertŏ*, *fertĕ*, *fertōtĕ* for *fĕrītŏ*, *fĕrītĕ*, *fĕrītōtĕ* (*i* dropped).

[4] *Ferrĭs* for *fĕrĕrĭs*; *fertŭr* for *fĕrītŭr*.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fĕrăr;	fĕrāmŭr.
IMP.	ferrĕr;	ferrēmŭr.[1]
PERF.	lātŭs sĭm;	lātī sīmŭs.
PLUP.	lātŭs essĕm;	lātī essēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrĕ;[1]	fĕrĭmĭnī.
FUT.	fertŏr,[2]	——
	fertŏr;[2]	fĕruntŏr.

INFINITIVE. PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferrī.[3]		
PERF.	lātŭs essĕ.	PERF.	lātŭs.
FUT.	lātŭm īrī.	FUT.	fĕrendŭs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fero*, it will be seen, has two principal irregularities:

1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tŭli* (rarely *tĕtŭlī*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.

2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* in certain forms of the Pres. Indic. and Infin., the Imperf. Subj. and the Imperat. It doubles *r* in the Pres. Infin. Pass.

2. COMPOUNDS of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

ab-	aufĕro,	auferre,	abstŭli,	ablātum.
ad-	affĕro,	afferre,	attŭli,	allātum.
con-	conflĕro,	conferre,	contŭli,	collātum.
dis-	diffĕro,	differre,	distŭli,	dilātum.
ex-	effĕro,	efferre,	extŭli,	elātum.
in-	inflĕro,	inferre,	intŭli,	illātum.
ob-	offĕro,	offerre,	obtŭli,	oblātum.
sub-	suffĕro,	sufferre,	sustŭli,	sublātum.

Sustŭli and *sublātum* are not used in the sense of *suffĕro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 280.

293. Volo, *I am willing.*—Nolo, *I am unwilling.*—Malo, *I prefer.*

vŏlŏ,	vellĕ,	vŏluī.
nōlŏ	nollĕ,	nōluī.
mālŏ,	mallĕ,	māluī.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

vŏlŏ,	nōlŏ,	mālŏ,
vīs,	non vīs,	māvīs,
vult;	non vult;	māvult;
vŏlŭmŭs,	nōlŭmŭs,	mālŭmŭs,
vultĭs,	non vultĭs,	māvultĭs,
vŏlunt.	nōlunt	māluntt.

[1] *Ferrĕr*, etc., for *fĕrĕrĕr*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrĕrĕ*.

[2] *Fertŏr* for *fĕrĭtŏr*.

[3] *Ferrī* for *fĕrī* (Conj. III.).

	IMPERFECT.	
vŏlēbăm, bās, etc.	nōlēbăm, bās, etc.	mālēbăm, bās, etc.
	FUTURE.	
vŏlăm.	nōlăm.	mālăm.
	PERFECT.	
vŏluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
	PLUPERFECT.	
vŏluĕrăm.	nōluĕrăm.	māluĕrăm.
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
vŏluĕrŏ.	nōluĕrŏ.	māluĕrŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	PRESENT.	
vĕlĭm	nōlĭm	mālĭm
vĕlīs	nōlīs	mālīs
vĕlĭt	nōlĭt	mālĭt
vĕlīmŭs	nōlīmŭs	mālīmŭs
vĕlītĭs	nōlītĭs	mālītĭs
vĕlint.	nōlint.	mālint.
	IMPERFECT.	
vellĕm [1]	nollĕm	mallĕm
vellēs	nollēs	mallēs
vellĕt	nollĕt	mallĕt
vellēmŭs	nollēmŭs	mallēmŭs
vellētĭs	nollētĭs	mallētĭs
vellent.	nollent.	mallent.
	PERFECT.	
vŏluĕrĭm.	nōluĕrĭm.	māluĕrĭm.
	PLUPERFECT.	
vŏluissĕm.	nōluissĕm.	māluissĕm.

IMPERATIVE.

	PRESENT.	
	nōlī, nōlītĕ.	
	FUTURE.	
	nōlītŏ, nōlītōtĕ; nōlītŏ, nōluntŏ.	

[1] *Vellem* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velĕrem, velĕre;* *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velĕrem, velrem, vellem; velĕre, velre, velle.* So *nollem* and *nolle*, for *nolĕrem* and *nolĕre; mallem* and *malle*, for *malĕrem* and *malĕre.*

Infinitive.

Present.

vellĕ.	nollĕ.	mallĕ.

Perfect.

vŏluissĕ.	nōluissĕ.	māluissĕ.

Participle.

vŏlens.	nōlens.	

1. Composition.—*Nōlo* is compounded of *ne* or *non* and *vŏlo; mālo*, of *măgis* and *vŏlo.*

2. Rare Forms.—(1) Of vŏlo: *volt, voltis*, for *vult, vultis; sis, sultis*, for *si vis, si vultis; vin'* for *visne.*—(2) Of nōlo: *nevis, nevult* (*nevolt*), *nevelle*, for *non vis, non vult, nolle.*—(3) Of malo: *mavŏlo, mavēlim, mavellem*, for *malo, mālim, mallem.*

294. Fio, *I become.*

Fĭŏ, fĭĕrī, factŭs sum.

Indicative.

	singular.	plural.
Pres.	fĭŏ, fīs, fīt;	fīmŭs, fītĭs, fĭunt.
Imp.	fīēbăm;	fīēbāmŭs.
Fut.	fīăm;	fīēmŭs.
Perf.	factŭs sŭm;	factī sŭmŭs.
Plup.	factŭs ĕrăm;	factī ĕrāmŭs.
Fut. Perf.	factŭs ĕrŏ;	factī ĕrĭmŭs.

Subjunctive.

Pres.	fīăm;	fīāmŭs.
Imp.	fĭĕrĕm;	fĭĕrēmŭs.
Perf.	factŭs sĭm;	factī sīmŭs.
Plup.	factŭs essĕm;	factī essēmŭs.

Imperative.

Pres.	fī;	fītĕ.

Infinitive.		Participle.	
Pres.	fĭĕrī.		
Perf.	factŭs essĕ.	Perf.	factŭs.
Fut.	factŭm īrī.	Fut.	făciendŭs.

1. Irregularity.—*Fio* is only slightly irregular, as will be seen from the paradigm.

2. Meaning.—*Fio* means (1) *to become*, (2) *to be made, appointed.* In the second sense it is used as the passive of *facio.* See 279.

3. Compounds of *fio* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confit, defit*, and *infit* are defective. See 297. III. 2.

295. Eo, *I go.*

Eŏ, īrĕ, īvī, ītŭm.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	eŏ, īs, ĭt;	īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.
IMP.	ībăm;	ībāmŭs.
FUT.	ībŏ;	ībĭmŭs.
PERF.	īvī;	īvīmŭs.
PLUP.	īvĕrăm;	īvĕrāmŭs.
FUT. PERF.	īvĕrŏ;	īvĕrĭmŭs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eăm;	eāmŭs.
IMP.	īrĕm;	īrēmŭs.
PERF.	īvĕrĭm;	īvĕrĭmŭs.
PLUP.	īvissĕm;	īvissēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ī;	ītĕ.
FUT.	ītŏ,	ītōtĕ
	ītŏ;	euntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	īrĕ.
PERF.	īvissĕ.
FUT.	ītūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	iens.	*Gen.* euntĭs.
FUT.	ītūrŭs.	

GERUND.

Gen.	eundī.
Dat.	eundŏ.
Acc.	eundŭm.
Abl.	eundŏ.

SUPINE.

Acc.	ītŭm.
Abl.	ītū.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 284: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo* as an intransitive verb wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular *itur*, *ībātur*, etc. (301. 3), but *īri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amātum īri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *ivi* into *ii*.—*Vĕneo* (*venum eo*) has sometimes *veniēbam* for *venībam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eam*, *ies*, *iet*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adīris*, *adītur*, etc.

Ambio is regular, like *audio*, though *ambĭbam* for *ambiēbam* occurs.

296. Queo, *I am able.* Nequeo, *I am unable.*

Queo, quīre, quīvi, quītum, and *Nequeo, nequīre, nequīvi* (*ii*), *nequītum*, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare, except in the Present tense.[1]

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts: we specify the following.[2]

I. Present System Wanting.

Coepi, *I have begun.* Memĭni, *I remember.* Odi, *I hate.*

Indicative.

Perf.	coepī.	mĕmĭnī.	ōdī.
Plup.	coepĕrăm.	mĕmĭnĕrăm.	ōdĕrăm.
Fut. Perf.	coepĕrŏ.	mĕmĭnĕrŏ.	ōdĕrŏ.

Subjunctive.

Perf.	coepĕrĭm.	mĕmĭnĕrĭm.	ōdĕrĭm.
Plup.	coepissĕm.	mĕminissĕm.	ōdissem.

Imperative.

		S. mĕmentŏ.	
		P. mĕmentōte.	

Infinitive.

Perf.	coepissĕ.	memĭnisse.	ōdisse.
Fut.	coeptūrŭs essĕ.		ōsūrŭs essĕ.

Participle.

Perf.	coeptŭs.		ōsŭs.[3]
Fut.	coeptūrŭs.		ōsūrŭs.

1. Passive Form.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum, ĕram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. Present in Sense.—*Memĭnī* and *ōdī* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

---

[1] A passive form, *quītur, nequītur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

[2] Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs.

[3] *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, perōsus.*

II. Parts of Each System Wanting.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes.*[1]

Indic.	*Pres.*	āio,	aīs,[2]	aĭt;	——	——	āiunt.
	Imp.	āiēbăm,	-ēbās,	-ēbăt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātĭs,	-ēbant.[3]
	Perf.	——	——	aĭt;	——	——	——
Subj.	*Pres.*	——	āiās,	āiāt;	——	——	āiant.
Imper.	*Pres.*	ai (*rare*).					
Part.	*Pres.*	āiens (*as adjective*).					

2. Inquam, *I say.*

Indic.	*Pres.*	inquăm,	inquĭs,	inquĭt;	inquĭmŭs,	inquĭtĭs,	inquiunt.
	Imp.	——	——	inquiēbăt;[4]	——	——	——
	Fut.	——	inquiēs,	inquiĕt;	——	——	——
	Perf.	——	inquistī,	inquĭt;	——	——	——
Imper.	*Pres.*	inque. *Fut.* inquĭtō.[5]					

3. Fari, *to speak.*[6]

Indic.	*Pres.*	——	——	fātur;	——	——	——
	Fut.	fābŏr,	——	fābĭtŭr;	——	——	——
	Perf.	fātŭs sŭm,	es,	est;	fātī sŭmŭs,	estĭs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātŭs erăm,	erās,	erăt;	fātī erāmŭs,	erātĭs,	ĕrant.
Subj.	*Perf.*	fātŭs sīm,	sīs,	sĭt;	fātī sīmŭs,	sītĭs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātŭs essĕm,	essēs,	essĕt;	fātī essēmŭs,	essētis,	essent.
Imper.	*Pres.*	fārĕ.					
Infin.	*Pres.*	fārī.					
Part.	*Pres.*	(fans) fantis, *Perf.* fātŭs, *Fut.* fandŭs.					
Gerund, *Gen.* and *Abl.* fandī, dŏ. Supine, *Abl.* fātū.							

III. Imperatives and Isolated Forms.

1. Imperatives.—	ăvē,	avēte;	avētŏ;	Inf. avēre,	*hail.*
	salvē,	salvētĕ,	salvētŏ;[7]	salvēre,	*hail.*
	cēdŏ,	cettĕ,			*tell me, give me.*
	ăgĕ,[8]	ăgĭtĕ,			*come.*
	ăpăgĕ,				*begone.*

---

[1] In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo*, *a'-is*. See 9. 2.

[2] The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened to *ain'*.

[3] *Aībam*, *aības*, etc., occur in comedy.

[4] Also written *inquiībat*.

[5] A few forms of the Subj. are sometimes given, but they are not found in the classics.

[6] *Fāri* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple; thus: *affāmur*, *affāmini*, *affābar*, *effabĕris*. Subj. Imp. *fārer* also occurs in compounds.

[7] The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

[8] *Age* is also used in the sense of the Plural.

2. Isolated Forms.

Indic. *Pres.*	*Fut.*	Sub. *Pres.*	*Imp.*	Infin.	
confĭt, ——	——	confĭăt,	confĭĕrĕt,	confĭĕrī,	*to be done.*
dĕfit, defĭunt,	defĭet,	defĭăt,	——	defĭĕrī,	*to be wanting.*
infit, infĭunt,	——	——	——	——	*to begin.*

Sub. *Imp.* fŏrĕm, fŏrēs, fŏrĕt, —— —— fŏrent. Inf. fŏrĕ.[1]
Ind. *Pres.* ŏvăt. Part. ŏvans, *he rejoices.*
Ind. *Pres.* quaesŏ, quaesŭmŭs,[2] *I pray.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it: licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.[3] They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only:

Dĕcĕt,	dĕcuĭt,	*it becomes.*[4]	Pĭgĕt,	pĭguĭt, pĭgĭtŭm est,	*it grieves.*
Lĭbĕt,	lĭbuĭt, lĭbĭtŭm est,	*it pleases.*[4]	Poenĭtĕt,	poenĭtuĭt,	*it causes regret;* poenĭtet me, *I repent.*
Lĭcĕt,	lĭcuĭt, lĭcĭtŭm est,	*it is lawful.*[4]	Pŭdĕt,	pŭduĭt, pŭdĭtŭm est,	*it shames.*
Lĭquĕt,	lĭcuĭt,	*it is evident.*[4]	Taedĕt,	*it wearies;* pertaedĕt, pertaesŭm est.	
Misĕrĕt, me misĕret,		*it excites pity; I pity.*			
Oportĕt,	ŏportuĭt,	*it behooves.*			

1. Participles are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from libet: *lĭbens*, willing; (2) from licet: *lĭcens*, free; *lĭcĭtŭs*, allowed; (3) from poenitet: *poenĭtens*, penitent; *poenĭtendŭs*, to be repented of; (4) from pudet: *pŭdens*, modest; *pŭdendŭs*, shameful.

2. Gerunds are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances; *poenĭtendŭm*, *pŭdendŏ*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmĭnăt,	*it lightens.*	Pluit (P. pluit),	*it rains.*
Grandĭnăt,	*it hails.*	Rōrăt,	*dew falls.*
Lăpĭdăt,	*it rains stones.*	Tŏnăt (tŏnuĭt),	*it thunders.*
Lūcescĭt,	*it grows light.*	Vespĕrascĭt,	*evening approaches.*
Ningit (ninxit),	*it snows.*		

---

1 *Forem* = essem; *fore* = futurum esse. See 204. 1.

2 Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

3 The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause, sometimes a neuter pronoun: *hoc fĭĕri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

4 These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject. So the Comp. *dēdĕcet*. So also some of the others in rare instances.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally. Thus

1. The following:

Accĭdit,	*it happens.*	Fit,	*it happens.*
Appāret,	*it appears.*	Intĕrest,	*it concerns.*
Attĭnet,	*it concerns.*	Jŭvat,	*it delights.*
Condūcit,	*it is useful.*	Pătet,	*it is plain.*
Constat,	*it is evident.*	Pertĭnet,	*it pertains.*
Contingit,	*it happens.*	Plăcet,	*it pleases.*
Convĕnit,	*it is fitting.*	Praestat,	*it is better.*
Delectat,	*it delights.*	Praetĕrit (me),	*it escapes (me).*
Displĭcet,	*it displeases.*	Rĕfert,	*it concerns.*
Dŏlet,	*it grieves.*	Restat,	*it remains.*
Evĕnit,	*it happens.*	Sŭbit,	*it occurs.*
Expĕdit,	*it is expedient.*	Suffĭcit,	*it suffices.*
Fallit, Fŭgit (me),	*it escapes (me).*	Supĕrest,	*it remains.*
		Văcat,	*there is leisure.*

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation (233) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write;* tibi scribendum est, *you must write;* illi scribendum est, *he must write.*

3. Verbs which are intransitive in the active, i. e., do not govern the accusative, can only be used impersonally in the passive, and many others may be so used. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi creditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed;* tibi creditur, *you are believed;* illi creditur, *he is believed;* certātur, *it is contended;* currĭtur, *there is running, people run;* pugnātur, *it is fought, they, we,* etc., *fight;* scribĭtur, *it is written;* venītur, *they come, we come,* etc.; vivĭtur, *we, you, they live.*

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. The Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles:* the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection.*

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currĕre*, to run swiftly; *tam celer*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

I. Adverbs of Place.

Hīc,	*here;*	hūc,	*hither;*	hinc,	*hence.*
illīc,	*there;*	illūc,	*thither;*	illinc,	*thence.*
istīc,	*there;*	istūc,	*thither;*	istinc,	*thence.*
ŭbi,	*where?*	quō,	*whither?*	undĕ,	*whence?*

II. Adverbs of Time.

Hŏdiĕ,	*to-day.*	nondum,	*not yet.*	saepĕ,	*often.*
ĭbi,	*then.*	nunc,	*now.*	sĕmĕl,	*once.*
jam,	*now.*	nunquam,	*never.*	tum,	*then.*
jamdūdum,	*long since.*	ōlim,	*formerly.*	unquam,	*ever.*

III. Adverbs of Manner, Means, Degree.

Adeo,	*so.*	paenĕ,	*almost.*	sīc,	*so.*
alĭter,	*otherwise.*	pălam,	*openly.*	ŭt,	*as.*
ĭta,	*so.*	prorsus,	*wholly.*	valdĕ,	*much.*
măgis,	*more.*	rīte,	*rightly.*	vix,	*scarcely.*

IV. Adverbs of Cause, Inference.

Cūr,	*why?*	eo,	*for this reason.*
quārĕ,	*wherefore.*	ĭdeo,	*on this account.*
quamobrem,	*wherefore.*	idcirco,	*therefore.*
quapropter,	*wherefore.*	proptĕreā,	*therefore.*

305. Comparison.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē*:

altus,	altĭor,	altissĭmus,	*lofty.*
alte,	altius,	altissĭme,	*loftily.*
prūdens,	prudentior,	prudentissĭmus,	*prudent.*
prūdenter,	prudentius,	prudentissĭme,	*prudently.*

1. Magis and Maxime.—When the adjective is compared with *măgis* and *maxĭme*, the adverb is compared in the same way:

egregius,	măgis egregius,	maxĭme egregius,	*excellent.*
egregie,	măgis egregie,	maxĭme egregie,	*excellently.*

2. Irregular Comparison.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity:

bŏnus,	melior,	optĭmus,	*good.*
bĕne,	melius,	optĭme,	*well.*
măle,	pejus,	pessĭme,	*badly.*

3. Defective Comparison.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective:

———	deterior,	deterrĭmus,	*worse.*
———	deterius,	deterrĭme,	*worse.*
nŏvus,	———	novissĭmus,	*new.*
nŏve,	———	novissĭme,	*newly.*

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared:

dĭū,	diutius,	dĭutissĭme,	*for a long time.*
saepĕ,	saepius,	saepissĭme,	*often.*
sătis,	satius,	———	*sufficiently.*
nūper,	———	nuperrĭme,	*recently.*

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hic*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgariter*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs: *primo, primum, potissĭmum.*

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me.

For list of prepositions, see 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambi, amb*, around, about; *dis, di*, asunder; *re, red*, back; *se*, aside, apart; *ne* and *ve*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pater* ET *filius*, the father and son; *pater* AUT *filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *labor voluptasque*, labor and pleasure; *Carthaginem cepit ac diruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dum colligunt, effŭgit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, quĕ, atquĕ, ăc, *and.* Etiam, quŏquĕ, *also.* Nĕquĕ, nĕc, *and not.* Nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ, nĕc—nĕc, nĕquĕ—nĕc, *neither—nor.*

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation:

Aut, vĕl, vĕ, sīvĕ (seu), *or*. Aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or*. Sīvĕ—sīvĕ, *either—or*.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition:

Sĕd, autem, vērum, vĕro, *but*. At, *but, on the contrary*. Atquī, *but rather*. Cētĕrum, *but still*. Tămen, *yet*.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference:

Ergo, ĭgĭtŭr, inde, proinde, ĭtăque, *hence, therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause:

Nam, namque, ĕnim, etĕnim, *for*.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions:

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time:

Quando, quum, *when*. Ut, ŭbi, *as, when*. Quum prīmum, ut prīmum, ŭbi prīmum, sīmŭl, sīmŭlac, sīmŭlatque, *as soon as*. Dum, dōnĕc, quoad, quamdiu, *while, until, as long as*. Antĕquam, priusquam, *before*. Posteăquam, *after*.

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison:

Ut, ŭtī, sīcŭt, sīcŭtī, *as, so as*. Vĕlŭt, *just as*. Praeŭt, proŭt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quam, *as*. Tanquam, quāsi, ŭt sī, āc sī, vĕlŭt sī, *as if*.

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition:

Sī, *if*. Sī nōn, nīsī, nī, *if not*. Sīn, *but if*. Sī quĭdem, *if indeed*. Sī mŏdŏ, dum, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *if only*.

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession:

Quamquam, lĭcet, quum, *although*. Etsī, tămetsī, etiamsī, *even if*. Quamvīs, quantumvīs, quantumlĭbet, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nē, *grant that not*.

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end:

Ut, ŭtī, *that, in order that*. Nē, nāyĕ (neu), *that not*. Quō, *that*. Quōmĭnŭs, *that not*.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result:

Ut, *so that*. Ut nōn, quīn, *so that not*.

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause:

Quiă, quŏd, *because.* Quum, *since.* Quŏniam, quandŏ, quandŏquĭdem, sīquĭdem, *since indeed.*

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry:

Nĕ, nonnĕ, num, utrum, an, *whether.* An nōn, necne, *or not.*

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment: *ō, hem, ehem, hui, aha, ătat, păpae, vah, ĕn, eccĕ.*
2. Joy: *io, ha, he, eu, ĕvoe.*
3. Sorrow: *vae, hei, heu, ĕheu, ohē, ah, au, prō* or *proh.*
4. Disgust: *ahă, phuī, ăpăgĕ.*
5. Calling: *heus, o, eho, ehodum.*
6. Praise: *eugĕ, ejă, hejă.*

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. WORDS may be formed in two ways:

I. By DERIVATION; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words: *amor*, love, from *amo*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems: *benevŏlens*, well-wishing, from *bene*, well, and *volens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds;* those not thus formed are called *Simple Words.*

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives;* those not thus formed are called *Primitives.*

DERIVATION OF WORDS.

NOUNS.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs.*

I. Nouns from Nouns.

315. Diminutives generally end in

ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.

hort-ŭlus,	*a small garden,*	from	hortus,	*garden.*
virg-ŭla,	*a small branch,*	"	virga,	*branch.*
oppid-ŭlum,	*a small town,*	"	oppĭdum,	*town.*
flos-cŭlus,	*a small flower,*	"	flos,	*flower.*
part-i-cŭla,	*a small part,*	"	pars,	*part.*
munus-cŭlum,	*a small present,*	"	munus,	*present.*

1. **Ulus, ŭla, ŭlum** are generally added to the stems of nouns of Dec. I. and II., and to some of Dec. III.

2. **Olus, ŏla, ŏlum** are used for *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum,* when a vowel precedes: *filiŏlus,* little son, from *filius; filiŏla,* little daughter, from *filia; atriŏlum,* small hall, from *atrium.*

3. **Ellus, ella, ellum; illus, illa, illum,** are sometimes used, especially with primitives of Dec. I. and II., whose stems end in **l, n,** or **r**; but *el* and *il* in these endings generally displace the last syllable of the stem: *ocellus,* small eye, from *ocŭlus; fabella,* short fable, from *fabŭla; bacillum,* small staff, from *bacŭlum.*

4. **Cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum** are used with primitives of Dec. IV. and V., and with some of Dec. III. These are appended

1) To the *Nominative: flos, flos-cŭlus; mulier, muliercŭla; munus, munuscŭlum.*

2) To the *Stem* with a connecting vowel **i**, sometimes **e**: *pons* (bridge), *pont-i-cŭlus; pars, particŭla; vulpes* (fox), *vulpecŭla.*

3) To the *Stem* of nouns in **o** (G. **onis, inis**), with stem-vowel changed to **u**: *homo* (man), *homun-cŭlus; virgo* (maiden), *virguncŭla.* Like nouns in *o*, a few other words form diminutives in *uncŭlus, uncŭla: avus* (uncle), *avuncŭlus; domus* (house), *domuncŭla.*

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *equuleus,* a small horse, from *equus; homuncio,* a small man, from *homo.*

316. Patronymics, or names of descent, generally end in

	ĭdes,	**ēs,**	**ădes,**	*masculine.*
	ĭs,	**ēis,**	**as,**	*feminine.*

Tantal-ĭdes,	*son of Tantalus;*	Tantăl-is,	*daughter of Tantalus.*
Thes-ĭdes,	*son of Theseus;*	Thes-ēis,	*daughter of Theseus.*
Laert-iădes,	*son of Laertes;*	Laert-ias,	*daughter of Laertes.*
Thesti-ădes,	*son of Thestius;*	Thesti-as,	*daughter of Thestius.*

1. **Ides** (I) and **ĭs** are the common endings.

2. **Ides** (I) and **ēis** are used especially with primitives in *eus.*

3. **Iădes, ădes,** and **ias, as,** are used principally with primitives in *ius,* and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Aenĕădes,* masc. and *Aenēis,* fem.

4. **Ine** and **ōne** are rare feminine endings: *Neptun-ine*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrisi-ōne*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings

ārium,	**ētum,**	**īle.**	
columb-ārium,	*a dovecot*,	from	columba.
querc-ētum,	*a forest of oaks*,	"	quercus.
ov-īlę,	*a sheepfold*,	"	ovis.

1. **Arium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Etum**, used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they flourish: *olivētum*, an olive grove, from *oliva*.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bovīle*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius, **ĭo,**	**ium,** **ĭtium,**	**tus (ĭtus),**	**ātus.**
statu-ārius,	*a statuary*,	from	statua.
lud-io,	*a player*,	"	ludus.
sacerdot-ium,	*priesthood*,	"	sacerdos.
serv-itium,	*servitude*,	"	servus.
vir-tus,	*virtue*,	"	vir.
consul-ātus,	*consulship*,	"	consul.

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **ĭtium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **ĭtus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *juventus*, youth, from *juvĕnis*.

4. **Atus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *senātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *senex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326. 3.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various *Abstract Nouns* with the endings

ia,	**ĭtia,**	**ĭtas,**	**ĭtūdo,**	**ĭmōnia.**
diligent-ia,	*diligence*,	from		dilĭgens.
amic-itia,	*friendship*,	"		amīcus.
bon-ĭtas,	*goodness*,	"		bonus.
sol-itūdo,	*solitude*,	"		solus.
acr-imonia,	*sharpness*,	"		acer.

1. **Itas, tas, ĕtas.**—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *lībertas*, liberty, from *liber*; *ĕtas* is used with primitives in *ius*; *pĭĕtas*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes

the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *facĭlis, facultas,* faculty; *difficĭlis, difficultas,* difficulty; *potens, potestas,* power; *honestus, honestas,* honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ĭtas.**—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *firmus, firmĭtas, firmitūdo,* firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo: sollĭcĭtus, sollicitūdo,* solicitude.

3. **Imonia** is rare: *Parsimonia,* parsimony, from *parcus,* changes *c* into *s.*

III. Nouns from Verbs.

1. From the Present Stem.

320. From the Present stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with various endings, especially with

or; ium; men, mentum; bŭlum, cŭlum, brum, crum, trum.

am-or,	*love,*	from	amo.
tĭm-or,	*fear,*	"	timeo.
gaud-ium,	*joy,*	"	gaudeo.
cert-ā-men,	*contest,*	"	certo.
orn-ā-mentum,	*ornament,*	"	orno.
voc-a-bŭlum,	*appellation,*	"	voco.
veh-ĭ-cŭlum,	*vehicle,*	"	veho.
fl-a-brum,	*blast,*	"	flo.
simul-ā-crum,	*image,*	"	simŭlo.
ar-ā-trum,	*plough,*	"	aro.

1. **Or** designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium** has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done: aedĭfĭcium,* edifice, from *aedĭfico.*

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject: flumen,* a stream, something which flows, from *fluo; agmen,* an army in motion, from *ago.*

These endings are generally preceded by a connecting vowel: *orn-a-mentum,* ornament; *vest-ĭ-mentum,* clothing. Sometimes the stem itself is shortened or changed: *fragmentum,* fragment, from *frango; momentum,* moving force, from *moveo.*

4. **Bŭlum, cŭlum, brum, crum, trum** designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehicŭlum,* vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho; stabŭlum,* stall, place of the action, from *sto.*

These endings generally take a connecting vowel. Sometimes the stem itself is changed: *sepulcrum,* sepulchre, from *sepelio.*

5. **Ulum, ŭla.**—*Ulum* for *cŭlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vinc-ŭlum,* a bond, from *vincio; cing-ŭlum,* girdle, from *cingo. Ula* also occurs: *regŭla,* rule, from *rego.*

6. **Us, a, o** sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *coquus,* cook, from *coquo; scriba,* writer, from *scribo; erro,* wanderer, from *erro.*

7. **Ela, ido, igo** and a few other endings also occur: *querēla,* complaint, from *queror; cupīdo,* desire, from *cupio; orīgo,* origin, from *orior.*

2. From the Supine Stem.

321. From the Supine stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with the endings

or,	**io,**	**us,**	**ūra.**
amāt-or,	*lover*,	from	amo.
audīt-or,	*hearer*,	"	audio.
monit-io,	*advising*,	"	moneo.
audit-io,	*hearing*,	"	audio.
audīt-us,	*hearing*,	"	audio.
cant-us,	*singing*,	"	cano.
pict-ūra,	*painting*,	"	pingo.

1. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. When *t* precedes, corresponding feminine nouns are generally formed by changing *tor* into *trix*: *victor, victrix.*

2. **Io, us,** and **ūra** form *abstract* nouns, and denote the *act* itself.

ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs,* and *Adverbs.*

I. Adjectives from Nouns.

1. From Common Nouns.

323. Fulness.—Adjectives denoting *fulness, abundance, supply,* generally end in

ōsus,	**lentus,**	**ātus,**	**ītus,**	**ūtus.**
anim-ōsus,	*full of courage*,	from		animus.
op-u-lentus,	*opulent*,	"		opes.
al-ātus,	*winged*,	"		ala.
turr-ītus,	*turreted*,	"		turris.
corn-ūtus,	*horned*,	"		cornu.

1. **Uōsus** is used for *ōsus* in adjectives from nouns of Dec. IV. and in some others: *fructuōsus,* fruitful.

2. **Lentus** takes a connecting vowel, generally *u,* sometimes *o*: *op-u-lentus, vin-o-lentus.*

3. **Estus** and **ustus** also occur, but generally with a change in the stem; *modestus,* modest, from *modus; justus,* just, from *jus.*

324. Material.—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eus, ĭnus, nus, neus; rarely **āceus,** and **ĭcius.**

aur-eus,	*golden*,	from	aurum.
cedr-ĭnus,	*cedar*,	"	cedrus.
popul-nus,	*of poplar*,	"	populus.
popul-neus,	*of poplar*,	"	populus.

papyr-āceus,	*of papyrus*,	from	papȳrus.
later-ĭcius,	*of brick*,	"	later.

325. CHARACTERISTIC.—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in

ĭcus, ilis, inus, ius; ālis, ānus, āris, ārius, ensis.

civ-ĭcus,	*relating to a citizen*,	from	civis.
civ-ĭlis,	*relating to a citizen*,	"	civis.
equ-īnus,	*of, pertaining to a horse*,	"	equus.
reg-ius,	*royal*,	"	rex.
mort-ālis,	*mortal*,	"	mors.
urb-ānus,	*of, pertaining to a city*,	"	urbs.
salut-āris,	*salutary*,	"	salus.
auxili-ārius,	*auxiliary*,	"	auxilium.
for-ensis,	*forensic*,	"	forum.

1. **Tĭcus** is sometimes added to the Nom.: *rus, rus-tĭcus*, rustic.

2. **Ernus, ester, ĭtĭmus** and a few other endings also occur: *pater, paternus*, paternal; *campus, campester*, level; *mare, marĭtimus*, maritime.

2. From Proper Nouns.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in

ānus, iānus, inus; iăcus, ĭcus, ius, ensis, iensis; as, aeus, ēus.

Sull-ānus,	*of Sylla*,	from	Sulla.
Rom-ānus,	*Roman*,	"	Roma.
Ciceron-iānus,	*Ciceronian*,	"	Cicĕro.
Lat-īnus,	*Latin*,	"	Latium.
Corinth-iăcus,	*Corinthian*,	"	Corinthus.
Corinth-ius,	*Corinthian*,	"	Corinthus.
Britann-ĭcus,	*British*,	"	Britannus.
Cann-ensis,	*of Cannae*,	"	Cannae.
Athen-iensis,	*Athenian*,	"	Athēnae.
Fidēn-as,	*of Fidenae*,	"	Fidēnae.
Smyrn-aeus,	*Smyrnean*,	"	Smyrna.
Pythagor-ēus,	*Pythagorean*,	"	Pythagŏras.

1. **Iānus** is the ending generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons;* but *ānus, īnus, ius*, and the Greek endings *ēus* and *ĭcus* also occur.

2. **Ensis** and **cānus** (*ānus*) in derivatives from names of countries signify merely *being in the country*, in distinction from *belonging to it:* thus *exercĭtus Hispaniensis* is an *army stationed in Spain*, but *exercĭtus Hispanĭcus* is a *Spanish army*.

3. **Patrials.**—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Corinthii*, the Corinthians; *Athenienses*, the Athenians.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. DIMINUTIVES from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.

long-ŭlus, a, um,	*rather long*,	from	longus.
pauper-cŭlus, a, um,	*rather poor*,	"	pauper.

1. **Olus, ellus,** and **illus** also occur as in nouns.

2. **Cŭlus** is sometimes added to comparatives: ***durius-cŭlus***, somewhat hard, from ***durius***.

III. Adjectives from Verbs.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

bundus, cundus; ĭdus, ĭlis, bĭlis, ax.

mir-ā-bundus,	*wondering*,	from	miror.
ver-e-cundus,	*diffident*,	"	vereor.
cal-ĭdus,	*warm*,	"	caleo.
pav-ĭdus,	*fearful*,	"	paveo.
doc-ĭlis,	*docile*,	"	doceo.
am-a-bĭlis,	*worthy of love*,	"	amo.
pugn-ax,	*pugnacious*,	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	*daring*,	"	audeo.

1. **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetabundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *verecundus*, diffident.

These endings take a connecting vowel. See examples.

2. **Idus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Ilis** and **bĭlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *amabĭlis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribĭlis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

These endings are generally added to the Present Stem (*bĭlis* with a connecting vowel), but sometimes to the Supine Stem: *flexibĭlis*, flexible.

4. **Ax** denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. **Uus, ŭlus, ĭcius,** and **ivus** also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ĭdus*: *vacuus*, vacant.—(2) *ulus* in the sense of *ax*: *credŭlus*, credulous.—(3) *ĭcius* and *ivus* (added to Sup. Stem) in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fictĭcius*, feigned, from *fingo* (*fictum*); *captīvus*, captive, from *capio* (*captum*).

IV. Adjectives from Adverbs and Prepositions.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hodiernus,	*of this day*,	from	hodie.
contrarius,	*contrary*,	"	contra.

VERBS.

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*.

I. Verbs from Nouns and Adjectives.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives end in

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. IV.
o,	**eo,**	**io.**

Conjugation I.—Transitive.

armo,	*to arm,*	from	arma.
cūro,	*to cure,*	"	cura.
nomĭno,	*to name,*	"	nomen.
caeco,	*to make blind,*	"	caecus.
lĭbĕro,	*to liberate,*	"	liber.

Conjugation II.—Intransitive.

flōreo,	*to bloom,*	from	flos.
lūceo,	*to shine,*	"	lux.
albeo,	*to be white,*	"	albus.
flāveo,	*to be yellow,*	"	flavus.

Conjugation IV.—Generally Transitive.

fĭnio,	*to finish,*	from	finis.
vestio,	*to clothe,*	"	vestis.
mollio,	*to soften,*	"	mollis.
saevio (*intrans.*),	*to rage,*	"	saevus.

1. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 332. II.

2. **Deponent.**—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dominor,* to domineer, from *dominus.*

II. Verbs from Verbs.

332. Verbs derived from other verbs are—*Frequentatives, Inceptives, Desideratives,* and *Diminutives.*

I. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed

1. From Supines in **ātum** by changing **ātum** into **ĭto:**

clam-ĭto,	*to exclaim,*	from	clamo,	clamātum.
vol-ĭto,	*to flit,*	"	volo,	volātum.

2. From other Supines by changing **um** into **o,** sometimes **ĭto:**

adjūt-o,	*to assist often,*	from	adjŭvo,	adjūtum.
habĭt-o,	*to have often,*	"	habeo,	habĭtum.
lect-ĭto,	*to read often,*	"	lego,	lectum.

1) **Ito** is sometimes added to the Present Stem of verbs of Conj. III.: *ago, agĭto; quaero, quaerĭto.*

2) **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with

frequentatives, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *facio, facesso*, to do earnestly; *incipio, incipisso*, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *rapio, rapto*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES, or INCHOATIVES, denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

asco,		**esco,**		**isco.**	
gĕl-asco,	*to begin to freeze,*	from	gĕlo,		āre.
rŭb-esco,	*to grow red,*	"	rŭbeo,		ēre.
trĕm-isco,	*to begin to tremble,*	"	trĕmo,		ĕre.
obdorm-isco,	*to fall asleep,*	"	obdormio,		īre.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puer, puerasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dūrus, dūresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation and are formed from the Supine by changing **um** into **ŭrio**:

ēs-ŭrio,	*to desire to eat,*	from	ĕdo,	ēsum.
empt-ŭrio,	*to desire to buy,*	"	ĕmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed from the Present by changing the ending into **illo**:

cant-illo,	*to sing feebly,*	from	canto.
conscrīb-illo,	*to scribble,*	"	conscrībo.

ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Participles*, *Pronouns*, and *Prepositions*.

I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from nouns.

1. By simply taking a case-ending, especially that of the ablative:

tempŏre, tempŏri, in time; *forte*, by chance; *jūre*, with right, rightly.

2. By taking special endings:

1) **ātim, tim,** denoting MANNER: *grex, gregātim*, by herds; *fur, furtim*, by stealth.

2) **ĭtus** denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *coelum, coelĭtus*, from heaven; *fundus, fundĭtus*, from the foundation.

II. Adverbs from Adjectives and Participles.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

ē, er, ĭter.

doctus, docte, learnedly; *liber, libĕre*, freely; *elĕgans, eleganter*, elegantly; *prūdens, prudenter*, prudently; *cĕler, celerĭter*, quickly.

1. **E** is added to the stems of most adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II. See examples.

2. **Er** and **ĭter** are added to the stems of adjectives of Dec. III.—**er** to stems in *nt*, **ĭter** to other stems.—*Er* and *ĭter* also occur in adverbs from adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II.

3. **Atim, im,** and **ĭtus** also occur in adverbs from primitives of Dec. I. and II.: *singŭli, singulātim*, one by one; *passus, passim*, everywhere; *divinus, divinĭtus*, divinely.

4. OTHER FORMS.—Certain forms of adjectives sometimes become adverbs:

1) Neuters in **e, um,** rarely **a**: *fācile*, easily; *multum, multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in **a, o, is**: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in **am**: *bifariam*, in two parts; *multifariam*, in many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

III. Adverbs from Pronouns.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hic, ille*, and *iste* are formed

hīc,	*here;*	hūc,	*hither;*	hinc,	*hence.*
illīc,	*there;*	illūc,	*thither;*	illinc,	*thence.*
istīc,	*there;*	istūc,	*thither;*	istinc,	*thence.*

IV. Adverbs from Prepositions.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intra, intro, within; *ultra, ultro*, beyond; *in, intus*, within; *sub, subtus*, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements unite without change of form:[1] *decem-viri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *ab-eo*, to go away; *ante-pōno*, to place before.

II. One element, generally the first, is put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *legis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *legis*, and *lator*.

III. The stem of the first element unites with the second element, either with or without a connecting vowel—generally *ī*, sometimes *e* or *u*: *bell-ī-gĕro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gĕro*, with connecting vowel; *magn-ănimus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *ănimus*, without connecting vowel.

1. Prepositions in Composition admit the following *euphonic changes*.

A, ab, abs:—**a** before *m* and *v*; **abs** before *c*, *p*, *t*; **ab** before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *ab-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *ās-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fĕro* and *au-fugio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; **d** generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*; *ad-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fĕro*, *al-lĭgo*; *ac-quīro*, *a-gnosco* (ad and gnosco), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—unchanged, except in *anti-cipo* and *anti-sto*.

Circum,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Com for *cum*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bĭbo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haereo*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-lĭgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to **n** before the other consonants: *con-fĕro*, *con-gĕro*.

E, ex:—**ex** before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; **e** generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fĕro*; *e-dūco*, *e-lĭgo*, *e-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *exspecto* or *expecto*.

In,—**n** assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; dropped before *gn*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *i-gnosco*; *in-eo*, *in-dūco*.

Inter,—unchanged, except in *intel-lĭgo*.

Ob,—**b** assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro*, *of-ficio*, *og-gĕro*, *op-pōno*; *ob-jĭcio*, *ob-sto*. But *b* is dropped in *o-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-olesco*, *os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (b dropped).

Per,—unchanged, except in *pel-lĭcio*, *pel-lūceo*, and *pe-jĕro*.

Post,—unchanged, except in *po-moerium* and *po-meridiānus*.

---

[1] Except of course euphonic changes.

Pro,—sometimes *prod* before a vowel: *prod-eo, prod-ĭgo.*

Sub,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p,* generally before *m* and *r*; dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged; *suc-cumbo, su-spicio* for *sub-spicio; sub-eo, sub-dūco.* An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio, sus-pendo.*

Trans,—drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo, trans-fĕro; tran-silio* for *trans-silio; tra-do* for *trans-do; tra-jicio* for *trans-jicio; tra-no* for *trans-no.*

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit *euphonic changes:*

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambi, am,* or *an* before consonants: *amb-ĭgo; ambĭ-dens, am-pŭto, an-quīro.*

Dis, di:—*dis* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; *di* in most other situations; *dis-curro, dis-pōno, dif-fluo; di-dūco, di-mŏveo.* But *dir* occurs in *dir-imo* and *dir-ĭbeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo, di-judĭco.*

Re, red:—*red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do; re* in other situations: *red-eo, red-ĭgo, red-hĭbeo; re-clūdo, re-vello.*

COMPOUND NOUNS.

339. In compound nouns the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

art-ĭ-fex,	*artist,*	from	ars and facio.
capr-ĭ-cornus,	*capricorn,*	"	caper and cornu.
aequ-ĭ-noctium,	*equinox,*	"	aequus and nox.
ne-mo,	*nobody,*	"	ne and homo.
pro-nōmen,	*pronoun,*	"	pro and nomen.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lātor,* legislator; *juris-consultus,* lawyer.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex, cen,** and **cŏla** are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *făcio; cen* from *cano; cola* from *colo; art-ĭ-fex,* artist; *tub-ĭ-cen,* trumpeter; *agr-ĭ-cŏla,* husbandman.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

340. In compound adjectives the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective, or verb:

lēt-ĭ-fer,	*death-bearing,*	from	lētum and fĕro.
magn-anĭmus,	*magnanimous,*	"	magnus and anĭmus.
per-făcĭlis,	*very easy,*	"	per and facĭlis.

COMPOUND VERBS.

341. In compound verbs the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aed-ĭ-fĭco,	*to build*,	from	aedes and facio.
ampl-ĭ-fĭco,	*to enlarge*,	"	amplus and facio.
pat-ĕ-făcio,	*to open*,	"	pateo and facio.
bene-făcio,	*to benefit*,	"	bene and facio.
ab-eo,	*to go away*,	"	ab and eo.

1. Two Verbs.—When the first part is a verb, the second is always *facio* as above; *pat-e-facio*.

2. Noun or Adjective and Verb.—When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second part is generally, but not always, *făcio* or *ăgo*. These verbs then become *fĭco* and *ĭgo* of Conj. I.: *aed-ĭ-fĭco*, ăre, to build; *nav-ĭgo*, ăre, to sail, from *navis* and *ago*.

3. Vowel Changes.—Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ĕ* generally become *ĭ*: *hăbeo, ad-hĭbeo; tĕneo, con-tĭneo.* But *ă* sometimes becomes *ĕ* or *u*: *carpo, de-cerpo; calco, con-culco.*

2) *Ae* becomes *ī*: *caedo, in-cīdo.*

3) *Au* generally becomes *o* or *u*: *plaudo, ex-plōdo; claudo, in-clūdo.*

4. Changes in Prepositions.—See 338. 1 and 2.

COMPOUND ADVERBS.

342. Compound Adverbs are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mŏdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-viam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *ho-die* (*hoc* and *die*), to-day, on this day; *qua-re*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ad-huc*, hitherto; *inter-dum*, sometimes; *in-sŭper*, moreover.

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound:*

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dōnec ĕris fēlix, multos nūmĕrābis āmīcos; *So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends.* Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members.*

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerābis amīcos*—is called the *Principal Clause;* and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause.*

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory.*

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltĭădes accūsātus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An Interrogative Sentence has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertātem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic

1. Interrogative Words.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num:*

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribĭtne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum:*

Utrum tăceamne, an praedīcam, *Shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes: Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no: Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne: Ecquid vides*, Do you not see?

2. Double Questions.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms:

1) The first clause has *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, and the second *an:*

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?* Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne:*

Elōquar an sīleam, *Shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne:*

Sunt haec tua verba necne, *Are these your words or not?* Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or:*

An hoc timēmus, *Or do we fear this?* Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. Answers.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus, vĕro,* and the like; or if negative, with *non:*

Dixitne causam? Dixit. *Did he state the cause? He stated it.* Cic. Possūmusne tūti esse? Non possūmus. *Can we be safe? We cannot.* Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *sāne, ĕtiam, ĭta, vĕro, certe*, etc., negatively, *non, mīnīme*, etc.

Vēnitne? Non. *Has he come? No.* Plaut.

III. An Imperative Sentence has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An Exclamatory Sentence has the form of an exclamation:

Rĕlīquit quos vĭros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

Elements of Sentences.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The Subject, or that of which it speaks.
2. The Predicate, or that which is said of the subject:

Cluilius mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers:

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mŏrĭtur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex,* is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. Principal and Subordinate.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. Simple and Complex.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

Simple Subject.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun:

Rex dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego* scrībo, *I write.* Cic. *Vĭdeo* īdem vălet, *The word* video *has the same meaning.* Quint.

Complex Subject.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers:

I. An Adjective:

Pŏpŭlus *Rōmānus* dēcrēvit, *The Roman people decreed.* Cic.

II. A Noun either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition:

Cluilius *rex* mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Rex *Rŭtŭlōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. Lĭber *de offĭcĭis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. Modifiers of Nouns.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. Appositive and its Subject.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. Adverbs with Nouns.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sŭmus ante mălōrum, *We are not ignorant of past misfortunes.* Virg. Victōria ăpud Cnĭdum, *The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

Simple Predicate.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiădes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective.*

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, *All things are right.* Cic.

Complex Predicate.

354. I. The Verb admits the following modifiers:

I. Objective Modifiers:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiădes *Athēnas* lĭbĕrāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rŏgāvit *sententiam*, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Pons *ĭter hostĭbus* dĕdit, *The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

II. Adverbial Modifiers:

1. *Adverbs:*

Bella *fēlĭcĭter* gessit, *He waged wars successfully.* Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris mŏrĭtur, *He dies* (where?) *in this camp.* Liv. *Vēre* convēnēre, *They assembled* (when?) *in the spring.* Liv.

355. II. The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers:

I. An ADVERB:

Sătis hŭmĭlis est, *He is sufficiently humble.* Liv.

II. A NOUN in an oblique case:

1. *Genitive:* Avĭdi laudis fuērunt, *They were desirous of praise.* Cic.
2. *Dative:* Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic.
3. *Ablative:* Digni sunt ămīcĭtia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements:

I. A Sentence as an Element:

"Cīvis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, "*I am a Roman citizen*" *was heard.* Cic. Alĭquis dīcat mihi: "Nulla hăbes vĭtia;" *Some one may say to me,* "*Have you no faults?*" Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Romānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat.*

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element:

Trădĭtum est Hŏmērum caecum fuisse, *That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Homērum caecum fuisse,* the subject of *traditum est,* if used as an independent sentence, would be *Homērus caecus fuit;* and the clause *Qualis sit animus,* the object of *nescit,* would be *Qualis est animus,* What is the soul?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative:

Hoc majōres dīcĕre audīvi, *I have heard that our ancestors said this.* Cic.

2) Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fĕrat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses:

Sententia, quae tūtissima vīdēbātur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions:

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects:

Dīlĭgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vīvĕre est cōgĭtāre, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plăto *scrībens* mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*, or *while he was writing.* Cic. See 576–578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties:

I. Copulative Sentences—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. Disjunctive Sentences—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered:

Audendum est ălĭquid aut omnia pătienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. Adversative Sentences—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other:

Gyges a nullo vīdēbātur, ipse autem omnia vīdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. Illative Sentences—which contain an inference:

Nihil lăbōras, ĭdeo nihil hăbes; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. Causal Sentences—which contain a cause or reason:

Difficĭle est consĭlium, sum ĕnim sōlus; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The CONNECTIVES generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative*, *disjunctive*, *adversative*, *illative*, and *causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS have special connectives. See 346. II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements:

1. Compound Subjects:

Abŏrĭgĭnes Trojānīque dŭcem āmīsēre, *The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborĭgĭnes ducem amisēre* and *Trojāni ducem amisēre;* but as they have the same predicate, *ducem amisēre*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborĭgĭnes Trojanīque.*

2. Compound Predicates:

Rōmāni părant consultantque, *The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers:

Athēnas Graeciamque lĭbĕrāvit, *He liberated Athens and Greece.* Nep.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:[1]

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender:

Usus măgister est, *Experience is an instructor.* Cic. Hĭstŏrĭa est măgistra (*not* magister), *History is an instructress.* Cic.

[1] For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. With Finite Verbs.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs *: ēvādo, exsisto, appāreo*, and the like:

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv. Hŏmo magnus ēvāsĕrat, *He had become* (turned out) *a great man.* Cic. Exstitit vindex lībertātis, *He became* (stood forth) *the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. Mundus cīvitas existimātur, *The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio = appellor:* Rex audīsti, *You have been called king;* i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 378. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *lŏco* or *in nŭmĕro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns: *hosti, pro hoste, lŏco hostis, in nŭmĕro hostium*, for *or* as an enemy. See also Pred. Gen. 401.

3. With Infinitives, Participles, etc.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle:

Dēclārātus rex Nŭma, *Numa having been declared king.* Liv. Cānīnio consŭle, *Caninius being consul.* Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I.; 495, 3.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in case:

Cluilius rex mŏrītur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nŭmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In Gender and Number the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The Subject of the appositive is often omitted:

Hostis hostem occīdĕre vŏlui, *I* (*ego* understood) *an enemy wished to slay an enemy.* Liv.

3. Force of Appositives.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses:

Cluilius rex, *Cluilius* (who was) *the king.* Liv. Fūrius puer dīdicit, *Furius learned, when a boy*, or *as a boy.* Cic.

4. Partitive Appositive.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole:

Duo rēges, ille bello, hic pāce cīvitātem auxērunt, *Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace.* Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. Clauses.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. Cases.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows:

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations.[1]

365. Kindred Cases.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs: the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. Nominative.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative:[2]

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv. Pătent portae, *The gates are open.* Cic. Rex vīcit, *The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively:

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. Subject Omitted.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipŭlos mŏneo, ut stŭdia āment, *I instruct pupils to love their studies.* Quint.

2) When it means men, people: *Fĕrunt*, They say.

3) When the verb is impersonal: *Pluit*, It rains.

3. Verb Omitted.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt*:

---

[1] This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

[2] For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuae litterae, *Lo your letter* (comes). Cic. Tot sententiae, *There are* (sunt) *so many opinions.* Ter. Consul profectus (est), *The consul set out.* Liv.

1) *Fácio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil áliud* (amplius, minus, etc.) *quam, nihil praeterquam* = merely, *si nihil áliud, finem*, etc.: Nihil áliud quam stetérunt, *They merely stood* (did nothing other than). Liv. Also in brief expressions of opinion: Recte ille, *He does rightly.* Cic.

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Catilina, *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi, regnum, *The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv. O dii immortales, *O immortal gods.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative:

Audi tu, populus Albanus, *Hear ye, Alban people.* Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 45. 5. 3).

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative:

Quibus, Hector, ab oris exspectate venis, *From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come?* Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

I. Accusative as Direct Object.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Lĭbĕra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pŏpŭli Rōmāni sălūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The Direct Object may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *salūtem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative.* Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vītam vīvĕre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mīrum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servītūtem servīre, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Ĕădem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stŭdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 2) or can be easily supplied: *mŏveo* — mŏveo me, I move (myself); *vertit* — vertit se, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo, dūro, incipio, laxo, ruo, suppĕdīto, turbo,* etc.

2. With or Without other Cases.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling* or *Mental State: despēro,* to despair of; *dŏleo,* to grieve for; *gĕmo,* to sigh over; *horreo,* to shudder at; *lăcrĭmo,* to weep over; *moereo,* to mourn over; *mīror,* to wonder at; *rīdeo,* to laugh at; *sĭtio,* to thirst for, etc.

Hŏnōres despērat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gĕmēbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta rīdet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste* or *Smell: ŏleo, săpio,* and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Orātio rĕdŏlet antīquĭtātem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

4. Compounds of Prepositions.—We notice two classes:

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum, per, praeter, trans, super,* and *subter:*

Murmur conciōnem pervāsit, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhēnum transiērunt, *They crossed* (went across) *the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition:

Circumstant sĕnātŭm, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. Clause as Object.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object:

Impĕrāre cŭpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentīmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. Passive Construction.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lȳsandrum occīdērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive: Lȳsander occīsus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. Accusative in Special Instances.—Participles in *dus,* verbal adjectives in *bundus,* and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative:

Vītābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tĭbi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

372. Two Accusatives.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.
2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing:

Hămilcărem impĕrātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgem pŏpŭlus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consĭlium appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestĭtit prōpugnātōrem lĭbertātis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum hăbuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. Predicate Accusative.—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative.* See 362. 2. (2).

2. Verbs with Predicate Accusative.—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing:* făcio, effĭcio, reddo,—creo, ēlĭgo, dēsigno, dēclāro.

2) *Calling, regarding:* appello, nōmino, vŏco, dico,—arbitror, existīmo, dūco, jūdico, hăbeo, pŭto.

3) *Showing:* praesto, praebeo, exhĭbeo.

3. Adjective as Predicate Accusative.—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hŏmines caecos reddit āvāritia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. Passive Construction.—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rŏgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rŏgātus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philŏsŏphia nos res omnes dŏcuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes ēdoctus fuĕrat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te cēlāvi sermōnem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. Person and Thing.—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing:* with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. Verbs with two Accusatives.—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly:* cēlo—dŏceo, ēdŏceo, dēdŏceo.

2) *Sometimes:* ōro, exōro, rŏgo, interrŏgo, percontor, flāgĭto, posco, rĕposco.

3. Other Constructions also occur:

1) *Cēlo:* Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro cēlāvit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de:* Hoc cēlāri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Cēlāri de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcibiădi cēlāri non pŏtuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching:* Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me dŏcet: *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Sŏcrătem fĭdibus dŏcuit, *He taught Socrates* (with) *the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding:* Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscĕre, *to demand this from me.* Cic. Te iisdem de rēbus interrōgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things.* Cic.

4) *Pĕto, postŭlo,* and *quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānis pĕtiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans.* Caes.

4. Infinitive or Clause as Accusative of thing:

Te săpĕre dŏcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic.

5. A Neuter Pronoun or Adjective as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation.* Cic. Ea mŏnēmur, *We are admonished of these things.* Cic.

6. Compound Verbs.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cōpias trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro.* Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervĕhor ostia Pantăgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia.* Virg.

7. Poetic Accusative.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, indūco,* etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Găleam indŭitur, *He puts on his helmet.* Virg. Inūtīle ferrum cingĭtur, *He girds on his useless sword.* Virg. Virgĭnes longam indūtae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes.* Liv.

II. Accusative as Subject of Infinitive.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Itălĭam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic.

Platōnem is the subject of *venisse.*

III. Accusative in agreement with an Accusative.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. Apud Hērŏdŏtum, patrem hist̆oriae, *in Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. Accusative in an Adverbial Sense.

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. With Prepositions. See 433.

2. Without Prepositions.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative:

Rōmŭlus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pĕdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pĕdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. Duration of Time is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition:

1) By the *Ablative:* Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the *Accusative with Preposition:* Per annos vīginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. Distance is sometimes expressed by the Ablative:

Millĭbus passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition: Ab millĭbus passuum duōbus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative:

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plăto Tărentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fŭgit Tarquĭnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs:

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of:*

Tres sunt viae ad Mŭtĭnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zămam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab:*

A Dĭānio ad Sĭnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppĭdum* with a Preposition:

Pervēnit in oppĭdum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives **dŏmum, dŏmos, rus:**

Scīpio dŏmum rĕductus est, *Scipio was conducted home.* Cic. Dŏmos abducti, *led to their homes.* Liv. Rus ĕvŏlāre, *to hasten into the country.* Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātōna confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos.* Cic. Pervēnit Chersŏnēsum, *He went to the Chersonesus.* Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiam rĕdit, *He returns into Asia.* Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prōfūgit, *He fled to Egypt.* Cic. Itāliam vēnit, *He came to Italy.* Virg. Ibimus Afros, *We shall go to the Africans.* Virg. Lāvīnia vēnit lītŏra, *He came to the Lavinian shores.* Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clāmor coelo (for *ad coelum*), *The shout ascends to heaven.* Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.

380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Căpĭta vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. Nūbe hŭmĕros ămictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud,* Hor. Mīles fractus membra lăbōre, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēas os deo sīmĭlis, *Aeneas like a god in appearance.* Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil,* of *id* and *genus* in *id tempŏris, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id gĕnus, omne genus, quod genus* (for *ejus generis,* etc.), etc.; also of *sĕcus, libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cētĕra, rĕliqua,* etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maxĭmam partem lacte vīvunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk.* Caes. Nihil mŏti sunt, *They were not at all moved.* Liv. Lŏcus id tempŏris vacuus ĕrat, *The place was at this time vacant.* Cic. Alĭquid id gĕnus scrībĕre, *to write something of this kind.* Cic. Quaerit, quid possint, *He inquires how powerful they are.* Caes. Quid vĕnis, *Why do you come?*

V. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.

381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:

Heu me mĭsĕrum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me mĭsĕrum, *Me miserable!*[1] Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fĭdem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. *O*, *ēheu*, *heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infēlix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement:

En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littĕrae, *Lo your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. Dative with Verbs.

383. Indirect Object.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative:

I. With Intransitive and Passive Verbs:

Tempŏri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sĭbi tĭmuĕrant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lăbōri stŭdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*[2] Cic. Caesări supplĭcābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*[3] Cic. Nōbis vīta dăta est, *Life has*

[1] Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 73

[2] Is subject to God.

[3] Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nŭmĭtōri dēdĭtur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE:

Pons ĭter hostĭbus dĕdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges cīvĭtātĭbus suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alĭcui rem dōnāre,* to present a thing to any one, or *alĭquem re dōnāre,* to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified:

Mūrum urbi circumdĕdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and FOR are not always signs of the Dative: thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction,* is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4):

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnĭmus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clāmor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) FOR, *in defence of, in behalf of,* is expressed by the Abl. with *pro; for the sake of, for the purpose of,* sometimes by the Accus. with *in.*

Pro patrĭa mŏri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dīmĭcāre pro lĭbertāte, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sătis in ūsum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The **Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage** is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure, please* or *displease, command* or *obey, serve* or *resist;* also, *indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, believe, persuade,* and the like:

Sĭbi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nŏcēre altĕri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni plăcuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displĭcet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cŭpĭdĭtātĭbus impĕrāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostĭbus rĕsistĕre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sĭbi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vītae parcĕre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscĕre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Mĭnĭtans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci ămīcis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuādēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. Other Cases.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dēlecto, jŭvo, laedo, offendo*, etc.; *fĭdo* and *confĭdo* generally the Ablative (419):

Mărium jūvit, *He helped Marius.* Nep.

2. Special Verbs.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom; *mĕdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to; *sătisfăcio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. Accusative or Dative with a difference of signification: *căvēre ălĭquem*, to ward off some one; *căvēre ălĭcui*, to care for some one; *consŭlĕre ălĭquem*, to consult, etc.; *ălĭcui*, to consult for; *mĕtuĕre, tĭmĕre ălĭquem*, to fear, etc.; *ălĭcui*, to fear for; *prospĭcĕre, prōvĭdēre ălĭquid*, to foresee; *ălĭcui*, to provide for; *tempĕrāre, mŏdĕrāri ălĭquid*, to govern, direct; *ălĭcui*, to restrain, put a check upon; *tempĕrāre* (sĭbi) *ab ălĭquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ădūlor*, to flatter; *cŏmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. Dative rendered From, occurs with a few verbs of *differing, dissenting, repelling, taking away:* differo, discrĕpo, disto, dissentio, arceo, etc.

Differre cuīvis, *to differ from any one.* Nep. Discrĕpāre istis, *to differ from those.* Hor. Sĭbi dissentīre, *to dissent from himself.* Cic. See 412.

5. Dative rendered With, occurs with *misceo, admisceo, permisceo, jungo, certo, dĕcerto, lucto, altercor*, and sometimes *făcio* (434. 2):

Sĕvērĭtātem miscēre cōmĭtāti, *to unite severity with affability.* Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions:

ad,	**ante,**	**con,**	**in,**	**inter,**
ob,	**post,**	**prae,**	**sub,**	**super:**

Adsum ămīcis, *I am present with my friends.* Cic. Omnĭbus antestāre, *to surpass all.* Cic. Terris cohaeret, *It cleaves to the earth.* Sen. Vŏluptāti inhaerēre, *to be connected with pleasure.* Cic. Interfuit pugnae, *He participated in the battle.* Nep. Consĭlĭis obstāre, *to oppose plans.* Nep. Lĭbertāti ŏpes postferre, *to sacrifice wealth to liberty.* Liv. Pŏpŭlo praesunt, *They rule the people.* Cic. Succumbĕre dŏlōrĭbus, *to yield to sorrows.* Cic. Sŭperfuit patri, *He survived his father.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative: Se oppŏsuit hostĭbus, *He opposed himself to the enemy.* Cic.

2. Compounds of other Prepositions, especially *ab, de, ex, pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl.: *assuesco, consuesco, insuesco, acquiesco, sŭpersĕdeo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Caesări dĕfuit, *This failed* (was wanting to) *Caesar.* Caes.

3. Motion or Direction.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition:

Adīre ārās, *to approach the altars.* Cic. Ad consŭles ădīre, *to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

In ōrātōre inest scientia, *In the orator is knowledge.* Cic.

387. The **Dative of Possessor** is used with the verb *Sum:*

Mihi est nŏverca, *I have* (there is to me) *a stepmother.* Virg. Fonti nōmen Arĕthūsa est, *The fountain has* (there is to the fountain) *the name Arethusa.* Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen dătur*, etc.:

Scipiōni Africāno cognōmen fuit, *Scipio had the surname Africanus.* Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipiōni.*

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs:

Nōmen Mercŭrii est mihi, *I have the name of Mercury.* Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vŏlens, cŭpiens*, or *invītus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

Quibus bellum vŏlentĭbus ĕrat, *They liked the war* (it was to them wishing). Tac.

388. **Dative of Agent.**—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus:*

Suum cuīque incommŏdum fĕrendum est, *Every one has his own trouble to bear*, or *must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs:

Mihi consĭlium captum jam diu est, *I have a plan long since formed.* Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHI with the Perfect Participle (388, 1):

Bellum hăbuit indictum, *He had a war* (already) *declared.* Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

Est a vōbis consŭlendum, *Measures must be taken by you.* Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuīque incommŏdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommŏdum fĕrendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consilium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consilium captum est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (TO) whom the action is performed:

Hŏnesta bŏnis vĭris quaeruntur, *Honorable things are sought by good men*, i. e., for themselves. Cic.

4. Dative of Agent in Poets.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action:

Non intellĭgor ulli, *I am not understood by any one.* Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English:

At *tĭbi* vĕnit ad me, *But lo, he comes to me.* Cic. Ad illa *mihi* intendat ănĭmum, *Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. Quid *mihi* Celsus ăgit? *What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The Ethical Dative is always a personal pronoun.

2. Ethical Dative with volo and interjections:

1) With Volo: Quid vōbis vultis? *What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. Avārĭtia quid sibi vult, *What does avarice mean*, or *what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With Interjections: *hei, vae* and some others: Hei mihi, *ah me.* Virg. Vae tĭbi, *Woe to you.* Ter, See 381. 3. 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the object to which and the object for which—occur with a few verbs:

I. With Intransitive and Passive Verbs:

Mălo est hŏmĭnĭbus āvārĭtia, *Avarice is an evil to men* (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, *It is a care to me.* Cic. Dŏmus dēdĕcŏri dŏmĭno fit, *The house becomes a disgrace to its owner.* Cic. Vēnit Attĭcis auxilio, *He came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. Hoc illi trĭbuēbātur ignāviae, *This was imputed to him as cowardice* (*for cowardice*). Cic. Iis subsĭdio missus est, *He was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With Transitive Verbs in connection with the Accusative:

Quinque cohortes castris praesĭdio rĕlīquit, *He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp* (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. Pĕricles agros suos dōno rei pūblĭcae dĕdit, *Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with Two Datives are

1) Intransitives signifying *to be, become, go,* and the like; *sum, fĭo,* etc.

2) Transitives signifying *to give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose,* and the like: *do, dōno, dūco, hăbeo, mitto, rĕlinquo, trĭbuo, verto,* etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 371. 6.

2. One Dative Omitted.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun:

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi păter es, *You are a father to him.* Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto-audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (385):

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey.* Plaut. Nōbis dicto audiens est, *He is obedient to us.* Cic. Sometimes *dicto ōbēdiens* is used in the same way: Māgistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master.* Plaut.

II. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the object to which the quality is directed is put in the Dative:

Patriae sōlum omnĭbus cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. Id aptum est tempŏri, *This is adapted to the time.* Cic. Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age.* Cic. Cānis sĭmĭlis lŭpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. Nātūrae accommŏdātum, *adapted to nature.* Cic. Graeciae ūtile, *useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. Adjectives with Dative.—The most common are those signifying:

Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis.*

Such are: accommŏdātus, aequālis, ălienus, ămīcus and inimīcus, aptus, cārus, facilis and difficilis, fidēlis and infidēlis, finitimus, grātus and ingrātus, idōneus, jūcundus and injūcundus, mŏlestus, nĕcessārius, nōtus and ignōtus, noxius, par and dispar, pernĭcĭōsus, prŏpinquus, proprius, sălūtāris, sĭmilis and dissĭmilis, vicīnus, etc.

2. Other Constructions sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative:

1) *Accusative with a Preposition:* (1) **in, erga, adversus** with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile,* etc., and (2) **ad,** to denote the *object* or *end for which,* with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined,* etc.:

Pĕrindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father.* Cic. Multas ad res pĕrūtĭlis, *very useful for many things.* Cic. Ad cōmĭtātem prōclīvis, *inclined to affability.* Cic. Prōnus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning.* Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prŏpior, proximus:*

Prŏpior montem, *nearer the mountain.* Sall. Proximus mărе, *nearest to to the sea.* Caes. See 483 and 437.

3) *Ablative with* or *without a Preposition:*

Ălienum a vīta mea, *foreign to my life.* Ter. Hŏmĭne ălienissĭmum, *most foreign to man.* Cic. Ei cum Roscio commūnis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive:* (1) with *proprius, commūnis, contrārius;* (2) with *sĭmĭlis,*

dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*, and a few others:

Populi Romani est propria libertas, *Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.* Cic. Alexandri similis, *like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. Dispar sui, *unlike itself.* Cic. Cujus pares, *like whom.* Cic. Amicissimus hominum, *the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. Idem occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, *He does the same as kill*, or *as he who kills.* Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. VERBAL NOUNS.—Justitia est obtemperatio legibus, *Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. Sibi responsio, *replying to himself.* Cic. Opulento homini servitus dura est, *Serving a rich man* (servitude to) *is hard.* Plaut.

II. ADVERBS.—Congruenter naturae vivere, *to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. Sibi constanter dicere, *to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. Proxime hostium castris, *next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. DATIVE WITH NOUNS.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tegimenta galeis milites facere jubet, *He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets.* Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegimenta.* In conspectum venerat hostibus, *He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venerat;* the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. DATIVE WITH ADVERBS.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huic una — una cum hoc*, with him.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc.:

Beneficii gratia, *gratitude for a favor.* Cic. Laborum fuga, *escape from labors.* Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

I. With Nouns.
II. With Adjectives.
III. With Verbs.
IV. With Adverbs.

I. Genitive with Nouns.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Cătōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy.* Liv. Mors Hămilcăris, *the death of Hamilcar.* Liv. Deum mĕtus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv. Vir consĭlii magni, *a man of great prudence.* Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following:

I. The Subjective Genitive designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor:*

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent.* Cic. Păvor Nŭmĭdārum, *the fear of the Numidians.* Liv. Xĕnŏphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon.* Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune.* Nep.

II. The Objective Genitive designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed:

Amor glōriae, *the love of glory.* Cic. Mĕmŏria mălōrum, *the recollection of sufferings.* Cic. Deum mĕtus, *the fear of the gods.* Liv.

III. The Partitive Genitive designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vītae pars, *a part of life.* Cic. Omnium săpientissĭmus, *the wisest of all men.* Cic.

1. Nostrum and Vestrum.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri.*

2. Use.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars, nēmo, nihil;* nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc.: *mŏdius, lĕgio, tālentum,* and any nouns used partitively:

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses.* Liv. Mĕdimnum trĭtĭci, *a bushel of wheat.* Cic. Pĕcūniae tălentum, *a talent of money.* Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius.* Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively:

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom.* Liv. Săpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men.* Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vīvi qui (not *quōrum*) duo sŭpersunt, *the living, of whom two survive.* Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, uter, neuter,* etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plūrimum, mĭnus, mĭnĭmum, tantum, quantum,* etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti,* rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consŭlum alter, *one of the consuls.* Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these.* Nep. Gallōrum fortissĭmi, *the bravest of the Gauls.* Caes. Id tempŏris, *that (of) time.* Cic. Multum ŏpĕrae, *much (of) service.* Cic. Hŏmĭnum cuncti, *all of the men.* Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hŏmĭnes, *all men.* Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consŭlum alter* above.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affātim, nĭmis, părum, partim, quoad, sātis,* etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ŭbi,* etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo;* (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affātim, *abundance of arms.* Liv. Lūcis nĭmis, *too much (of) light.* Ovid. Săpientiae părum, *little (of) wisdom.* Sall. Partim cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces.* Liv. Quoad ejus făcĕre pŏtest, *as far as* (as much of it as) *he is able to do.* Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world.* Cic. Huc arrŏgantiae, *to this degree of insolence.* Tac. Maxĭme omnium, *most of all.* Cic.

3. *Lŏci* and *lŏcōrum* occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intĕrea lŏci, *in the mean time.* Ter. Adhuc lŏcōrum, *hitherto.* Plaut.

4. For *id gĕnus* = *ejus gĕnĕris, sĕcus, lībra,* etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The Genitive of Characteristic designates *character* or *quality,* including *value, price, size, weight, age,* etc.

Vir maxĭmi consĭlii, *a man of very great prudence.* Nep. Mītis ingĕnii jŭvĕnis, *a youth of mild disposition.* Liv. Vestis magni prĕtii, *a garment of great value.* Cic. Exsĭlium dĕcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years.* Nep. Cŏrōna parvi pondĕris, *a crown of small weight.* Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmŏdi* = hujus modi: *trĭdui*, from tres dies; *bĭdui*, from duo (bis) dies. With *trĭdui* and *bĭdui*, via or spătium is sometimes omitted: Abĕrant bidui, *They were two days' journey distant.* Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363):

Virtus continentiae, *the virtue of self-control.* Cic. Verbum vŏluptātis, *the word* (of) *pleasure.* Cic. Oppĭdum Antiŏchiae, *the city of Antioch.* Cic. Tellus Ausŏniae, *the land of Ausonia.* Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following:

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, templum, discĭpŭlus, hŏmo, jŭvĕnis, puer, etc.; *causa, grātia,* and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied:

Ad Jŏvis (*sc.* aedem), *near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. Hannĭbal annōrum nŏvem (*sc.* puer), *Hannibal a boy nine years of age.* Liv. Nāves sui commŏdi (causa) fēcĕrat, *He had built vessels for his own advantage.* Caes. Conferre vītam Trēbonii cum Dŏlābellae (*sc.* vīta), *to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella.* Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: Nātūra hŏminis bĕluis (for *beluārum natūrae*) antecēdit, *The nature of man surpasses* (that of) *the brutes.* Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son, daughter, husband, wife,* the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed:

Hasdrŭbal Giscōnis, *Gisco's Hasdrubal,* or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco.* Liv. Hectŏris Andrŏmăche, *Hector's Andromache,* or *Andromache the wife of Hector.* Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective:

Memmii ŏdium pŏtentiae, *Memmius's hatred of power.* Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse, sōlus, ūnus, omnis:*

Tua ipsīus ămīcĭtia, *your own friendship.* Cic. Meum sōlīus peccātum, *my fault alone.* Cic. Nōmen meum absentis, *my name while absent.* Cic.

Here *ipsīus* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua; solīus* and *absentis,* with *mei* (of me) involved in meum.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive:

Bellĭca glōria = belli glōria, *the glory of war.* Cic. Conjux Hectŏrea = conjux Hectŏris, *the wife of Hector.* Virg.

3. The POSSESSIVE is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

Mea dŏmus, *my house.* Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame.* Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen.; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with **in, erga, adversus**:—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with **inter, ante,** ăpud, or the Ablative with **ex, de, in**:

Odium in hŏmĭnum gĕnus, *hatred of* or *towards the race of men.* Cic. Erga vos ămor, *love towards you.* Cic. Inter rēges ŏpŭlentissĭmus, *the most wealthy of* (among) *kings.* Sen. Unus ex vĭris, *one of the heroes.* Cic.

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

Urbi fundāmenta jăcĕre, *to lay the foundations of* (for) *the city.* Liv. Caesări ad pĕdes projĭcĕre, *to cast at the feet of Caesar*, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic. Otii cŭpĭdus, *desirous of leisure.* Liv. Amans sui virtus, *virtue fond of itself.* Cic. Effĭciens vŏluptātis, *productive of pleasure.* Cic. Glōriae mĕmor, *mindful of glory.* Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of, in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax** and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively:

Virtūtum fĕrax, *productive of virtues.* Liv. Tĕnax prōpŏsĭti, *tenacious* (steadfast) *of purpose.* Hor. Amans patriae, *loving* (fond of) *his country.* Cic. Fŭgiens lăbōris, *shunning labor.* Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection, participation, mastery, fulness*, and their contraries:

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*ăvĭdus, cŭpĭdus, stŭdiōsus; fastidiōsus*, etc.; sometimes *aemŭlus* and *invĭdus*, which also take the Dative:

Contentiōnis cŭpĭdus, *desirous of contention.* Cic. Săpientiae stŭdiōsus, *studious of* (student of) *wisdom.* Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus,*

ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvīdus, prūdens, imprūdens; pĕrītus, impĕrītus, rūdis, insuētus; mĕmor, immĕmor, etc.:

Rei gnārus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic. Prūdens rei mīlĭtāris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. Pĕrītus belli, *skilled in war.* Nep. Insuētus lăbōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Glōriae mĕmor, *mindful of glory.* Liv. Immĕmor bĕnĕfĭcii, *forgetful of kindness.* Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affīnis, consors, exsors, expers, particeps; plēnus, fertĭlis, rĕfertus, ĕgēnus, inops, văcuus; pŏtens, impŏtens, compos, impos*, etc.:

Affīnis culpae, *sharing the fault.* Cic. Rătiōnis partĭceps, *endowed with* (sharing) *reason.* Cic. Rătiōnis expers, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Vīta mĕtus plēna, *a life full of fear.* Cic. Mei pŏtens sum, *I am master of myself.* Liv. Virtūtis compos, *capable of virtue.* Cic.

3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mănĭfestus rērum căpĭtālium, *convicted of capital crimes.* Sall. Noxius conjūrātiōnis, *guilty of conspiracy.* Tac.

2) *Sĭmĭlis, assĭmĭlis, consĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis; par* and *dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *ălienus, commūnis, proprius, publĭcus, săcer, vĭcīnus:*

Aliēnus dignĭtātis, *inconsistent with dignity.* Cic. Vīri proprius, *characteristic of a man.* Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion* or *feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—*in, in respect of, for*, especially *ănĭmi* and *ingĕnii*, with many adjectives:

Anxius pŏtentiae, *anxious for power.* Tac. Lassus mīlĭtiae, *tired of military service.* Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ănĭmi, *afflicted in mind.* Liv. Anxius ănĭmi, *anxious in mind.* Sall. Intĕger aevi, *whole in respect of age*, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.

4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: Mănus sŭbĭtis ăvĭdae, *hands ready for sudden events.* Tac. Insuētus mōrĭbus Rōmānis, *unaccustomed to Roman manners.* Liv. Făcĭnŏri mens conscia, *a mind conscious of crime.* Cic.

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: Insuētus ad pugnam, *unaccustomed to battle.* Liv. Fertĭlis ad omnia, *productive for all things.* Plin. Avĭdus in nŏvas res, *eager for new things.* Liv.

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: Prūdens in jūre cīvĭli, *learned in civil law.* Cic. Rŭdis in jūre cīvĭli, *uninstructed in civil law.* Cic. His de rēbus conscius, *aware of those things.* Cic. Văcuus de dēfensōrĭbus, *destitute of defenders.* Caes. Cūris văcuus, *free from cares.* Cic. Rĕfertus bŏnis, *replete with blessings.* Cic.

6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

sĭbi conscii culpae, *conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

III. Genitive with Verbs.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

I. Predicate Genitive.
II. Genitive of Place.
III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive:

Omnia hostium ĕrant, *All things belonged to the enemy.*[1] Liv. Sĕnātus Hannĭbălis ĕrat, *The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. Jūdĭcis est vērum sĕqui, *To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*[2] Cic. Parvi prĕtii est, *It is of small value.* Cic.

1. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Nominative.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. Predicate Genitive and Predicate Adjective.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hŏmĭnis est = hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stulti est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *săpientis est* (for *săpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. **Varieties of Predicate Genitive.**—The principal are,

I. Subjective or Possessive Genitive—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of:*

Haec hostium ĕrant, *These things were of* (belonged to) *the enemy.* Liv. Est impĕrātōris sŭpĕrāre, *It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. Partitive Genitive:

Fīes nōbĭlium fontium, *You will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

III. Genitive of Characteristic—including *value, price, size, weight*, etc.:

Summae făcultātis est, *He is* (a man) *of the highest ability.* Cic. Opĕra magni fuit, *The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *prĕtii* understood; but sometimes *prĕtii* is expressed:

---

[1] Lit. *were of the enemy*, or *were the enemy's.*
[2] Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi prĕtii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying, selling,* and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price:

Vendo frūmentum plūris, *I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pili* and a few others:

Non flocci pendĕre, *not to care a straw* (lock of wool) *for.* Plaut.

3. *Bŏni* and *Aequi,* as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi bŏni facĕre* and *bŏni consŭlĕre,* to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *fācio,* but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding:*

Haec hostium ĕrant, *These things were the enemy's.* Liv. Oram Rōmānae dĭtiōnis fēcit, *He brought the coast under* (of) *Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—vĭdeor, hăbeo, dūco, pŭto, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hŏmĭnis vĭdētur, *It seems to be* (esse) *the mark of a man.* Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tui*) vĭdēre, *It is your duty to see.* Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Offĭcium, Mūnus, Nĕgōtium, Proprium:*

Sĕnātus offĭcium est, *It is the duty of the senate.* Cic. Fuit proprium pŏpŭli, *It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic.* See 428.

II. Genitive of Place. See 421. II.

III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used

I. With **miserĕor** and **miserĕsco**:

Miserēre lābōrum, *Pity the labors.* Virg. Miserescīte rēgis, *Pity the king.* Virg.

II. With **rĕcordor, mĕmĭni, rĕmĭniscor,** and **oblīviscor**:

Mĕmĭnit praetĕrĭtōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Oblītus sum mei, *I have forgotten myself.* Ter. Flāgĭtiōrum rĕcordāri, *to recollect base deeds.* Cic. Rĕmĭnisci virtūtis, *to remember virtue.* Caes.

III. With **rēfert** and **intĕrest**:

Illōrum rēfert, *It concerns them.* Sall. Intĕrest omnium, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. Explanation.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *rĕfert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *intĕrest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *mĕmor* and *immĕmor* (399. 2. 2)).

2. Construction according to sense.—The expression *Vĕnit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *rĕmĭniscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Vĕnit mihi Plātōnis in mentem, *The recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato.* Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: Non vĕnit in mentem pugna, *Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. Other Constructions with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

1. The *Accusative:* Mĕmĭnĕram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *rĕcordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos rĕcordāri, *to recall triumphs.* Cic. Ea rĕmĭniscĕre, *Remember those things.* Cic.

2. The *Ablative with De:* Rĕcordāre de cētĕris, *Bethink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *rĕcordor*, and occurs also with *mĕmĭni*, though that verb takes the *Acc.* of a *contemporary.*

408. The Construction with *Rēfert* and *Intĕrest* is as follows:

1. The Person or Thing interested is denoted

1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive:*

Meā rĕfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intĕrest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rĕfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interĕst*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with* or *without Ad;* but rarely, and chiefly with *rĕfert*, which moreover often omits the person:

Quid rĕfert vīventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rŭfert, *It concerns me.* Plaut.

2. The Subject of Importance, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun:

Intĕrest omnium recte făcĕre, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hoc intĕrest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The Degree of Interest is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2):

Vestrā maxime intĕrest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rĕfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intĕrest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The Object or End for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative:

Ad hŏnōrem nostrum intĕrest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

409. Genitive with other Verbs.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive:

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ĕgeo, indĭgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2)):

Virtus exercitātiōnis indĭget, *Virtue requires exercise.* Cic. Auxĭlii ĕgēre, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4)):

Animi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Discrŭcior ănimi, *I am troubled in mind.* Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2)), *pŏtior, ădĭpiscor, regno:*

Siciliae pŏtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rērum ădeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvit pŏpŭlōrum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstĭneo, dēcĭpio, dēsĭno, dēsisto; miror:*

Abstĭnēre īrārum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lăbōrum dēcĭpitur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsine quĕrēlārum, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistĕre pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sătăgo* and *Sătăgito* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4)), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti:*

Rērum sătăgĕre, *to be occupied with* (have enough of) *business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives.* See 563 and 563. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing:

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*

III. *Miserĕret, Poenĭtet, Pŭdet, Taedet,* and *Piget.*

I. Reminding, etc.—Te ămīcĭtiae commŏnĕfăcit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nĕcessĭtātis mŏnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. Accusing, etc.—Vīros scĕlĕris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lĕvĭtātis eum convincĕre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvĕre injūriae eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. Miseret, Poenitet, etc.—Eōrum nos mĭsĕret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consĭlii me poenĭtet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultĭtiae meae pŭdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The Genitive of Thing designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mĭsĕret, poenĭtet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. Passive Construction.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus est prōdĭtiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of Reminding, *mŏneo, admŏneo, commŏneo, commŏnĕfăcio,* sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud me admŏnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de, mŏneo* generally so:

De proelio vos admŏnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmĭne* or *crīmĭne:*

Nōmĭne conjūrātiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de:*

De pĕcūniis rĕpĕtundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of Condemning, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive:*

Căpĭtis condemnāre, *to condemn to death.* Cic.

(1) *Vōti damnāri*, to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad:*

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts.* Suet.

3) By the *Ablative;* and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative:*

Căpĭte damnāre, *to condemn to death.* Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nihil:*

Me poenĭtet vixisse, *I repent having lived.* Cic.

1) Like *Mĭsĕret* are sometimes used *mĭsĕrescit, commĭsĕrescit, mĭsĕrētur, commĭsĕrētur.* Like *Taedet* are used *pertaedet, pertaesum est.*

2) *Pŭdet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed:

Me tui pŭdet, *I am ashamed in your presence.* Ter. Pŭdet hŏmĭnum, *It is a shame in the sight of men.* Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object:

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction.* Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING:

Eum culpae lĭbĕrāre, *to free him from blame,* i. e., to acquit him of fault. Liv. So *purgo, dĕcĭpio,* and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo:*

Multĭtūdĭnem rēlĭgiōnis implēvit, *He inspired* (filled) *the multitude with religion.* Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely:

Te angis ănĭmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind.* Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs:

1. With *Partitives.* See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Prīdie* and *Postrīdie,* perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tĕnus,* originally nouns:

Prīdie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day.* Caes. Postrīdie ejus diēi, *on the day after that day.* Caes. Virtūtis ergo, *on account of virtue.* Cic. Lumbōrum tĕnus, *as far as the loins.* Cic. For *tĕnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from, by, in, with,* and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including
1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.
III. Ablative of Time.
IV. Ablative of Characteristic.
V. Ablative of Specification.
VI. Ablative Absolute.
VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars ūtĭlĭtāte laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōria dūcĭtur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duōbus mŏdis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia lūce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Aeger ĕrat vulnĕrĭbus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. Application of Rule.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The Ablative of Cause designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo jūdĭcio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, mōnĭtu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dŏleo, gaudeo, glōrior, lăbōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *afficio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Afficio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hŏnōre afficĕre* = hŏnōrāre, to honor; *admīrātiōne afficĕre* = admīrāri, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Amīcĭtia propter se expĕtĭtur, *Friendship is sought for itself.* Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grātia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu, rōgātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppĭdum propter tĭmōrem sēse rĕcĭpiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cŭpĭdĭtāte inductus conjūrātiōnem fēcit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

Cupiditāte in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fēcit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum;* but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner—mōre, ordĭne, rātiōne*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persārum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum sĭlentio audīre, *to hear in silence.* Liv.

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner: per vim*, violently.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab:*

Occīsus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent.*

Cornua Nŭmĭdis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv. Per Fabrĭcium, *by means of* (through the agency of) *Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of *Agent.* See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a vŏluptāte, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortūna dătam occāsiōnem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum:*

Vīvit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercītu prŏfectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.

416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative:

Vendĭdit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dŏmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguĭne Poenis victōria stĕtit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians* (stood to the Carthaginians at) *much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tălentis aestĭmāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vīle est vīginti mĭnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. The ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ĕmo, vendo, condūco, lŏco, vĕneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, lĭceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestĭmo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vēnālis*, etc.

2. EXCHANGING.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling:*

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum:* Exsĭlium patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. ADVERBS OF PRICE are sometimes used: *bĕne ĕmĕre*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price; *cāre aestĭmāre*, to value at a high price.

4. GENITIVE OF PRICE. See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est āmābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est mĕlius bŏnĭtāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hĭbernia mĭnor quam Brĭtannia existĭmātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terrĭbĭlior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative:

Sclmus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amīcĭtia, qua nihil mĕlius hăbēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonĭtas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante, prae, praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: Ante ălĭos immānior, *more monstrous than* (before) *the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus, minus, amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major, minor*, etc.:

Tēcum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. MInus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: nātus plus trīginta annos, *having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—major trīginta annos nātus, major trīginta annis, major quam trīginta annōrum, *or* major trīginta annōrum.

4. ATQUE or AC for QUAM occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose:

Arctius atque hĕdĕrā, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than:*

Quaerit ălia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives —*ŏpīnĭōne, spe, aequo, justo, sŏlĭto*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

MInor caedes quam pro victōrĭa, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped* (than hope). Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem făciunt, *They make the month one day longer* (longer by one day). Cic. Bīduo me antĕcessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnĭtūdĭne paulo infra ĕlĕphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum rōbustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante, post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

419. The Ablative is used

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior, vescor,** and their compounds:

Plūrĭmis rēbus fruĭmur et ūtĭmur, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. Magna est praeda pŏtītus, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. Vescĭmur bestiis, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With **fīdo, confīdo, nītor,** and **innītor:**

Nēmo pŏtest fortūnae stăbĭlĭtāte confīdĕre, *No one can trust* (confide in) *the stability of fortune.* Cic. Sălus vērĭtāte nītĭtur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. Văcāre culpa, *to be free from fault.* Cic. Villa ăbundat lacte, căseo, melle; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. Urbs nūda praesĭdio, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. Virtūte praedĭtus, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus,** and **frētus:**

Digni sunt ămīcĭtia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. Nātūra parvo contenta, *nature content with little.* Cic. Frētus ămīcis, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With **ŏpus** and **ūsus:**

Auctōrĭtāte tua nōbis ŏpus est, *We need* (there is to us a need of) *your authority.* Cic. Usus est tua mihi ŏpĕra, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means:* thus *ūtor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruor*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fīdo, confīdo*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hŏnōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. Armis nāves ŏnĕrat, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. Ocŭlis se prīvat, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *affĭcio, cūmŭlo, compleo, impleo, imbuo, instruo, ŏnĕro, orno*, etc.—*orbo, prīvo, spŏlio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative and Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410, 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *ūsus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle:

Consulto ŏpus est, *There is need of deliberation.* Sall. Opus fuit Hirtio convento, *There was need of meeting Hirtius.* Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *usus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative:

Dux nōbis ŏpus est, *We need a leader*, or *a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us.* Cic. Tempŏris ŏpus est, *There is need of time.* Liv. Opus est cĭbum, *There is need of food.* Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine:

Opus est te vălēre, *It is necessary that you be well.* Cic. Opus est ut lăvem, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. Dictu est ŏpus, *It is necessary to be told.* Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing:

Me ūtētur pătre, *He will find* (use) *me a father.* Ter.

2) *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, and *innītor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

Virtūti confīdĕre, *to confide in virtue.* Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nītor* and *innītor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus sălūtis, *worthy of safety.* Plaut. Rei frētus, *relying upon the thing.* Liv. Văcāre ăb ŏpĕre, *to be free from work.* Caes.

4) *Genitive.*—For the *genitive* with *pōtior*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation.*

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive:

I. Hannĭbal in Itălia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp.* Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way.* Cic. Ab urbe prŏfĭciscĭtur, *He departs from the city.* Caes. Ex Africa, *from Africa.* Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Bābўlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon.* Cic. Fūgit Cŏrintho, *He fled from Corinth.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition:

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition:

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lŏco, lŏcis, parte, partĭbus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mări,* and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus:*

Aliquid lŏco pōnĕre, *to put anything in its place.* Cic. Terra mărīque, *on land and sea.* Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece.* Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives:

Hoc libro, *in this book.* Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier: Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields.* Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry:

Cădĕre nūbĭbus, *to fall from the clouds.* Virg. Lābi ĕquo, *to fall from a horse.* Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast:

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome.* Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant: Discessit a Brundĭsio, *He departed from Brundisium,* i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea.* Cic. Ad Trĕbiam, *at* or *near the Trebia.* Liv.

2. The GENITIVE, it must be observed, never denotes the PLACE FROM WHICH.

The Genitive-Forms denoting the *place in which,* are genitives only in form. They probably belonged originally to a case called the *Locative,* afterward blended with the Ablative, except in the Sing. of Dec. I. and II., where it is united with the Gen. Accordingly these genitives are in force old Ablatives.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) *Ablative by Attraction:*

In monte Albāno Lāvīniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium.* Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction,* generally with a preposition:

In ipsa Alexandrīa, *in Alexandria itself.* Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa.* Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Gen. *dŏmi* (424. 2) admits a *possessive* or *dūcnus:*

Dŏmi suae, *at his home.* Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbs, oppĭdum*—the name of the town is in the Gen. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep.:

In oppĭdo Antiochīae, *in the city of Antioch.* Cic. In oppĭdo Cītio, *in the town Citium.* Nep. Albae, in urbe opportūna, *at Alba, a convenient city.* Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

1. Many names of Islands:

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus.* Nep. Dēlo prŏfīciscītur, *He proceeds from Delos.* Cic.

2. **Dŏmus, rus** and the genitives **hŭmi, mīlĭtiae** and **belli:**

Rūri ăgĕre vītam, *to spend life in the country.* Liv. Dŏmi mīlĭtiaeque, *at home and in the field.* Cic. Dŏmo prōfŭgit, *He fled from home.* Cic.

3. The Genitive of other nouns also occurs:

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns:

Rōmae Nŭmĭdiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia.* Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names and rarely also the genitives *ārēnae, fŏci, terrae, vīcīniae:*

Dŏmum Chersŏnēsi hăbuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus.* Nep. Truncum rĕlīquit ārēnae, *He left the body in the sand.* Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition:

SOURCE.—Hoc audīvi de părente meo, *I heard this from my father.* Cic. Oriundi ab Săbīnis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Stătua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze.* Cic. Jŏve nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars.* Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country.* Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material,* etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used:

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from,* etc.

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from,* and the like: *arceo, abstineo, dēterreo, ejicio, exclūdo, exsolvo, lĭbĕro, pello, prōhibeo, rĕmŏveo, solvo,* etc.:

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *ălĭĕno, fŭror,* etc. See 385. 4.

8. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage* or *birth—gĕnĭtus, nātus, ortus,* etc.:

Jŏve nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing,* except *lĭbĕro,* which is used both with and without a preposition:

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep.* Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7): Aliquem culpae lĭbĕrāre, *to free one from blame,* i. e., acquit him. Liv.

3) With *Mŏveo* before the ablatives—*lŏco, sĕnātu* and *trĭbu:*

Signum mŏvēre lŏco, *to move the standard from the place.* Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. Ablative of Time.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The Time of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsĭmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnēre, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātāli die suo, *on his birthday.* Nep. Hiĕme et aestāte, *in winter and summer.* Cic.

1. Designations of Time.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello,* in the time of war; *pugna,* in the time of battle; *lūdis,* at the time of the games; *mĕmŏria,* in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The Ablative with In is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempŏre, *under such circumstances.* Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diĕbus proxĭmis dĕcem, *in the next ten days.* Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die,* twice in the day; *in puĕritia,* in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra:* De mĕdia nocte, *in the middle of the night.* Caes. Inter annos quattuordĕcim, *in* (within) *fourteen years.* Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *paucis diĕbus,* within (or after) a few days.

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative:

Abhinc annos trĕcentos fuit, *He lived* (was) *three hundred years since.* Cic. Abhinc annis quattuor, *four years since.* Cic. Hŏmērus annis multis fuit ante Rŏmŭlum, *Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. Paucis antĕdiēbus, *a few days before.* Cic. Post dies paucos vēnit, *He came after a few days.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his* (illis) *diēbus*, means *in these* (those) *few days.*

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus: five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post*; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum*; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam*:

Quartum post annum quam rĕdiĕrat, *four years after he had returned.* Nep. Nōno anno postquam, *nine years after.* Nep. Sexto anno quam ĕrat expulsus, *six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

4. The ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE or QUUM may be used for *postquam*: Quātrīduo, quo occīsus est, *four days after he was killed.* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing:

Summa virtūte ădŏlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes. Cătīlīna ingĕnio mălo fuit, *Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used:

Uri sunt spĕcie tauri, *The urus is of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.

3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 396. IV.

4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. Ablative of Specification.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application:

Agēsĭlāus nōmĭne, non pŏtestāte fuit rex, *Agesilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altĕro pĕde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōrĭbus sĭmĭles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. Force of Ablative.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true: thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name: similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. Accusative of Specification. See 380.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the Case Absolute:

Servio regnante vĭguērunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgĭbus exactis, consŭles creāti sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sĕrēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cănīnio consŭle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. Use.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession,* etc.

2. How Rendered.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition,—in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object:*

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rĕlĭgiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdĭtis rēbus omnĭbus, tămen, etc., *Though all things are lost, still,* etc. Cic. Equĭtātu praemisso, subsĕquēbātur, *Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative:

Nĭsi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. An INFINITIVE or CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audīto Dārīum mōvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced.* Curt. Multi, incerto quid vītārent, intĕrĭērunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished.* Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE or ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certātō, pervīcit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUISQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multīs sĭbi quisque pĕtentĭbus, *while many sought, each for himself.* Sall.

VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad ămīcum scripsi, *I have written to a friend.* Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house.* Liv. In Itălia, *in Italy.* Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp.*

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, ăpud, circa, circum, circĭter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pĕnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prŏpe, propter, sĕcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city.* Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods.* Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light.* Cic. Apud concĭlium, *in the presence of the council.* Cic. Circa fŏrum, *around the forum.* Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river.* Cic. Contra nātūram, *contrary to nature.* Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls.* Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp.* Caes. Sĕcundum nātūram, *according to nature.* Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps.* Cic.

1. Like *Prŏpe*, the derivatives *prŏpior* and *proximus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prŏpior montem, *nearer to the mountain.* Sall. Proximus mare, *nearest to the sea.* Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in:* Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps.*

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A *or* ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e *or* ex,	prae,	pro,	sĭne,	tĕnus.

Ab urbe, *from the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly.* Nep. Cum Antiŏcho, *with Antiochus.* Cic. De fōro, *from the forum.* Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia.* Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart.* Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sŭper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition:

Abīre măgistrātu, *to retire from office.* Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle.* Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used:

De vīta dēcēdĕre, *to depart from life.* Cic. Dēcēdĕre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia.* Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Făcio*, *Fĭo*, or *Sum*, as follows:

Quid hoc hŏmĭne făcias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (*or* de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense:

Quid huic hŏmĭni făcias, *What are you to do with* (or *to*) *this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tĕnus* follows its case:

Collo tĕnus, *up to the neck.* Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative: *quōcum*, *quĭbuscum*.

435. The Accusative or Ablative is used with

In, sub, subter, sŭper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannĭbal in Itălia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain.* Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain.* Liv. Subter tŏgam, *under the toga.* Liv. Subter testūdĭne, *under a tortoise* or *shed.* Virg. Sŭper Nŭmĭdiam, *beyond Numidia.* Sall. Hac sŭper re scrībam, *I will write on this subject.* Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (whither?), *into Asia;* In Itălia (where?), *in Italy.*

2. *Subter* and *Sŭper* generally take the Accusative, but *sŭper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. Prepositions as Adverbs.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. Adverbs as Prepositions.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative: *prŏpius*, *prowĭme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsŭper*:

Prŏpius pĕrīcŭlum (ad), *nearer to danger.* Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides.* Cic. Usque pĕdes (ad), *even to the feet.* Curt.

2. With Ablative: *pālam*, *prŏcul*, *sĭmul* (poetic):

Pālam pŏpŭlo, *in the presence of the people.* Liv. Prŏcul castris, *at a distance from the camp.* Tac. Sĭmul his, *with these.* Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative: *clam*, *insŭper*:

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge.* Plaut. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge.* Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic. Vērae ămīcĭtiae, *true friendships.* Cic. Măgister optĭmus, *the best teacher.* Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive,* unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate;* it is then called a *predicate-adjective:* as *caeca est,* above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun, clause, infinitive,* etc.:

Quis clārior, *Who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est lĭbĕros ămāri, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 35. III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, *Death is the last* (thing). Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum ŏpĕrae (for *multa opĕra*), *much service* (much of service). Cic. Id tempŏris, *that time.* Cic. Vāna rērum (for *vānae res*), *vain things.* Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre pārāti, *a part* (some), *prepared to contend.* Virg. Nōbis (for *me,* 446, 2), praesente, *we* (I) *being present.* Plaut. Dēmosthĕnes cum cētĕris ĕrant expŭlsi, *Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for *majōrum*) ĭnĭtia rērum, *the beginnings of greater things.* Liv. Cursŭs justi (*justus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river.* Liv.

439. With two or more Nouns.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others:

Castor et Pollux vīsi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tĕmĕrĭtas ignōrātioque vĭtiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. The Attributive Adjective generally agrees with the nearest noun: Agri omnes et māria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

2. Different Genders.—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons:* then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine: Păter et măter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons* and *Things:* then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person: Rex rĕgiăque classis prŏfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things:* then the adjective is generally neuter: Hŏnōres, victōriae fortŭĭta sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental* (things). Cic.

3. Neuter with Masculine or Feminine.—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter:

Lăbor et dŏlor sunt fĭnĭtĭma, *Labor and pain are kindred* (things). Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rĕmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. Two or more Adjectives.—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun:

Prīma et vīcēsĭma lĕgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names: Cnaeus et Publius Scĭpiōnes, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

440. Use of Adjectives.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective: *aes dĭēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes alĭēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it: *multae et magnae tempestātes*, many great emergencies.

441. Adjectives are often used substantively: *docti*, the learned; *multi*, many persons; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things: *fortes*, the brave; *divites*, the rich; *paupĕres*, the poor; *multi*, many: *pauci*, few; *omnes*, all; *mei*, my friends; *utilia*, useful things; *mea, nostra*, my, our things; *omnia*, all things; *haec, illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense: *doctus*, a learned man;

vērum, a true thing, the truth; *nihil sincēri*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. Noun Understood.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fĕra* (bestia), wild beast; *hiberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. With Res.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res sĕcundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. From Proper Names.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: pugna Mărăthōnia, *the battle of Marathon*; Diāna Ephĕsia, *Diana of Ephesus*; Hercŭles Xĕnŏphontĭus, *the Hercules of Xenophon*.

6. Designating a Part.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *prīmus, mĕdius, ultĭmus, extrēmus, postrēmus, intĭmus, summus, infĭmus, ĭmus, suprēmus, reliquus, cētĕra*, etc.: *prīma nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inŏpiae, *for* ad ultimam inŏpiam, *to extreme destitution*. Liv.

442. Equivalent to a Clause.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nēmo saltat sobrius, *No one dances when he is sober*, or *when sober*. Cic. Hortensium vīvum āmāvi, *I loved Hortensius, while he was alive*. Cic. Hŏmo nunquam sobrius, *a man, who is never sober*. Cic.

1. *Prior, prīmus, ultĭmus, postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Prīmus mōrem solvit, *He was the first who broke the custom*. Liv.

With the adverb *prīmum*, the thought would be, *he first broke the custom*, and then did something else.

443. Instead of Adverbs.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes vēnēnum *laetus* hausit, *Socrates cheerfully drank the poison*. Sen. Sĕnātus *frĕquens* convēnit, *The senate assembled in great numbers*. Cic. Roscius ĕrat Rōmae frĕquens, *Roscius was frequently at Rome*. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of *joy, knowledge*, and their opposites: *laetus, lĭbens, invītus, tristis, sciens, insciens, prūdens, imprūdens*, etc. (2) *Nullus, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus; prior, prīmus, prōpior, proximus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of *time* and *place*:

Dŏmesticus ōtior, *I idle about home*. Hor. Vespertīnus pĕte tectum, *At evening seek your abode*. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. Comparison.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, *the former of these* (two). Nep. Gallōrum fortissĭmi, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes.

1. With the force of Too or Very.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too, unusually, somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. Comparative after Quam.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *măgis* or *pŏtius*:

Clārior quam grātior, *more illustrious than pleasing*. Liv. Dīsertus măgis quam săpiens, *fluent rather than wise*. Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *măgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. Strengthening Words.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante, prae, praeter, supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus, ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe, multo*, by far, much, *quam, quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxima pars, *by far the largest part*. Cic. Res ūna omnium difficillima, *a thing by far the most difficult of all*. Cic. Quam maximae cōpiae, *forces as large as possible*. Sall. Quanta maxima vastĭtas, *the greatest possible devastation*. Liv.

4. Comparison in Adverbs has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissīme, *as often as possible*. Cic. Fortius quam fēlīcius, *with more bravery than success*. Liv.

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Anĭmal quod sanguĭnem hăbet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic. Ego, qui te confirmo, *I who encourage you*. Cic. Vis est in virtūtĭbus; eas excĭta, *There is strength in virtues, arouse them*. Cic.

1. Application of Rule.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as *nouns*. Pronouns used as *adjectives* conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *anĭmal* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtĭbus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter:

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest:

Puĕri mŭliĕresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccātum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3); hence *puĕri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs. See 463. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent:

Anĭmal quem (for *quod*) vŏcāmus hŏmĭnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (*quae*) căput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) ĕrat confessio, *That* (i. e., the action referred to) *was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive Rhenus; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are *attracted* to agree with their predicate nouns *hominem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs:

Equĭtātŭs, qui vīdērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eārum rērum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dēmŏcrĭtum ŏmittāmus; ăpud istos; *let us omit Democritus; with such* (i. e., as he). Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive:

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integrĭtāte vixistis, hoc intĕrest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent:

Nos, id quod dēbet, patria dĕlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought* (lit. *that which it owes*). Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated:

Jūdĭce quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tĕnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stătuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mălārum, quas ămor cūras hăbet, oblīvisci (for *malārum curārum quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos introducitis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic, is, ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quidem*, you indeed, *ille quidem*, he indeed. *Quidem* adds emphasis; *equidem* = ĕgo quidem.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mănus lăva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipse*:

Se dilĭgit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mŏvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consŏlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādent Tulingis ŭti cum iis prŏfĭciscantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos, inter vos, inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together;* but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Collŏquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hŏmines hŏmĭnĭbus ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men*, i. e., to each other. Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand:

Se dīligit, *He loves himself*. Cic. Justĭtia propter sēse cŏlenda est, *Justice should be cultivated for its own sake*. Cic. Annŭlum suum dĕdit, *He gave his ring*. Nep.

1. In Subordinate Clauses expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject:

Sentit ănĭmus se vi sua mŏvēri, *The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power*. Cic. A me pĕtīvit ut sēcum essem, *He asked* (from) *me to be with him* (that I would be). Cic. Pervestigat quid sui cīves cōgĭtent, *He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think*. Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Is*, *Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Deum agnoscis ex ejus ŏpĕrĭbus, *You recognise a god by* (from) *his works*. Cic. Obligat cīvĭtātem nihil eos mūtātūros, *He binds the state not to change anything* (that they will). Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum iis* is the proper language for the *writer* without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *sēcum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. Suus = His own, etc.—Suus in the sense of *his own, fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object:

Justĭtia suum cuique trĭbuit, *Justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic.

3. Construction according to Sense.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter:

A Caesăre invītor sĭbi ut sim lēgātus, *I am invited by Caesar* (real agent) *to be his lieutenant*. Cic.

4. Suus Substantively.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases:

Fuit hoc luctuōsum suis, *This was afflicting to his friends*. Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. Sui and Suus sometimes refer to an omitted subject:

Dēforme est de se praedĭcāre, *To boast of one's self is disgusting*. Cic.

6. Reflexives referring to different Subjects.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject:

Respondit nēmĭnem sēcum sine sua pernĭcie contendisse, *He replied that no one had contended with him without* (his) *destruction*. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *nēmĭnem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. Demonstrative Pronouns.

450. ***Hic, Iste, Ille,*** are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos hujus urbis, *the guardian of this city.* Cic. Mūta istam mentem, *Change that purpose of yours.* Cic. Si illos neglīgis, *if you disregard those.* Cic.

1. Hic and Ille in Contrasts.—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time:

Non antīquo illo mōre, sed hoc nostro fuit ērŭdītus, *He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way.* Cic.

2. Hic and Ille, former and latter.—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important:

Ignāvia, lăbor: illa, hic; *Indolence, labor: the former, the latter.* Cels. Pax, victōria: haec (*pax*) in tua, illa in deōrum pōtestāte est; *Peace, victory: the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods.* Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *hōmo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ĕgo*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quĭdem:* Scīpio non multum ille quidem dīcēbat, *Scipio did not indeed say much.* Cic. See 446. 1.

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case: *hic dŏlor* = dŏlor hujus rei, grief on account of this; *haec cūra* = cura de hoc, care concerning this.

451. ***Is*** and ***Idem*** refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

Diŏnȳsius aufūgit: is est in prōvincia, *Dionysius has fled: he is in the province.* Cic. Is qui sătis hăbet, *he who has enough.* Cic. Eădem audīre mālunt, *They prefer to hear the same things.* Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive:

Flēbat păter de fīlii morte, de patris fīlius, *The father wept over the death of the son, the son over* (that) *of the father.* Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipse with a Conjunction* is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too, and that indeed:*

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also:* Audīre Crātippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet:*

Nihil ūtile, quod non idem hōnestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dīcat—negat idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = he—who, such—as, such—that:

Ii sūmus, qui esse dēbēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui; idem—ac, atque, quam, qudsi, ut, cum* with Abl. = the same—who, the same—as:

Iidem mōres, qui, *The same manners which* or *as.* Cic. Est idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self:*

Ipse Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. IPSE WITH SUBJECT.—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me ipse consōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. IPSE, VERY.—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very:*

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just:*

Trīginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own:*

Nostra ipsōrum āmīcitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipse Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus:*

Lēgātos mīsit qui ipsi vītam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res lŏquĭtur ipsa; quae semper vălet; *The fact itself speaks, and this* (which) *ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ĭta sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui,* etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui,* 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quīcunque* and *Quisquis*, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of fĭĕri pŏtest: *quācunque rātiōne*, in every way, *i. e.*, in whatever way it is possible.

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together:

Quae nec hăbērēmus nec his ūtērēmur, *Which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive: *ii qui audiunt* = auditōres, *hearers.*

3. TWO RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Artes quas qui tĕnent, *arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl.:

Quae tua prūdentia est = qua es prūdentia = pro tua prūdentia = *such is your prudence,* or *you are of such prudence,* or *in accordance with your prudence,* etc.: Spēro, quae tua prūdentia est, te vălēre, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals:

Vāsa, quae pulcherrĭma vīdĕrat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem hăbuit fīdēlissĭmum, mīsit, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive,* or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *ni, nīsi, etsi,* and sometimes before *quia, quŏnĭam, ūtĭnam,* etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and:*

Quod si cĕcidĕrint, *if* or *but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dīcitur, qui vŏcātur,* or the corresponding active *quem dīcunt, quem vŏcant,* are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they* or *you call,* etc.:

Vestra quae dīcitur vīta, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vŏcas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis,* is used substantively; *qui,* adjectively:

Quis ĕgo sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quid făcĭet, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. QUIS AND QUI.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively:

Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, consīdĕra, *Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. QUID, *why, how is it that,* etc., is often used adverbially (880. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb: *Quid ĕnim,* why then? what indeed (*est* or *dīcam*)? *Quid quod,* what of the fact that?

3. TWO INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause:

Quis quem fraudāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. ATTRACTION.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun:

Quam (for *quid*) dīcam vŏluptātem vīdētis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

V. Indefinite Pronouns.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui,* and *quispiam,* are all indefinite, *some one, any one:*

Est ălĭquis, *there is some one.* Liv. Dixit quis, *some one said.* Cic. Si quis rex, *if any king.* Cic. Alia res quaepiam, *any other thing.* Cic.

1. *Alĭquis* is less indefinite than *quis, qui,* and *quispiam.*

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si, nisi, ne,* and *num. Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Alĭquis* after *si,* etc., is emphatic.

456. *Quīdam,* a certain one, is less indefinite than *alĭquis:*

Quīdam rhētor antīquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician.* Cic. Accurrit quīdam, *A certain one runs up.* Hor.

1. *Quīdam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Justĭtia mīrifica quaedam vidētur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful.* Cic.

2. *Quīdam* with *quasi* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were:*

Quāsi ălumna quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were.* Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me quisquam agnōvit, *Nor did any one recognize me.* Cic. Si quisquam, *if any one.* Cic. Num censes ullum ănĭmal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nēmo* is the negative of *quisquam,* and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmĭnem laesit, *He harmed no one.* Cic. Nēmo pŏsta, *no post.* Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus,* and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nēmo,* which generally wants those cases:

Nullum ănimal, *no animal.* Cic. Nullius aures, *the ears of no one.* Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non.—Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non:*

Nullus vēnit, *He did not come.* Cic. Mortui nulli sunt, *The dead are not.* Cic.

458. *Quīvis, Quīlĭbet,* any one whatever, and *Quisque,* every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelĭbet res, *any thing.* Cic. Tuōrum quisque nĕcessārĭōrum, *each one of your friends.* Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever, always,* with *primus* by *very, possible:*

Epĭcūrēos doctissĭmus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans,* or *the most learned ever despise,* etc. Cic. Primo quōque die, *the earliest day possible, the very first.* Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more:*

Ut quisque sĭbi plūrĭmum confĭdit, ĭta maxĭme excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels.* Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated: *ălĭus—ălius*, one—another; *alii—alii*, some—others; *alter—alter*, the one—the other; *altĕri—altĕri*, the one party—the other:

Alii glōriae serviunt, ălii pĕcūniae, *Some are slaves to glory, others to money.* Cic. Altĕri dīmĭcant, altĕri tĭment, *One party contends, the other fears.* Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis:

Alius ălia via cīvĭtātem auxērunt, *They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another.* Liv. So also with *ălias* or *ălĭter*: Aliter ălii vīvunt, *Some live in one way, others in another.* Cic.

2. After *Alius, Aliter*, and the like, *atque, ac*, and *et* often mean *than*:

Non ălius essem atque sum, *I would not be other than I am.* Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second*; ălius, *another, other.* When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either:

Inimīcus, compĕtītor, cum altĕro—cum altĕro, *an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former.* Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties.*

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tўrannos intrōdūcĭtis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt, *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject:

Diffidentia fūtūrum quae imperāvisset, *from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place.* Sall.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dīcas*, you (any one) may say; *dīcimus*, we (people) say; *dīcunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars, multitūdo*, and the like:

Multitūdo ăbeunt, *The multitude depart.* Liv. Pars per agros dilapsi, *a part* (some) *dispersed through the fields.* Liv.

1) Here *multitūdo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: Adde dēfectiōnem Siciliae, *Add* (to this, soldiers,) *the revolt of Sicily.* Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *Sing.*, and the latter *Plur.*: Jūventus ruit certantque, *The youth rush forth and contend.* Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain.* Liv.

3. With *Quisque, Uterque, Alius—Alium, Alter—Altĕrum*, and the like:

Uterque ēdūcunt, *they each lead out.* Caes. Alter altĕrum vīdēmus, *We see each other.* Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum:*

Dux cum principĭbus căpiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken.* Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim—Partim* in the sense of *pars—pars:*

Bŏnōrum partim nĕcessāria, partim non nĕcessāria sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary.* Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun:

Volsĭnii, oppĭdum Tuscōrum, concrĕmātum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned.* Plin. Non omnis error stultĭtia est dīcenda, *Not every error should be called folly.* Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs, oppĭdum*, or *cīvĭtas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam, nĭsi*, etc.: Nihil ălĭud nĭsi pax quaesīta est (not *quaesītum*), *Nothing but peace was sought.* Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others:

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sŏlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hŏmērus fuit et Hēsiŏdus ante Rōmam condĭtam, *Homer and Hesiod lived* (were) *before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number:

Lentŭlus, Scīpio pĕrĭērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cĭcĕro vălēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vălētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb:

Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque intellĭgit, *The senate and people* (i. e., the state as a unit) *understand.* Cic. Tempus nĕcessĭtasque postŭlat, *Time and necessity* (i. e., the crisis) *demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut, vel, nec, nĕque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur.:

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius jūdĭcāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nĕque ĕgo nĕque tu fēcĭmus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things: (371.6):

Deus omnia constĭtuit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constĭtūta sunt, *All things were ordained by God.* Cic. Dei prōvĭdentia mundum admĭnistrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei prōvĭdentia mundus admĭnistrātur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God.* Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lăvantur in flūmĭnĭbus, *They bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers.* Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Currĭtur ad praetōrium, *They run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic.

3 DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mīrābar, *I admired that.* Cic. Ab urbe prōfĭcisci, *to set out from the city.* Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (272. 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cĭcĕro vălēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Hoc te rŏgo, *I ask you for this.* Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs:*

Nihil est ămābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Fortes fortūna adjŭvat, *Fortune helps the brave.* Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jŭgurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart.* Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. Present with Jamdiu, Jamdudum.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu, jamdūdum*, etc.

Jamdiu ignōro quid ăgas, *I have not known for a long time what you are doing.* Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. Present applied to Authors.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant:

Xĕnŏphon făcit Socrătem dispūtantem, *Xenophon represents Socrates discussing.* Cic.

4. Present with Dum.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions:

Dum ea părant, Săguntum oppugnābātur, *While they were* (are) *making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked.* Liv.

5. Present for Future.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions:

Si vincĭmus, omnia tūta ĕrunt, *If we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

II. Imperfect Indicative.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time:

Stābant nōbĭlissĭmi jŭvĕnes, *There stood* (were standing) *most noble youths.* Liv. Colles oppĭdum cingēbant, *Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events:

Ante oppĭdum plānĭties pătēbat, *Before the town extended a plain.* Caes. Fulgentes glădios vidēbant, *They saw* (were seeing) *the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc.:

Pausănias ŏpŭlābātur mōre Persārum, *Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style.* Nep.

1. Imperfect of Attempted Action.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action:

Sēdābant tŭmultus, *They attempted to quell the seditions.* Liv.

2. Imperfect in Letters.—See 472. 1.

III. Future Indicative.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time:

Scrībam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam āberrābĭmus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. Future with Imperative Force.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative:

Cūrābis et scrībes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. Latin Future for English Present.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English:

Nātūram si sĕquēmur, nunquam āberrābĭmus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. Future Indicative with Melius.—With *mĕlius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive:

Mĕlius pĕrībĭmus, *We would perish rather,* or *it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

IV. Perfect Indicative.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses:

I. As the Present Perfect or Perfect Definite, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have:*

De gĕnĕre belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the Historical Perfect or Perfect Indefinite, it represents the action as a simple historical fact:

Miltiădes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. Perfect of what has ceased to be.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present:

Hăbuit, non hăbet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. Perfect Indicative with Paene, Prope.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene, prŏpe,* may often be rendered by *might, would,* or by the Pluperfect Indicative:

Brūtum non mĭnus ămo, *paene dixi,* quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say,* or *I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. Perfect for English Present.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Měmĭnit praetĕrĭtōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come* (have come) *to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Měmĭnĕram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum,* etc., in the sense of *as soon as,* are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cĕcĭdit Ilium, *after* (as soon as) *Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam prŏfŭgĕrat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (posteăquam): Posteăquam aedificasset classes, *after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collŏcāvĕrat, rĕduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. TENSES.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil hăbĕbam quod scrĭbĕrem: ad tuas omnes ĕpistŏlas rescripsĕram, *I have* (had) *nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters* (I had replied, i. e., before writing this). Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen *after* the writing of the letter but *before* the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—See 471. 3.

3. PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness af action:

Urbem luctu complēvĕrant, *They* (had) *filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnĕro, scrĭbam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lĕges, ĕgo illum fortasse convēnĕro, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum offĭcium praestĭtĕro, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses:

Si interprētāri pŏtuĕro, his verbis ūtĭtur, *If I can* (shall have been able to) *understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedĭfĭcāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc fēci, dum lĭcuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2):

Haec condĭtio non accĭpienda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so:

Vīcĕrāmus, nĭsi rĕcĕpisset Antōnium, *We should have* (*lit.* had) *conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative:

Quisquis est, is est săpiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultĭmum, utcunque inĭtum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. *In Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability,* and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not:

Tardius quam dēbuĕrat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, mĕlius, ūtĭlius, longum, difficĭle,* and the like: Longum est persĕqui ūtilitātes, *It would be tedious* (is a long task) *to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Vălеant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utĭnam vēra invĕnīre possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblītus es quid dixĕrim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thĕmistocles, quum Graeciam lĭbĕrasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. Sequence of Tenses.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nĕmo ĕrit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesiĕras nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. Application of the Rule.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Vĭdeo quid ăgas,	*I see what you are doing.*
Vīdi quid agas,	*I have seen what you are doing.*
Vĭdēbo quid agas,	*I shall see what you do.*
Vidĕro quid agas,	*I shall have seen what you do.*

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Vĭdeo quid ēgĕris,	*I see what you have done.*
Vīdi quid egeris,	*I have seen what you have done.*
Vĭdēbo quid egeris,	*I shall see what you have done.*
Vidĕro quid egeris,	*I shall have seen what you have done.*

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action:

Vīdēbam quid ăgĕres,	*I saw what you were doing.*
Vīdi quid ageres,	*I saw what you were doing.*
Vīdĕram quid ageres,	*I had seen what you were doing.*

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action:

Vīdēbam quid ēgisses,	*I saw what you had done.*
Vīdī quid egisses,	*I saw what you had done.*
Vīdĕram quid egisses,	*I had seen what you had done.*

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule:

Vīdeo quid actūrus sis,	*I see what you are going to do.*
Vīdēbam quid actūrus esses,	*I saw what you were going to do.*

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present[1] or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *fūtūrum sit ut*,[2] with the regular Present, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices:

Incertum est quam longa vīta fūtūra sit, *It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum ĕrat quo missūri classem fĕrent, *It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fūtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fūtūrus sim* and *fūtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle:

Non dŭbĭto quin confecta jam res fūtūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense·

1. As Principal tense according to its Form:

Ubii ōrant, ut sĭbi parcat, *The Ubii implore him to spare them.* Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense:

Persuādet Castĭco ut regnum occŭpāret, *He persuaded Casticus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense:

---

[1] The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

[2] *Futūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *futūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mĕmŏrāre possem quĭbus in lŏcis hostes fūdĕrit, *I might* (now) *state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spēro fŏre[1] ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāvĕrat fŏre ut ad se dēfĭcĕrent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect:*

Quŏniam quae subsĭdia hăbŭĕres expŏsui,[2] nunc dīcam, *Since I have shown what aids you have* (or *had*), *I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect:*

Epămĭnondas fĭde sic ūsus est, ut possit jūdĭcāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristīdes abstĭnentia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit jūdĭcāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: Nĕque ullos văcāre agros, qui dări possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were* (are) *not any lands unoccupied which could* (can) *be given.* Caes.

---

[1] Here *fŏre* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāvĕrat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēfĭcĕrent*.

[2] *Expŏsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak*, &c.

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

488. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

I. The Potential Subjunctive.
II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible:*

Forsĭtan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire.* Cic. Hoc nēmo dixĕrit, *No one would say this.* Cic. Huic cēdāmus, hujus condĭtiōnes audiāmus, *Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dŭbĭtet (= nēmo dŭbĭtat), *Who would doubt,* or *who doubts* (= no one doubts)? Cic. Quid făcĕrem, *What was I to do,* or *what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,[1] to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real:*

Quamquam ĕpŭlis căreat sĕnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts.* Cic. Quŏniam non possent, *since they would not be able.* Caes. Ubi res poscĕret, *whenever the case might demand.* Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quŏniam*, and *ŭbi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. Use of the Potential Subjunctive.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered.*—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may*, *can*, *must*, *might*, etc., or by *shall* or *will*.

3. Inclination.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think*, or *I am inclined to think.* Liv.

4. Imperfect for Pluperfect.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dicĕres*, you would have said; *crēdĕres, pŭtāres*, you would have thought; *vidĕres, cernĕres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdĕres* victos, rĕdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp.* Liv.

5. Subjunctive of Repeated Action.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ŭbi*, whenever, *quŏties*, as often as, *quĭcunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētĭālis ŭbi dixisset, hastam mittĕbat, *The fetial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever* (i. e., every time) *he had said this.* Liv.

6. Present and Perfect.—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plătōnem laudāvĕris, *You would praise Plato.* Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. Conditional Sentences.—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

[1] These are also variously called *Deliberative*, *Doubting*, or *Rhetorical Questions.*

II. The Subjunctive of Desire.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired:*

Vălеant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rōbŏre ūtāre, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scrībĕre ne pigrēre, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. Application of the Rule.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a wish, as in *prayers*, *exhortations*, and *entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a command mildly, as in *admonitions*, *precepts*, and *warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. With Utinam.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *ūtĭnam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut*, *si*, *o si*:

Utĭnam cōnāta effĭcĕre possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. Force of Tenses.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled:

Sint beāti, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transiĕris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utĭnam possem, ūtĭnam pŏtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been:*

Hoc dīcĕret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppŏtĭsses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. Negative Ne.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non:*

Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non rĕcēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. In Asseverations.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations:

Mŏriar, si pŭto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scrĭbo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic:* Sollĭcĭtat, ĭta vīvam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. In Relative Clauses.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses:

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sĕnectus, ad quam ūtĭnam pervĕnĭātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmĭnus:**

Purpose.—Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Pūnit ne peccētur, *He punishes that crime may not be committed.* Sen.

Result.—Ita vixit ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.

II. With **qui = ut is, ut ĕgo, tu,** etc.:

Purpose.—Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should *or* that they should). Nep.

Result.—Non is sum qui (*ut ego*) his ūtar, *I am not such an one as to use these things.* Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *ăgo*, rarely with *est* a circumlocution for the Indicative: *fācio ut dīcam* = dico; *fācio ut scrībam* = scrībo: Invītus făcio ut rĕcorder, *I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. Ut and Ne.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nĕve, neu*, rarely *nēque.* Nĕve, neu, = *aut ne* or *et ne:* Lēgem tŭlit nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

491. Pure Purpose.—Ut and ne—*that, in order that, that not, in order that not, lest,* etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*ĭdeo, idcirco,* etc.—may or may not precede:

Lēgum idcirco servi sŭmus, ut lĭbĕri esse possĭmus, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. Mixed Purpose.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a *Purpose* which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject*, *Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. Effort.—striving for a purpose; attaining a purpose:

nĭtor, contendo, stŭdeo,—cūro, id ăgo, ŏpĕram do, etc., făcio, effĭcio, impetro, consĕquor, etc.:

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvi ut bĕne vīvĕrem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effēcit ut impĕrātor mittĕrētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

2. Exhortation, Impulse—urging one to effort:

admŏneo, mŏneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mŏveo,—ōro, rŏgo,—impĕro, praecĭpio, etc.:

Te hortor ut lĕgas, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Mŏvēmur ut bŏni sīmus, *We are influenced to be good.* Cic. Te rŏgo ut eum jŭves, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2; 558. VI.

3. Desire and its Expression: hence *decision, decree,* etc.:

opto, postŭlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stătuo, constĭtuo, etc.—rarely vŏlo, nōlo, mālo:

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire* (pray) *that you may hear this.* Cic. Sĕnātus censuĕrat, ŭti Aeduos dēfenděret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. Fear, Danger:

mĕtuo, tĭmeo, vĕreor,—pĕrīcŭlum est, cūra est, etc.:

Tĭmeo, ut sustĭneas, *I fear you will not endure them.* Cic. Vĕreor ne lăbōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not,* and *ne* by *that* or *lest.* The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut,* regularly so after negative clauses: Vĕreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vĕreor,* the infinitive is sometimes used: Vĕreor laudāre, *I fear* (hesitate) *to praise.* Cic.

493. Peculiarities.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut ne,* rarely *ut non,* is sometimes used for *ne:*

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dīmittĕrent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates.* Nep. Ut plūra non dīcam, *not to say more,* i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, făcio,* and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *căve:*

Tu vĕlim sis, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fac hăbeas, *see* (make) *that you have.* Cic. Sĕnātus decrēvit, dărent ŏpĕram consŭles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted:

Fēcit pācem his condĭtiōnĭbus, ne qui affĭcĕrentur exsĭlio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep. Ut ĭta dīcam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak.*

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less, not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive:

Vix in tectis frīgus vītātur, nēdum in mări sit făcile, *The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea.* Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—Ut and ut non—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence:*

Ita vixit ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. Ita laudo, ut non pertĭmescam, *I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, sic, tam, ădeo, tantōpĕre,—tālis, tantus, ejusmŏdi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate*, or *Appositive:* Thus

1. Clauses as OBJECT AND RESULT occur with *făcio, efficio*, of the action of irrational forces:

Sol efficit ut omnia flōreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom*, i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as SUBJECT AND RESULT occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant*, etc.:

accĭdit, contingit, ĕvĕnit, fit, restat,—sĕquĭtur,—ăbest, etc.

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, *The result is* (it happens) *that every one is delighted.* Cic. Sĕquĭtur ut falsum sit, *It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum:*

Mos est ut nōlint, *It is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. Proxĭmum est, ut dŏceam, *The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *crēdendum est, vērisimĭle est*, is it to be credited, is it probable?

Tu ut unquam te corrĭgas, *that you should ever reform?* i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, or PREDICATE AND RESULT, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns:

Hăbet hoc virtus ut dēlectet, *Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. Est hoc vĭtium, ut invĭdia glōriae cŏmes sit, *There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *ŏportet*, generally with *ŏpus est* and *nĕcesse est:*

Te ŏportet virtus trăhat, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.* Cic. Causam hăbeat nĕcesse est, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.* Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut:*

Lĭbĕrālius quam ut posset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Impōnēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum ăbest.*—After *tantum ăbest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs:

Phĭlŏsŏphia, tantum ăbest, ut laudētur ut ĕtiam vĭtŭpĕrētur, *So far is it from the truth* (so much is wanting), *that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. QUO.—Quo, *by which, that*, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives:

Mĕdĭco dăre quo sit stŭdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. QUIN.—Quin (quĭ and ne), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non:*

Rĕtĭnēri non pŏtĕrant, quin tēla conjĭcĕrent, *They could not be restrained from hurling* (that they might not) *their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam difficĭle quin (*ut non*) investīgāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne.*

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

Adest nēmo, quin vĭdeat, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic. Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

Is or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin:*

Nihil est quin id intĕreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that, but that, without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like:

Non est dŭbium quin bĕnĕfĭcium sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intĕrmīsi diem quin ălĭquid dărem, *I allowed no day to*

pass, without giving something. Cic. Făcĕre non possum quin littĕras mittam, *I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dūbĭto, non dūbium est—non multum ābest, paulum ābest, nihil ābest, quid ābest?—non, vix, segre abstineo; mihi non tempĕro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcĕre non possum, fĭĕri non pōtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dūbĭtat pătĕre Eurōpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but:* Quin ăgite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. Quominus.—Quōmĭnus (quo and mĭnus), *that thus the less, that not,* is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non,* after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret săpientem mors quōmĭnus rcipublĭcae consŭlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rĕcūsāvit, quominus poenam sŭbīret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stĕtit quōmĭnus dīmĭcārētur, *It was owing to him* (stood through him), *that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering,* etc., are: dēterreo, impĕdio, prōhĭbeo,—obsto, obsisto, officio,—rĕcūso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut, ne, quo, quin,* or *quōmĭnus.*

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut,* denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut ĕgo, ut tu, ut is,* etc.:

Purpose.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should, *or* that they should). Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermŏpўlas occŭpārent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

Result.—Non is sum qui (= *ut ĕgo*) his ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innŏcentia est affectio tālis ănĭmi, quae (= *ut ea*) nŏceat nēmĭni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one,* or *as to injure no one.* Cic.

1. Relative Particles.—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles; ŭbi, unde,* etc.:

Dŏmum ŭbi hăbĭtāret, lēgit, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it* (where he might dwell). Cic.

2. Purpose and Result.—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, *is*, *ējusmŏdi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. Indicative after Talis, etc.—In a relative clause after *tālis*, *is*, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*:

Mihi causa tālis oblāta est, in qua ōrātio deesse nēmini pŏtest, *Such a cause has been offered me*, (one) *in which no one can fail of an oration*. Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

Nunc dīcis ălĭquid (*ējusmŏdi*, or *tāle*) quod ad rem pertĭneat, *Now you state something which belongs to the subject* (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. Sunt qui pŭtent, *there are some who think*. Cic. Nēmo est qui non cŭpiat, *there is no one who does not desire*, i. e., such as not to desire. Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ŭbi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non hăbeo*, *nihil hăbeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, *There is reason why you should rejoice*, or *so that you may*. Plaut. Non est quod crēdas, *There is no reason why you should believe*. Sen. Nihil hăbeo, quod incūsem sĕnectūtem, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age*. Cic.

2. Indicative after Indefinite Antecedent.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dīcĕre, *There are some who* (actually) *do not dare to speak*. Cic. Multa sunt, quae dīci possunt, *There are many things which may be said*. Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos jŭvat, *there are some whom it delights*. Hor.

3. Restrictive Clauses with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod mĕmĭnĕrim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Sōlus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Săpientia est ūna, quae moestĭtiam pellat, *Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness* (such as to dispel). Cic. Sōli centum ĕrant qui creāri possent, *There were only one hundred who could be appointed* (such that they could be). Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Aptus* take the subjunctive:

Fābŭlae dignae sunt, quae lĕgantur, *The fables are worthy to be read* (that they should be read). Cic. Rūfum Caesar īdōneum jūdĭcāvĕrat quem mittĕret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send* (whom he might send). Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive:

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= *ut ea*) aestīmāri possint, *The losses are too great to be estimated* (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. Subjunctive of Condition.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion:*

Si nĕgem, mentiar, *If I should deny it, I should speak falsely.* Cic. Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With **dum, mŏdo, dummŏdo:**

Mănent ingĕnia, mŏdo permăneat industria, *Mental powers remain, if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quăsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si:**

Crūdēlĭtātem, vĕlut si ădesset, horrēbant, *They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nĭsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis:**

Dies dēfĭciat, si vĕlim nūmĕrāre, *The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount.* Cic. Imprŏbe fēcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. Si vŏluisset, dīmĭcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep.

1. Si Omitted.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

Nĕgat quis, nĕgo, *Does any one deny, I deny.* Ter. Rŏges me, nihil respondeam, *Should you ask me, I should make no reply.* Cic. See also *Imperative*, 535. 2.

2. Condition Supplied.—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles:* Non pŏtestis, vŏluptāte omnia dīrĭgentes (*si dirigĭtis*), rĕtĭnēre virtūtem, *You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure.* Cic.

2) By *Oblique Cases:* Nēmo sīne spe (*nĭsi spem hăberet*) se offerret ad mortem, *No one without a hope* (if he had not a hope) *would expose himself to death.* Cic.

3. Irony.—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi vēro, nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quăsi, quăsi vēro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive:

Nīsi forte insānit, *unless perhaps he is insane.* Cic. Quăsi vēro nĕcesse sit, *as if indeed it were necessary.* Caes.

4. Ita—si, etc.—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if*. *Si quidem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since.*

5. Et omitted.—See 587. I. 6.

504. Force of Tenses.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. Present for Imperfect.—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible:

Tu si hic sis, ălĭter sentias, *If you were the one* (or, *should be*), *you would think differently.* Ter.

2. Imperfect for Pluperfect.—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed:

Num Opīmium, si tum esses, tĕmĕrārium cīvem pŭtāres? *Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time* (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. Dum, Mŏdo, Dummŏdo.—Dum, mŏdo, and dummŏdo, in conditions, have the force of—*if only, provided that*, or with ne, *if only not, provided that not:*

Dum res măneant, verba fingant, *Let them make words, if only the facts remain.* Cic. Mŏdo permăneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic. Dummŏdo rĕpellat pĕrīcŭlum, *provided he may avert danger.* Cic. Mŏdo ne laudārent, *if only they did not praise.* Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative:

Dum lĕges vĭgēbant, *while the laws were in force.* Cic.

506. Ac si, Ut si, Quăsi, etc.—Ac si, ut si, quam si, quăsi, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion:

Mĭsĕrior es, quam si ŏcŭlos non hăbēres, *You are more unhappy than* (esses, you would be) *if you had not eyes.* Cic. Crūdēlĭtātem, vĕlut si adesset, horrēbant, *They shuddered at his cruelty as* (they would) *if he were present.* Caes. Ut si in suam rem ălĭēna convertant, *as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. Tanquam audiant, *as if they may hear.* Sen.

Ceu and *Sīcūti* are sometimes used in the same way:

Ceu bella fŏrent, *as if there were wars.* Virg. Sīcūti audīri possent, *as if they could be heard.* Sall.

507. Sī, Nĭsi, Nī, Sĭn, Quī.—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si, nĭsi, ni, sin:*

I. Indicative in both Clauses.
II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. First Form.—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec cīvĭtas est, cīvis sum ĕgo, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. Si non lĭcēbat, non nĕcesse ĕrat, *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. Dŏlōrem si non pŏtĕro frangĕre, occultābo, *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic. Parvi sunt fŏris arma, nĭsi est consĭlium dŏmi, *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. Condition.—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem, mŏdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non, nisi, ni*. The *time* may be either *present, past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. Conclusion.—The conclusion may take the form of a command: Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. Si non, Nĭsi.—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative *condition* on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a *qualification* or an *exception*. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. Second Form.—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as *possible:*

Haec si tēcum patria lŏquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. Imprŏbe fēcĕris, nĭsi mŏnuĕris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mĕtuit ne, si īret, retrăhĕrētur, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

510. Third Form.—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Săpientia non expĕtĕrētur, si nihil effĭcĕret, *Wisdom would not be sought* (as it is), *if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Si optĭma tĕnēre possēmus, haud sāne consĭlio ĕgērēmus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Si vŏluisset, dīmĭcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nunquam ăbisset, nĭsi sĭbi viam mūnīvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty, Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fūtūrum fuit, si plebs ăgĭtāri coepta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inŏpia coactus ut, nĭsi timuisset, Galliam rĕpĕtītūrus fŭĕrit, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul.* Liv.

Here *rĕpĕtītūrus fŭĕrit* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut;* but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

511. Mixed Forms.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Pĕream, si pŏtĕrunt, *May I perish* (subj. of desire, 487), *if they shall be able.* Cic. Quid tĭmeam, si beātus fūtūrus sum, *Why should I fear* (486. II.), *if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies dēfĭciet, si vĕlim causam dēfendĕre, *The day would* (will) *fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Vĭcĕrāmus nĭsi rĕcēpisset Antōnium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for *effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if, although:*

Si hoc plăceat, tămen vŏlunt, *Even if* (although) *this pleases them, they still wish.* Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo, Possum*, and the like:

Quem, si ulla in te piĕtas esset, cŏlĕre dēbēbas, *Whom you ought to have honored* (and would have honored), *if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. Dēlēri exercĭtus pŏtuit, si persĕcūti victōres essent, *The army might have been destroyed* (and would have been), *if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prŏpe:*

Rēlictūri agros ĕrant, nĭsi littĕras mīsisset, *They were about to leave their lands* (and would have done so), *had he not sent a letter.* Cic. Pons ĭter paene hostĭbus dĕdit, ni ūnus vir fuisset, *The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy* (and would have done so), *had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive:

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., *He greatly errs who supposes*, etc., i. e., if *or* provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. Haec qui vĭdeat, cōgātur, *If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although:*

Quamquam intellĭgunt, *though they understand.* Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With **lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis,—ut, ne, quum,** although:

Lĭcet irrīdeat, plus tămen rătio vălēbit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. Ut dēsint vīres, tămen est laudanda vŏluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With **qui = quum** (lĭcet) **is, quum ĕgo,** etc., though he:

Absolvīte Verrem, qui (*quum is*) se fāteātur pĕcūnias cēpisse, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses* (who may confess) *that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi, tămetsi, ĕtiamsi:**

Quod sentiunt, etsi optĭmum sit, tămen non audent dīcĕre, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes:

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative:

Quamquam intellĭgunt, tămen nunquam dīcunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The *Subjunctive* may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The *Subjunctive*, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: Quamquam ne id quidem suspīcionem hŭbŭĕrit, *Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet:* Quamquam quid lŏquor, *And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis, —ut, ne, quum,* although;—*qui = quum* (or *lĭcet*) *is, ego, tu,* etc., take the Subjunctive:

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much* (although) *you excel.* Cic. Ne sit summum mălum dŏlor, mălum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. Ut and Ne.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sīne:* thus, *ut dēsint vīres* (515. I.) = *fac* or *sīne ut dēsint vīres,* make *or* grant that strength fails. See 489.

The *Concessive Particle* is sometimes omitted:

Sed hăbeat, tămen, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

Ut—sic or ita, *as—so, though—yet,* does not require the subjunctive.

2. QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignĭtāte rēgia, quamvis cārēbat nōmĭne, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *licet* (quum) *is, licet ĕgo, tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of SI: *etsi, ĕtiamsi, tămetsi* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil hăbeat in se glōria, tămen virtūtem sĕquĭtur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. Etiamsi mors oppĕtenda esset, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui = quum is**, etc.:

Quum vīta mĕtus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae quum ĭta sint, perge, *Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. O vis vērĭtātis, quae (*quum ea*) se dēfendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With **quod, quia, quŏniam, quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrătes accūsātus est, quod corrumpĕret jŭventūtem, *Socrates was accused, because* (on the alleged ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. QUUM.—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. CAUSE or CONCESSION:

Quum sint in nōbis rătio, prūdentia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. Phōcion fuit pauper, quum dīvĭtissĭmus esse posset, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION:

Quum dīmicāret, occīsus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frequenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dīmicāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occīsus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period:

Id saeculum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīderes, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc.: Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative:

Quum quiescunt, prŏbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pāruit, quum nŏcesse ĕrat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with Quum, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason:

O fortūnāte ădŏlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hŏmērum praecōnem invēnĕris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ĕgo, quum tu, quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used:

Hăbeo sĕnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis āvĭdĭtātem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum, quippe, ut, utpŏte:*

Quae quum īta sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiātur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cŏlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia, quŏniam:*

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quŏniam intellĭgi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod, quia, quŏniam,* and *quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority:*

Quŏniam supplĭcātio decrēta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.* Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that* (because) *they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully*, or *on another's authority:*

Aristīdes nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because* (on the alleged ground that) *he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dīco* and *pŭto* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gestūros dīcĕrent = quod bellum gestūri essent, ut dīcēbant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin,* rarely *non quia,* also *quam quod,* etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo hăbĕrem quod scrībĕrem, *not because* (that) *I had anything to write.* Cic. Non quod dŏleant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nĕquīvĕrat quam quod ignōrāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With **dum, dōnec, quoad,** until:

Exspectas dum dīcat, *You are waiting till he speaks,* i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea contĭnēbis quoad te vĭdeam, *You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With **antĕquam, priusquam,** before, before that:

Antĕquam de re pūblĭca dīcam, expōnam consĭlium, *I will set forth my plan before I* (can) *speak of the republic,* i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incīpias, *before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time: dum dīcat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dīcat,* which is also often used after *exspecto. Antĕquam dīcam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dīcam:* I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.

2. With other Conjunctions.—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscĕret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

522. Dum, Donec, and Quoad take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact:*

Dum lēges vĭgēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rĕnuntiātum est, *until it was* (actually) *announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired* or *proposed:*

Differant, dum dēfervescat īra, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools*, i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. Donec, in Tacitus, generally takes the Subjunctive:

Rhēnus servat viŏlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceăno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. Donec, in Livy, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause:*

Nihil trĕpĭdābant dōnec ponte ăgĕrentur, *They did not fear at all while* (and because) *they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

523. Antequam and Priusquam generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antĕquam in Sĭcĭliam vĕni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In *any Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose* or *cause* is involved:

Priusquam incĭpias, consulto ŏpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation*, i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas mĭnātur, antĕquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises*, i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction *in narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antĕquam urbem căpĕrent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audīre pŏtuissent, in Măcĕdŏniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

3. *Prīdie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam.*

1) Indicative or Subjunctive.—With *antĕquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommŏdis dīco, pauca dīcenda, *Before I* (actually) *speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antĕquam de re pūblĭca dīcam, expōnam consilium, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) Ante—quam, Prius—quam.—The two parts of which *antĕquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diĕbus, quam Syrācūsae cāpĕrentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Tmesis*, 704. IV. 8.

VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fĕrat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaerĭtur, cur doctissĭmi hŏmĭnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesiĕras, nonne pŭtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. With Interrogatives.—*Indirect* or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *si*, *sīve*, *seu*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. Substantive Force.—*Indirect* questions are used *substantively*, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuĕrit, *I do not know* (him), *who he was.* Ter.

3. Direct and Indirect.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fĕret*, What will a day bring forth? So in the second: *Cur doctissĭmi hŏmĭnes dissentiunt*, Why do the most learned men disagree?

4. Subjunctive Omitted.—After *nescio quis*, I know not who = *quĭdam*, some one; *nescio quōmŏdo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ănĭmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what* (it forebodes, *praesāgiat*, understood). Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much*, i. e., it wonderfully profited. Liv.

5. INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses.*—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used:

Dīcam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which* (id quod) *I think.* Cic. Dīcam quid intellĭgam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.* Cic. Quaerāmus ŭbi mălĕfĭcium est, *Let us seek there* (Ibi) *where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ŭbi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ĭbi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ŭbi;* but in the second example, *quid intellĭgam* is an indirect question and the object of *dīcam: I will tell* (what?) *what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) From Direct Questions and Exclamations:

Quid ăgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic. Vīde! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence:*

Si mĕmŏrāre vĕlim, quam fĭdēli ănĭmo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA. See 530. II. 2.

526. SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne, nonne, num.* Here *num* does not imply negation:

Rŏgĭtat qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epămĭnondas quaesīvit, salvusne esset clĭpeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dŭbĭto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions:

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second:

Quaerĭtur, virtus suamne propter dignĭtātem, an propter fructus ălĭquos expĕtātur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare:

Quaerĭtur, nātūra an doctrīna possit effĭci virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *necne*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*:

Săpientia beātos eff ĭciat necne, quaestio est, *Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question.* Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dŭbĭto an*, *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dŭbium est an*, *incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dŭbĭto an Thrăsybūlum primum omnium pōnam, *I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all*, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Simōnides an quis ălius, *Simonides or some other one.* Cic.

VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vĕreor, ne, dum mĭnuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic. Tempus est hujusmŏdi, ut, ŭbi quisque sit, ĭbi esse mĭnĭme vĕlit, *The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. Mos est, ut dīcat sententiam, qui vĕlit, *The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. Application.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. Indicative or Subjunctive.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Mīlĭtes mīsit, ut eos qui fŭgĕrant persĕquĕrentur, *He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled*, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. Tanta vis prŏbĭtātis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vīdĭmus, dīlĭgāmus, *Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

Fuĕre qui, dum dŭbĭtat Scaevīnus, hortārentur Pisōnem, *There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated.* Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. After Infinitive Clauses.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum:*

Nec bŏnĭtas esse pŏtest, si non per se expĕtātur, *Nor can goodness exist* (= it is not possible that), *if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Oblīqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,—

Oratio Oblīqua.

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua:*

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Itălĭam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dŏlōrem ferre mŏdĕrāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utĭlem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. Direct and Indirect.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua,* the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta.* Thus in the first example, *Plătōnem in Itălĭam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Plăto in Itălĭam vēnit.*

2. Quotation.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse:

Rex "duumvĭros" inquit "sĕcundum lēgem făcio," *The king said, "I appoint duumvirs according to law."* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Oblīqua:

Ad postŭlāta Caesăris respondit, cur vĕnīret (*direct:* cur vĕnis?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scrībit Lăbiēno cum lĕgiōne vĕniat (*direct:* cum lĕgiōne vĕni), *He writes to Labienus to come* (that he should come) *with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annŭlum quem hăbēret (*direct:* hăbeo) se sua mănu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

Note.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the Oratio Oblīqua is here inserted.

530. Moods in Principal Clauses.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood:

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551):

Dīcēbat ănĭmos esse dīvīnos (direct: *ănĭmi sunt dīvīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plătōnem Tărentum vēnisse rĕpĕrio (*Plăto Tărentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Căto mīrāri se (*mīror*) aiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. Verb Omitted.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose:

Pўthia praecēpit ut Miltiādem impĕrātōrem sūmĕrent; incepta prospĕra fūtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander,* (telling them) *that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. Rhetorical Questions.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions: thus *num possit,* can he? for *non pōtest,* he can not; *quid sit turpius,* what is more base? for *nihil est turpius,* nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person:

Respondit num mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be: Num mĕmŏriam dēpōnĕre possim?

3. Imperative Clauses with the Infinitive. See 551. II. 1.

531. Moods in Subordinate Clauses.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive:

Orābant, ut sĭbi auxĭlium ferret quod prĕmĕrentur (*direct:* nōbis auxĭlium fer, quod prĕmĭmur), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. Infinitive in Relative Clauses.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Oblīqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive:

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quĕrĕrētur: quem (= *et eum*) asservātum esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons: Te suspĭcor iisdem, quĭbus me ipsum, commŏvēri, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. Infinitive after certain Conjunctions.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia, quum, quamquam,* and some other conjunctions:

Dīcit, se moenībus inclūsos tĕnēre eos; quia per agros văgāri, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because* (otherwise) *they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. Indicative in Parenthetical Clauses.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative:

Rĕfĕrunt silvam esse, quae appellātur Băcēnis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. Indicative in Clauses not Parenthetical.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses:

Certior factus est ex ea parte vīci, quam Gallis concessĕrat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

532. Tenses.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications:

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative:

Caesar respondit, si obsĭdes sĭbi dentur, sēse pācem esse factūrum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitives in *rus esse* and *rus fuisse:*

Censes Pompēium laetātūrum fuisse, si scīret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known?* Cic. Clāmĭtābat, si ille ădesset, ventūros esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty,* etc. (475. 4).

3. Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), after Historical tenses, sometimes retain in their conditional clauses the Present or Perfect and sometimes change it to the Imperfect or Pluperfect, according to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480):

Respondit, si expĕrīri vĕlint, părātum esse, *He replied, if they wished to make the trial he was ready.* Caes. Lēgātos mittit, si Ita fēcisset, ămīcĭtiam fūtūram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense:

Agunt ut dīmĭcent; Ĭbi impĕrium fŏre, unde victōria fuĕrit, *They arrange that they shall fight; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārēbat regnātūrum, qui vīcisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect:*

Glōrĭātus est annŭlum se sua mănu confĕcisse (*direct:* annŭlum ego mea mănu confēci), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ĕgo* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then; nunc* to *tum; hic* to *illic*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the SPEAKER whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ĕgo, meus, noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu, tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *sui, suus, ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic, is, ille*.

2) That references to the REPORTER, or Author, are made by *ĕgo, meus*, etc.

3) That references to the PERSON ADDRESSED by the reporter are made by *tu, tuus*, etc.

Arĭovistus respondit nos esse ĭnīquos qui se interpellārēmus (*direct:* vos estis ĭnīqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the *Reporter*, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the *Speaker*, Ariovistus. In the second example under 528, *te* refers to the *Person Addressed*.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses:

I. The PRESENT has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Cătĭlīna, *Go, Catiline.* Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let:*

Ii consŭles appellantor, *They shall be called consuls*, or *let them be called consuls.* Cic. Quod dixĕro, făcītōte, *You shall do what I say* (shall have said). Ter.

1. Future for Present.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present:

Quŏniam supplĭcātio decrēta est, cĕlebrātōte illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. Present for Future.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future:

Ubi ăciem vīdĕris, tum ordĭnes dissĭpa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks.* Liv.

II. Use of the Imperative.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties:

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice.* Cic. Tu ne cēde mălis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Si quid in te peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. Circumlocutions.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common:

1) *Cūra ut, fac ut, fac,* each with the Subjunctive:

Cūra ut vĕnias, *See that you come.* Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, căve ne, căve,* with the Subjunctive:

Căve făcias, *Beware of doing it,* or *see that you do not do it.* Cic.

3) *Nōli, nōlīte,* with the Infinitive:

Nōli imĭtāri, *do not imitate.* Cic. See 538. 2.

2. Imperative Clause for Condition.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause:

Lăcesse; jam vĭdēbis fŭrentem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

3. Imperative Supplied.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied:

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487):

Sint beāti, *Let them be happy.* Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare.* Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future:

Quod optĭmum vĭdēbĭtur, făcies, *You will do* (for Imper. do) *what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action:

Rem pendĭtōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pĕtĭto; dăbĭtur, *Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc.:

Consŭles nēmĭni pārento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sălus pŏpŭli suprēma lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. Imperative in Prohibitions.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nĕque:*

Tu ne cēde mălis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hŏmĭnem mortuum in urbe ne sĕpĕlito, nēve ūrito, *Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive:

Nōlite pŭtāre (*for* ne pŭtāte), *do not think* (be unwilling to think). Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics:

I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.
II. The Subject of the Infinitive.
III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.
IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. Tenses of the Infinitive.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. Peculiarities.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The Present Infinitive represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Cŭpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild.* Cic. Mălŭit se dīlĭgi quam mĕtui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared.* Nep.

1. Real Time.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. Present for Future.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time:

Cras argentum dăre dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow.* Ter.

3. Present with Debeo, Possum, etc.—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *ŏportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *mĕmĭni*, and the like:

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive.* Cic. Id pŏtuit fĭĕri, *He might have done this.* Cic.

542. The Perfect Infinitive represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Plătōnem fĕrunt in Ităliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Conscius mihi ĕram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me.* Cic.

1. Real Time.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. Perfect for Present.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose:

Tĕtĭgisse tĭmont pŏctam, *They fear to touch* (to have touched) *the poet.* Hor.

3. Passive Infinitive.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the *result* of the action: *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the *completeness* of the action: *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The Future Infinitive represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Brūtum vīsum īri a me pŭto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic. Orācŭlum dătum ĕrat victrīces Athēnas fŏre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. Circumlocution for Future Infinitive.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fūtūrum esse ut*, or *fōre ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spēro fōre ut contingat id nōbis, *I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). Cic. Non spērāvĕrat Hannĭbal, fōre ut ad se dēfĭcĕrent, *Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv. See 556. II. 1.

1. Circumlocution necessary.—*Fūtūrum esse ut*, or *fōre ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. Fore ut with Perfect Subjunctive.—Sometimes *fōre ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *fōre* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dico me sātis ădeptum fōre, *I say that I shall have obtained enough.* Cic.

3. Futurum fuisse ut with Subjunctive.—*Fūtūrum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nisi nuntii essent allāti, existimābant fūtūrum fuisse, ut oppĭdum āmittĕrētur, *They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought.* Caes. See 533. 2.

II. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentīmus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Plătōnem Tărentum vēnisse rĕpĕrio, *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

1. Historical Infinitive.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjĭcĕre, *The enemy hurled their javelins.* Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coepērunt;* but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. Subject Omitted.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna nĕgōtia vŏlunt ăgĕre, *They wish to accomplish great undertakings.* Cic. Peccāre licet nēmĭni, *It is not lawful for any one to sin.* Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general:

Dīlĭgi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5):

Audīvi sōlĭtum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic. Spērāmus nōbis prōfŭtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3):

Ego me Phīdiam esse mallem, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādĭtum est, Hŏmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jŭgurtha omnĭbus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative:

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sīne virtūte nēmo pōtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending,* and the like—dēbeo, possum, audeo, sŏleo, cŭpio, vŏlo, mālo, nōlo, incĭpio, pergo, dēsĭno, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming,* and the like—dīcor, trādor, fĕror—crēdor, existĭmor, pŭtor—rĕpĕrior—vĭdeor, etc.:

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Părens dīci pōtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stoĭcus esse vŏluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Dēsĭnant esse tĭmĭdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. Inventor esse dīcĭtur, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prūdens esse pŭtābātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted:

Pollĭcĭtus esse dĭcĭtur, *He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject:

Patrĭcio trĭbūno plēbis fĭĕri non lĭcēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi neglĭgenti esse non licuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *necesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections:

Illis timidis licet esse, nōbis nĕcesse est fortibus viris esse, *It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *Licet* the attraction does not always take place:

Ei consŭlem fĭĕri licet, *It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

IV. Construction of the Infinitive.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.
II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.
III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III.:

With Subject.—Făcĭnus est vinclri cĭvem Rōmānum, *That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum est lĭbĕros āmāri, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Lĕgem brĕvem esse ŏportet, *It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

Without Subject.—Ars est difficĭlis rem publĭcam rĕgĕre, *To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Cārum esse jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scire jŭvat, *To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccāre licet nēmĭni, *To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. Infinitive as Subject.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = tempestīvum is thus used with the Infinitive:

Tempus est dĭcĕre, *It is time to speak.* Cic.

2. Infinitive as Subject of an Infinitive.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive:

Intellĭgi nĕcesse est esse deos, *It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *nĕcesse est*.

3. Infinitive with Demonstrative.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it:

Quĭbusdam hoc displĭcet phĭlŏsŏphāri, *This philosophizing* (this to philosophize) *displeases some persons.* Cic. Vivĕre ipsum turpe est nōbis, *To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. Personal construction for Impersonal.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb:

Aristīdes justissĭmus fuisse trādĭtur (for *Aristīdem justissĭmum fuisse tradĭtur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *vĭdeor, jŭbeor, vĕtor,* and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dĭcor, trādor, fĕror, perhĭbeor, pŭtor, existĭmor,* etc., also with *coeptus sum* and *dēsĭtus sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of *saying, showing, perceiving, finding,* and the like.

Sōlem e mundo tollĕre vĭdentur, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. Plātōnem audīvisse dĭcĭtur, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. Dii beāti esse intellĭguntur, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Vĭdeor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy, think: mihi vĭdeor* or *vĭdeor,* I fancy; *ut vidēmur,* as we fancy.

II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dĭcunt esse săpientem, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. Haec vītāre cŭpĭmus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Mănēre dēcrēvit, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. Infinitive with Subject Accusative.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Dēclārandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

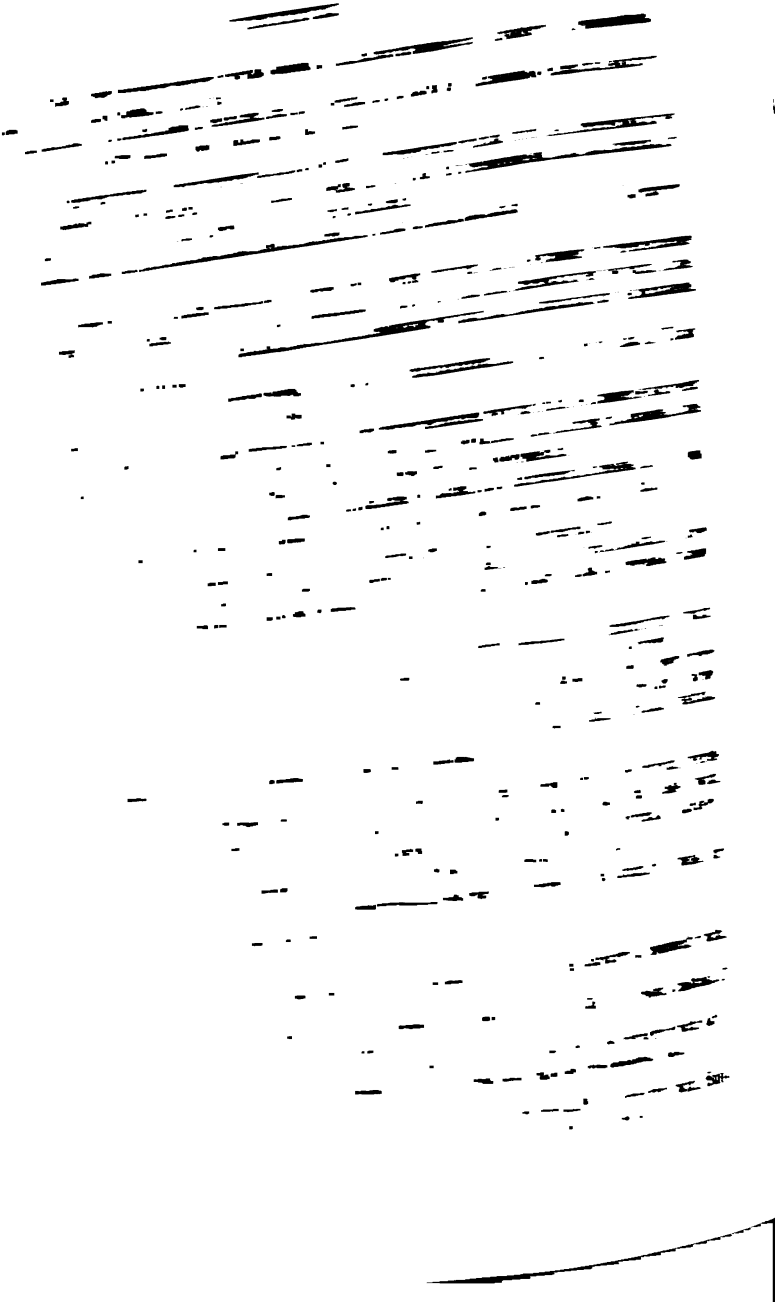
III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring.—Sentīmus călĕre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. Mihi narrāvit te sollĭcĭtum esse, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. Scripsērunt Thĕmistŏclem in Asiam transisse, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. Verba Sentiendi.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio, vĭdeo, sentio,* etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cōgĭto, pŭto, existĭmo, crēdo, spĕro,—intellĭgo, scio,* etc.

2. Verba Declarandi.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dĭco, narro, nuntio, dŏceo, ostendo, prōmitto,* etc.

3. Expressions with the Force of Verbs.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:



Gaudeo, te mihi suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mīrāmur, te laetāri, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, dŏleo, mīror, quĕror,* and the like; also *aegre fĕro, grāvĭter fĕro,* etc.

552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincĕre scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Crēdŭli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vītāre cŭpĭmus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Sŏlent cōgĭtāre, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nēmo mortem effŭgĕre pŏtest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying *to dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise,* etc., also *to be able, be accustomed, be wont,* etc.

2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.—With a few verbs—*dŏceo, cōgo, assuefăcio, arguo,* etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te săpĕre dŏcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nātiōnes pārēre assuefēcit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:
Num sum Graece lŏqui dŏcendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est părātus (*vult*) audīre, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic.
Pēlīdes cēdĕre nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avīdi committĕre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.
This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum intĕrest inter dăre et accĭpĕre, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: sĭbi nullam cum his ămīcĭtiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vīvĕre est cōgĭtāre, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sĭbi—amīcĭtiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit,* according to Rule I. *Cōgĭtāre* is in the same construction after *est.*

II. As Appositive; see 363:

Orăcŭlum dătum ĕrat victrices Athēnas fŏre, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sŏlĕo mirāri non me accĭpĕre tuas littĕras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. With Subject.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. Explanation.—In the examples, the clause *victrices Athēnas fŏre* is in apposition with *ōrăcŭlum*, and the clause *non me accĭpĕre tuas littĕras*, in apposition with *illud*.

III. In Exclamations; see 381:

Te *sic* vexāri, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mĕne incepto dēsistĕre victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. With Subject.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. Explanation.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dŏleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdĭbile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve* (dŏleo) *that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed* (crēdendum est) *that I vanquished*, etc.

3. Impassioned Questions.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose:

Pĕcus ĕgit altos vīsĕre montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pŏpŭlāre pĕnātes vēnĭmus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms:

I. Indirect Questions.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character:

Quaerĭtur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid ăgendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antĕcellĕre contĭgit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened). Cic. Magna nĕgōtia vŏluit ăgĕre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.* Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contĭgit ut patriam vindĭcāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Vŏlo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindĭcāret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bĕnĕfĭcium est quod nĕcesse est mŏri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that* (because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agămemnŏnem aemŭlāri pŭtas, fallĕris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod:*

Me poenitet vixisse, *I regret that I have lived.* Cic. Quod te offendi me poenitet, *I regret that* (or because) *I have offended you.* Cic.

1. Substantive Predicates with Subjunctive.—Mos est, mōris est, consuētūdo est, consuētūdinis est, *It is a custom*, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Mos est hōminum ut nōlint, *It is a custom of men that they are not willing.* Cic.

2. Adjective Predicates with Subjunctive.—Rēliquum est, proximum est, extrēmum est—vērum est, vērisimile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mīrum est, optimum est, etc., admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Rēliquum est ut certēmus, *it remains that we contend.* Cic. Vērum est ut bōnos diligant, *It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—accĭdit, contingit, ēvĕnit, fit—*ut*, *ut non*, with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrăsybūlo contĭgit, ut patriam vindĭcāret, *It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus* (happened to him) *to deliver his country.* Nep.

1. Here belong *accēdit ut, est ut, fŭtūrum esse ut*, or *fĭeri ut.* See 544.
2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant*, and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rēlinquĭtur, ut quiescāmus, *It remains that we should submit.* Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. Forms of Object Clauses.

557. Interrogative.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. Not Interrogative.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod.* Thus,

I. Verbs of declaring take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a *command:*

Dŏlābellae dixit, ut ad me scrīběret ut in Ităliam vĕnīrem, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stătuo*, *constĭtuo*, *dĕcerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mănēre dĕcrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stătuērunt, ut lĭbertātem dēfendĕrent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constĭtuĕrat, ut trĭbūnus quĕrērētur, *He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sĕnātus dĕcrēvit, dărent ŏpĕram consŭles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Stătuo, *dĕcerno*, etc., when they mean *to think*, *deem*, *suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the Infinitive:

Laudem săpientiae stătuo esse maximam, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo*, *nītor*, *stŭdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lŏcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dīcĕre, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—Făcio, effĭcio, perfĭcio—ădĭpiscor, impetro—assĕquor, consĕquor, and sometimes fĕro, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—*Făcio* in the sense of *assume*, *suppose*, takes the Infinitive; *efficio* in the sense of *prove*, *show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ănĭmos non rĕmănēre post mortem, *Assume that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult effĭcĕre anĭmos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that* (or because) *I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dŏlēbam quod sŏcium ămīsĕram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

FOR VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hŏmĭnes mĭsĕros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postŭlant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: ōro, rŏgo, pĕto, prĕcor, obsĕcro—flāgito, postŭlo, praecipio—hortor, mŏneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incĭto, mŏveo, commŏveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declārandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mŏneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mŏneo*, and *postŭlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postŭlat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vīvendi cŭpĭdĭtāte incensi sŭmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtĭlis scrĭbendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad ăgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In ăgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vŏcandi sĕnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fĕrendo laudem mĕrēbĕris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive:*

Inīta sunt consĭlia urbis dēlendae = urbem dēlendi, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Nŭma sācerdōtĭbus creandis ănĭmum adjēcit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inīta sunt consĭlia urbem dēlendi*, in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consĭlia*, and *urbem* by *dēlendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consĭlia*.

2) *Dēlendi*, the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pŏtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty.* Cic. Spes pŏtiundōrum castrōrum, *the hope of getting possession of the camp.* Caes.

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nĕque hăbent propriam percĭpiendi nŏtam, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—Ars vīvendi, *the art of living.* Cic. Stŭdiōsus ĕrat audiendi, *He was desirous of hearing.* Nep. Jus vŏcandi sĕnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Cŭpĭdus te audiendi, *desirous of hearing you.* Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—Lĭbīdo ejus vīdendi, *the desire of seeing him.* Cic. Plătōnis stŭdiōsus audiendi fuit, *He was fond of hearing Plato.* Cic.

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With ars, scientia, consuētūdo,—cupīdĭtas, lĭbīdo, stŭdium, consĭlium, vŏluntas, spes,—pŏtestas, făcultas, difficultas, occāsio, tempus,—gĕnus, mŏdus, rătio,—causa, grātia, etc.

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their *opposites:* āvĭdus, cupĭdus, stŭdiōsus—conscius, gnārus, ignārus—pĕrĭtus, impĕrĭtus, insuētus, etc.

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vēra ac falsa dijūdĭcandi, *the art of distinguishing true things from the false.* Cic.

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejĭciendi jūdĭcum pŏtestas, *the power of challenging* (of) *the judges.* Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *jūdĭcum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri*, etc. See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH MEI, NOSTRI, ETC.—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Cōpia plăcandi tui (*of a woman*), *an opportunity of appeasing you.* Ov. Sui conservandi causa, *for the purpose of preserving themselves.* Cic. Vestri adhortandi causa, *for the purpose of exhorting you.* Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum*, etc., hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec trădendae Hannĭbăli victōriae sunt, *These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal.* Liv. Lēges pellendi clāros vīros, *laws for driving away illustrious men.* Tac. Prōfĭcisĭtur cognoscendae antĭquĭtātis, *He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity.* Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *lēges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (398, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cŭpīdo Stўgios innāre lăcus, *the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes.* Virg. Avĭdus committĕre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

II. Dative of Gerunds and Gerundives.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

Gerund.—Quum solvendo non essent, *Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. Aqua ūtilis est bĭbendo, *Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

Gerundive.—Lŏcum oppĭdo condendo cēpērunt, *They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. Tempŏra dēmētendis fructĭbus accommŏdāta, *seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. Gerund.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. Gerundive of Purpose.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

Firmandae vălētūdĭni in Campānĭam concessit, *He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac.

3. Gerundive with Official Names.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dĕcemvĭri, triumvĭri, comĭtia:*

Dĕcemvĭros lēgĭbus scrībendis creāvĭmus, *We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. Accusative of Gerunds and Gerundives.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

Gerund.—Ad discendum prōpensi sŭmus, *We are inclined to learn* (to learning). Cic. Inter lūdendum, *in* or *during play.* Quint.

Gerundive.—Ad cŏlendos agros, *for cultivating the fields.* Cic. Ante condendam urbem, *before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. Prepositions.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after **ad**; sometimes after **inter** and **ob**; very rarely after **ante, circa,** and **in.**

2. With Object.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

Ad plācandum deos pertĭnet, *It tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

3. Purpose.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking,* etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with **ad,** or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun:

Ad ĭmĭtandum mihi prōpŏsĭtum exemplar illud, *That model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic. Attrĭbuit Itălĭam vastandam (for *ad vastandum*) Cătĭlĭnae, *He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage* (to be ravaged). Cic.

IV. Ablative of Gerunds or Gerundives.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

Gerund.—Mens discendo ălĭtur, *The mind is nourished by learning.* Cic. Sălūtem hŏmĭnĭbŭs dando, *by giving safety to men.* Cic.

Gerundive.—Lĕgendis ōrātōrĭbus, *by reading the orators.* Cic.

II. With Prepositions:

Gerund.—Virtūtes cernuntur in ăgendo, *Virtues are seen in action.* Cic. Dēterrēre a scrĭbendo, *to deter from writing.* Cic.

Gerundive.—Brūtus in lĭbĕranda patria est interfectus, *Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

1. Prepositions.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after **in**; sometimes after **a** (ab), **de**, **ex** (e); very rarely after **cum** and **pro**.

2. With Object.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In trĭbuendo suum cuique, *in giving every one his own.* Cic.

3. Without a Preposition, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc.:

Incĭpiendo rĕfūgi, *I drew back in the very beginning.* Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in Um.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express purpose:

Lēgāti vēnērunt res rĕpĕtĭtum, *Deputies came to demand restitution.* Liv. Ad Caesărem congrātŭlātum convēnērunt, *They came to Caesar to congratulate him.* Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Filiam Agrippae nuptum dĕdit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally:

Bŏnos omnes perditum *eunt*, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb:

Ultum ire, (= ulcisci) injūrias festīnat, *He hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (241. III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive:

Brūtum visum iri a me pŭto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions:

1) By *ut* or *qui with the Subjunctive.* See 489.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives.* See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles.* See 578. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)? Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jūcundus, optĭmus—fūcilis, prōclīvis, difficilis—incrēdĭbilis, mĕmŏrābilis—hŏnestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—ŏpus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are: *audītu, cognĭtu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions:

1) By *ad with the Gerund:* Verba ad audiendum jūcunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the *Infinitive:* Făcile est vincĕre, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By *a Finite Mood with an adverb:* Non fācile dijūdĭcātur ămor fictus, *Pretended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. Tenses of Participles.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

Peculiarities.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. Present Participle.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Oculus se non vĭdens ălia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things.* Cic. Plăto scrĭbens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic.

573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Săpiens bŏna semper plăcĭtūra laudat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet.* Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 580.

2. For the Participle with *hăbeo*, see 388. 1. 2).

II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns:

Animus se non vĭdens ălia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things.* Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta ĕpistŏla*, a written letter; *mortui*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum: occŭpāti ĕrant*, they *were* occupied; as a verb, *had been* occupied.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause:

Omnes ăliud ăgentes, ăliud sĭmŭlantes improbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. For other Subordinate Clauses.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time:

Plăto scrĭbens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itūri in proelium cănunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means:

Sol ŏriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Mīlĭtes rĕnuntiant, se perfĭdiam vĕrĭtos rĕvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy* (having feared). Caes.

III. Condition:

Mendăci hŏmĭni ne vērum quĭdem dĭcenti crēdĕre non sŏlēmus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rĕluctante nātūra, irrĭtus lăbor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession:

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tămen flāgĭtāre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose:

Perseus rĕdiit, belli cāsum tentātūrus, *Perseus returned to try* (about to try) *the fortune of war.* Liv. Attrĭbuit nos trŭcĭdandos Cĕthēgo, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. Participle for Principal Clause.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but:*

Classem dēvictam cēpit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vŏcābŭlis differēbant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. Participle for Verbal Noun.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of:*

In ămīcis ēlĭgendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hŏmērus fuit ante Rōmam condĭtam, *Homer lived* (was) *before the founding of Rome* (before Rome founded). Cic.

581. Participle with Negative.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without*:

Mĭsĕrum est, nihil prōfĭcientem angi, *It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything.* Cic. Non ērŭbescens, *without blushing.* Cic.

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Săpientes fēlĭcĭter vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic. Făcīle doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Haud ălĭter, *not otherwise.* Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns:

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles:

Mĭnĭmē largĭtor dux, *a leader by no means liberal.* Liv. Pŏpŭlus lāte rex, *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied:

Mărius, plāne vir, *Marius, truly a man.* Cic. Omnes circa pŏpŭli, *all the surrounding peoples.* Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are: *non*, *ne*, *haud*.

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs; *haud mīrābĭle*, not wonderful; *haud ălĭter*, not otherwise. *Nī* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vĭde* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *non mŏdo non* and in *non sōlum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vērum*, followed by *ne—quĭdem* or *vix* (rarely *ētiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first:

Assentātio non mŏdo ămīco, sed ne lĭbĕro quĭdem digna est. *Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man.* Cic.

3. *Mĭnus* often has nearly the force of *non*; sī mĭnus = sī non. *Sīn ălĭter* has nearly the same force as *sī mĭnus*.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

Nihil non arrŏget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Nĕque hoc Zēno non vīdet, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

Nonnēmo, *some one;* nonnihil, *something;* nonnunquam, *sometimes.*
Nēmo non, *every one;* nihil non, *every thing;* nunquam non, *always.*

2. After a general negative, *ne—quĭdem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nĕque—nĕque, nĕve—nĕve,* and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

Non practĕreundum est ne id quĭdem, *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nēmo unquam nĕque poēta nĕque ōrātor fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ĭta* mean *so, thus. Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic,* as in *ĭta—si* (503. 4). *Adeo,* to such a degree or result; *tam, tantŏpĕre,* so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantŏpĕre* before verbs.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes:

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union:

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec ĕrat diffĭcĭle, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. List. See 310. 1.

2. Difference in Force.—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence; *ac,* abbreviated from *atque,* has generally the force of *et. Nĕque* and *nec* have the force of *et non. Et* and *ĕtiam* sometimes mean *even.*

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness; sĭmĭlis, dissĭmĭlis, sĭmĭlĭter, par, părĭter, aeque, ălius, ălĭter, sĕcus: *aeque ac,* equally as; *ălĭter atque,* otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. Que, ac, atque.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants; *atque,* either before vowels or consonants.

4. Etiam, quoque, adeo, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac,* and *que,* and sometimes even supply their place. *Quŏque* follows the word which it connects: *is quŏque,* he also. *Etiam,* also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quŏque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. Correlatives.—Sometimes two copulatives are used: et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, *both—and;* but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause; non sōlum (non mŏdo, *or* non tantum)—sed ĕtiam (vērum ĕtiam), *not only—but also;* nĕque (nec)—nĕque (nec), *neither—nor;* nĕque (nec)—et (que), *not—but* (and); et—nĕque (nec), (*both*)—*and not.*

6. Omitted.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiăque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation:

. Aut vestra aut sua culpa, *either your fault, or his own.* Liv. Duōbus trĭbusve hōris, *in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 2.

2. Aut, vel, ve.—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut vērum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pŏtius, ētiam* or *dicam: laudātur vel ētiam dmātur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example. Vĕlut* often means *for example. Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non hŏnor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. Sive (*si—ve*) does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast:

Cŭpio me esse clēmentum, sed me inertiae condemno, *I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 3.

2. Difference in Force.—*Sed* and *vērum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vēro* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *cētĕrum*, but still, as to the rest; *tămen*, yet.

3. Compounds of tamen are: *attămen, sedtămen, vērumtămen*, but yet.

4. Autem and vero follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vēro*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is *followed* by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference:

In umbra ĭgĭtur pugnābĭmus, *We shall therefore fight in the shade.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 4.

2. Other Words.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: eo, ideo, idcirco, proptĕrea, quamobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōcirca.

3. Igitur.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic ĭgĭtur*, this one therefore. After a digression *ĭgĭtur, sed, sed tămen, vērum, vērum tămen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say: Sed si quis;* if any one, I say.

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause:

Difficĭle est consĭlium: sum ĕnim sōlus, *Counsel is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic. Etĕnim jus ămant, *For they love the right.* Cic.

1. List. See 310. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *ĕnim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time:

Pāruit quum nĕcesse ĕrat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ŏgo in Sĭcĭlia sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also 311. 1; 521–523.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet; nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison:

Ut optasti, ĭta est, *It is as you desired.* Cic. Vĕlut si ădesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also 311. 2; 503, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as;* tam—quam quod maxĭme, *as much as possible;* non minus—quam, *not less than;* non măgis—quam, *not more than.*

Tam—quam and *ut—ĭta* with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative: *ut maxĭme—ĭta maxĭme*, the more—the more.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. NIsi est concĭlium dŏmi, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also 311. 3; 508. 507.

1. *Nĭsi*, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and *nĭsi quod*, except that, may be used even in affirmative sentences. *Nĭsi* may mean *than*. *Nihil dĭud nĭsi* = nothing further (more, except); *nihil dĭud quam* = nothing else (other than).

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession:

Quamquam intellĭgunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsi nihil hăbeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also 311. 4; 515. 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose:

Esse ŏportet, ut vīvas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also 311. 5; 489–499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result:

Attĭcus ĭta vixit, ut Athēniensĭbus esset cārissĭmus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also 311. 6; 489–499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause:

Quae quum ĭta sint, *Since these things are so.* Cic. See also 311. 7; 517. 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question:

Quaesĭĕras, nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also 311. 8; 346. II., 525, 526.

IV. Interjections.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *eheu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (*peace*), *be still!* mĭsĕrum, mĭsĕrābĭle, *sad, lamentable!* ōro, *pray!* ăge, ăgīte, *come, well!* mehercŭles, *by Hercules!* per deum fĭdem, *in the name of the gods!* sōdes = si audes (*for* audies), *if you will hear!*

CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

Agreement.

I. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in case (362):

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

II. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in case (363):

Cluilius rex mŏrĭtur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv.

Nominative.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

Servius regnāvit, *Servius reigned.* Liv.

Vocative.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

Accusative.

V. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hămilcărem imperātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rŏgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rĕdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Căpĭta vēlāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nūbe hŭmĕros ămictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me mĭsĕrum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

Dative.

XII. The Indirect Object is put in the Dative (384):

Tempŏri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).
Dative with Compounds (386).
Dative of Possessor (387).
Dative of Apparent Agent (388).
Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Mălo est hŏmĭnĭbus ăvārĭtia, *Avarice is* (for) *an evil to men.* Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnĭbus cārum est, *It is dear to all.* Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtempĕrātio lēgĭbus, *obedience to the laws.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae, *agreeably to nature.* Cic.

GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium ĕrant, *All things belonged to* (were of) *the enemy.* Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With **mĭsĕrĕor** and **mĭsĕrescо**:

Mĭsĕrĕre lābōrum, *pity the labors.* Virg.

II. With **rĕcordor, mĕmĭni, rĕmĭniscor,** and **oblīviscor**:

Mĕmĭnit praetĕrītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic.

III. With **rĕfert** and **intĕrest**:

Intĕrest omnĭum, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing:*

Te ămīcĭtiae commŏnĕfăcit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting:*

Vīros scĕlĕris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

III. *Mĭsĕret, Poenĭtet, Pŭdet, Taedet,* and *Piget:*

Eōrum nos mĭsĕret, *We pity them.* Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

Ablative.

XXI. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilĭtāte laudātur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

XXII. Price is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendĭdit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without quam are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est ămābĭlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

XXIV. The Measure of Difference is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With **ūtor, fruor, fungor, pŏtior, vescor,** and their compounds:

Plūrĭmis rēbus fruĭmur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With **fīdo, confīdo, nītor, innītor:**

Sălus vērĭtāte nītĭtur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With Verbs and Adjectives of Plenty and Want:

Non ĕgeo mĕdĭcīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus, indignus, contentus,** and **frētus:**

Digni sunt ămīcĭtia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With **ŏpus** and **ūsus:**

Auctōrĭtāte tua nōbis ŏpus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

XXVI. I. The place in which and the place from which are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. Names of Towns drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the place in which by the Genitive (421):

In Ităl**ia** fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Afrĭca, *from Africa.* Liv. Athēn**is** fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

XXVII. Source and Separation are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Sābīnis, *descended from the Sabines.* Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you.* Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsĭmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte ădŏlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmĭne, non pŏtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power.* Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad ămīcum, *to a friend.* Cic. In Itălia, *in Italy.* Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Ănĭmal, quod sanguĭnem hăbet, *an animal which has blood.* Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings.* Cic.

Indicative Mood.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

Subjunctive Tenses.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesiĕras nonne pŭtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

Subjunctive Mood.

XXXVIII. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsĭtan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Văleant cīves, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used (489),

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmĭnus:**

Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With **qui = ut is, ut ĕgo, tu,** etc.:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consŭlĕrent Apollĭnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The Subjunctive of Condition is used (503),

I. With **dum, mŏdo, dummŏdo:**

Mŏdo permăneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quăsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si:**

Vĕlut si ădesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nĭsi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis:**

Si vĕlim nŭmĕrāre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The Subjunctive of Concession is used (515),

I. With **lĭcet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum,** although:

Lĭcet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (lĭcet) **is, quum ĕgo,** etc., though he:

Absolvīte Verrem, qui (*quum is*) fāteātur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi, tămetsi, ĕtiamsi:**

Etsi optĭmum sit, *even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

XLIII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui** = **quum is,** etc.

Quum vīta mĕtus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod, quia, quŏniam, quando,** to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpĕret jŭventūtem, *because* (on the ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

XLIV. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or PURPOSE is used (521),

I. With **dum, dōnec, quoad,** until:

Exspectas, dum dīcat, *You are waiting till he speaks,* i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antĕquam, priusquam,** before:

Antĕquam de re pūblĭca dīcam, *before I* (can) *speak of the republic.* Cic.

XLV. The Subjunctive is used in INDIRECT QUESTIONS (525):

Quid dies fĕrat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

XLVI. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive (527):

Vĕreor, ne, dum mĭnuĕre vĕlim lăbōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

XLVII. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Obliqua (529):

Respondit, cur vĕnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scrībit Lăbiēno vĕniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

IMPERATIVE.

XLVIII. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Justĭtiam cŏle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

Infinitive.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentīmus călēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vēnērunt res rĕpĕtītum, *They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Săpientes fēlĭcĭter vīvunt, *The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.
2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.
3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. General Rules.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol ŏriens diem conflcit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anĭmus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiădes Athēnas lĭbĕrāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

I. Beginning.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Sĭlent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. *Numĭtōri* Rĕmus dēdĭtur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. *Igni* ăger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. End.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sătisfăcit ipse *Dēmosthĕnes, Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consŭlātum pĕtīvit *nunquam, He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quaestio *subdifficĭlis, There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. Separation.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incĭdunt *nĕcessārias, Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justĭtiae fungātur offĭciis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. Contrasted Groups.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Frăgĭle corpus ănĭmus sempĭternus mŏvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. Kindred Words.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sĕnem sĕnex de sĕnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se ălĭis ălii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both:

Pācis et artes et glōria, *both the arts and the glory of peace.* Liv. Belli pācisque artes, *the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter:

Haec percunctātio ac dēnuntiātio belli, *this inquiry and this declaration of war.* Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction:

Hŏnōris certāmen et glōriae, *a struggle for honor and glory.* Cic. Agri omnes et māria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns:

Pŏpŭlus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, *The Roman people decreed.* Cic. Hērŏdŏtus, păter histŏriae, *Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. Liber de offĭciis, *the book on duties.* Cic.

1. NOUN.—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. WITH EMPHASIS.—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns:

Tuscus ăger Rōmāno adjăcet, *The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman.* Liv. *Cātōnis* ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun:*

Magna cīvium pēnūria, *a great scarcity of citizens.* Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it:

Făcīle doctissĭmus, *unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. Omni aetāti commūnis, *common to every age.* Cic. Avĭdus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it:

Glōria virtūtem sĕquĭtur, *Glory follows virtue.* Cic. Mundus deo pāret, *The world is subject to God.* Cic. Vehĕmenter dixit, *He spoke vehemently.* Cic. Glōria dūcĭtur, *He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. After the Verb.—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. Emphasis.—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Făcillĭme cognoscuntur ădŏlescentes, *Most easily are the young men recognized.* Cic.

3. Two or more Modifiers.—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scȳthis bellum intŭlit, *The king waged war against the Scythians.* Nep. Mors propter brĕvĭtātem vītae nunquam longe ăbest, *Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

601. Modifiers of Adverbs.—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehĕmenter dixit, *He spoke very vehemently.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae vīvit, *He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. Special Words.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custos hujus urbis, *the guardian of this city.* Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Mēdēa illa, *that well-known Medea.* Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Justitia suum cuique tribuit, *Justice gives to every man his due* (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tĕnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Collo tĕnus, *up to the neck.* Ov.

1. After a Pronoun.—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Res qua de āgitur, *the subject of which we are treating.* Cic. Itāliam contrā, *over against Italy.* Virg.

2. Cum Appended.—See 184. 6 and 187. 2.

3. Intervening Words.—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *ōro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, *after the death of Alexander the Great.* Cic. Ad bĕne vīvendum, *for living well.* Cic. Per te deos ōro, *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. Per ĕgo vos deos = per deos ĕgo vos ōro (*ōro* understood). *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *ĕnim*, *quĭdem*, *quŏque*, *vĕro*, and generally *ĭgĭtur*, follow some other word;

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Ii qui sŭpĕriōres sunt, *those who are superior.* Cic. Ipse *autem* omnia vĭdēbat, *But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audīvit, *as he heard this.* Nep. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

2. NE—QUIDEM takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidis quidem, *not even in the towns.* Cic.

3. *Quĭdem* often follows *pronouns*, *superlatives*, and *ordinals:*

Ex me quĭdem nihil audiet, *He will hear nothing from me.* Cic.

4. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbemve*, for *advе*, etc., or to the people; *in fōrōque* = *inque fōro*, and in the forum. *Apŭd quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cărēre non possunt, *They are not able to do without this villa.* Cic. Non fuit Jūpĭter mĕtuendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dīcam, *Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus.* Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fĕrat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Exĭtus fuit ōrātiōnis: sĭbi nullam cum his ămīcĭtiam esse, *The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ŭbi primum nostros ĕquĭtes conspexērunt, cĕlĕrĭter nostros perturbāvērunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to rout.* Caes. Sententia, quae tūtissĭma vĭdēbātur, vīcit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescunt, prŏbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quālis sit ănĭmus, ănĭmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec cīvĭtas est, cīvis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui*, *tālis—quālis*, *tantus—quantus*, *tum—quum*, *ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, *quum*, *ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause:

Enītĭtur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol effĭcit ut omnia flŏreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo vĭdēbātur, ipse autem omnia vĭdēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.[1]

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG:

Haec, coena, aura; ālius *for* ăliius, cōgo *for* coĭgo, occīdo *for* occaedo, nīl *for* nihil.

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel: *praĕăcūtus*, *praĕustus*.

2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

[1] Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:[1]

Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ăb rūpe, pĕr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc, sp, sq,* and *st,* where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,[2] except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dŭplex, ăgri, pātres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tĕcmessa, cŏ̆cnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *ăb·rumpo, ŏb·rŏgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer, ācris.*

3. Compounds of *jŭgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bĭjŭgus, quadrĭjŭgus.*

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

Pĭus, pĭae, dŏcĕo, trăho.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āī* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius: Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia, ie, io, iu,* in the verb *aio.*

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *diēi;* and sometimes in *fīdēi, rēi, spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius: Pompēius*,—(3) in *dheu.*

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fio*, when not followed by *er*: *fīam, fīĕbam*, but *fĭĕri*,—(2) in the genitive *ālīus.* In other genitives *i* in *ius* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altĕrĭus* is short,—(3) in *dīus, a, um,* for *dīvus, a, um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna.*

4. **O**,—is common in *ŏhe.*

---

[1] Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

[2] *Qu, gu,* and *su,* when *u* has the sound of *w*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āer, Aenēas, Brīsēis, Mĕnĕlāus, Trōes.*

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa, ĭa, ĕus, ĭus, ăon, ĭon, āis, ōis, ŏius*: Mēdēa, Alexandrīa, Pūnĕus, Dārĭus, Orĭon.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

ā, dā, tē, sē, dē, sī, quī, dō, prō, tū, dōs, pēs, sīs, bōs, sūs, pār, sōl.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quĕ, vĕ, nĕ, cĕ, tĕ, psĕ, ptĕ.*

2. Monosyllables in **b, d, l, t**: *ăb, ăd, fĕl, mĕl, ĭt, ĕt*; except *sāl, sōl.*

3. *An, bis, cis, cŏr, ĕs, făc, fĕr, ĭn, ĭs, nĕc, ŏs* (ossis), *pĕr, tĕr, quă* (plur. indef.), *quis, vĭr*; probably also *vās* (vădis), and sometimes *hĭc* and *hŏc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a, e,** and **y** are short; **i** and **u,** long; **o,** common:

Viă, măriă, mărĕ, mĭsў; mărī, audī, fructū, cornū; ămŏ, sermŏ.

615. A *final* is short: *mensă, templă, bŏnă.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A final* is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā, bŏnā, illā.*

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenēā, Pallā.*

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *ămā, cūrā; circā, juxtā, antĕā, frustrā.* Except *ităă, quiă, ejă,* and *piătă* used adverbially.

616. E *final* is short: *servĕ, urbĕ, rēgĕ.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E final* is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ĕpĭtŏmē, rē, diē.* Hence in the compounds—*hŏdiē, prīdiē, postrīdiē, quārē.*

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē, mēlē.*

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mŏnĕ, dŏcē.* But *e* is sometimes short in *căvĕ.*

4. In *fĕrē, fermĕ, ohē,* and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *doctē, rectē.* Except *bĕnĕ, mălĕ, infernĕ, internĕ, sŭpernĕ.*

617. Y *final* is short: *mĭsў, mōlў, cŏtў.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mĭsў* = *mĭsyi.*

618. I *final* is long: *servī, bŏnī, audī.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I final* is,

1. COMMON in *mihĭ, tibĭ, sibĭ, ibĭ, ubĭ.* But

Observe compounds *ibidem, ibique, ubique, ubinam, ubivis, ubiunque, nĕcubi, sicubi.*

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nisi, quasi, cui* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *si* of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Troasi,*—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: Alexĭ, Părĭdĭ.

Uti follows the rule, but not the compounds, *utinam, utique, sicuti.*

619. U *final* is long: *fructū, cornū, dictū.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indŭ* for *in,* and *nĕnu* for *non.*

620. O *final* is common: *ămŏ, sermŏ, virgŏ.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *servō, illō, quō,*—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *Echō, Argō,*—(3) in Adverbs: *falsō, multō, ergō, quandō, omninō;* except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duŏ, ĕgŏ, octŏ,* and the adverbs *citŏ, illĭcŏ, immŏ, mŏdŏ,* and its compounds, *dummŏdŏ, quŏmŏdŏ,* etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **o** are long;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t,** are short:

ālĕc, illūc; illŭd, consŭl, ămĕm, carmĕn, ămŏr, căpŭt.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dŏnĕc* and *lĭcĕn.*

2. *M final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel. See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymēn, Anchisēn, Tītān, Delphīn, Actaeōn, Phorcȳn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aēr, aethēr, crātēr*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. RULE VII.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es,** and **os** are long; **is, us, ys,** short:

ămās, mensās, mŏnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; ăvĭs, urbĭs, bŏnŭs, servŭs, chlămўs.

623. **As** *final* is long: *Aeneās, bōnās, illās.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *ănăs* and in a few Greek nouns in **ăs**: *Arcăs, lampăs.*

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcădăs, hērōăs.*

624. **Es** *final* is long: *nūbēs, mŏnēs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mĭlĕs* (ĭtis), *obsĕs* (ĭdis), *interprĕs* (ĕtis). Except *ăbiĕs, ăriĕs, păriĕs, Cĕrĕs*, and compounds of *pĕs;* as *bĭpĕs, trĭpĕs*, etc.

2. In *pĕnĕs* and the compounds of *ĕs;* as *ădĕs, pŏtĕs.*

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcădĕs, Troădes*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippŏmĕnĕs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmosthĕnĕs.*

625. **Os** *final* is long: *custōs, vĭrōs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compŏs, impŏs, exŏs.*

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Dēlŏs, mĕlŏs.*

626. **Is** *final* is short: *ăvĭs, cănĭs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servīs, vōbīs.*

Hence *fŏrīs, grātīs, ingrātīs.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (ītis), *Sălămīs* (ĭnis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

Māvīs, quīvīs, ūtervīs follow the quantity of *vīs.*

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vĕlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *ămāvĕrīs, dŏcuĕrīs.*

627. **Us** *final* is short: *servŭs, bŏnŭs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pălūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur.: *fructūs.*

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, tripūs.*

But we have *Oedĭpŭs* and *pōlўpŭs.*

628. **Ys** *final* is short: *chlămўs, chĕlўs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnȳs* for *Erynnyes.*

II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus.*

Sermōnis, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *ămās, ămātis, ămābātis.*

Amātis has one increment, *amābātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third,* and *fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser-mon-i-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-u-e-ra-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra.*

I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y,** short:

aetas, aetātis, aetātĭbus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, pŭĕri, pŭĕrōrum;

fulgur, fulgŭris; chlămys, chlamўdis; bŏnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; mīser, miserī; supplex, supplĭcis; sātur, satŭri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. **A** in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābŭs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannĭbal, Hannibălis; Caesar, Caesăris.* Except *Car* and *Nar.*

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dăpis; Arabs, Arăbis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ăs**: *poēma, poēmătis; Pallas, Pallădis.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hĕpar, jŭbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ănas, mas, vas* (vădis),—(3) *sal, fax,* and a few rare Greek words in *ax.*

634. **O** in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters: *aequor, aequŏris; tempus, tempŏris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ădor* (adŏris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant; *ĭnops, inŏpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops.*

3. Of *arbor, bos, lĕpus,—compos, impos, mĕmor, immĕmor,—Allŏbrox, Cappădox, praecox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Măcĕdo, Macedŏnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhĕtor, Hector,*—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aĕdon, aedŏnis,*—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trĭpus* (ŏdis), *Oedĭpus.*

635. **E** in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puĕri; lĭber, libĕri.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fĭdĕi, rĕi,* and *spĕi;* as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sirēnis.* So *Anio, Aniēnis.*

3. Of *Celtĭber, Iber, ver,—hēres, lŏcŭples, merces, quies, inquies, rēquies, plebs,—lex, rex, ālec, ălex, vervex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aĕr* and *aether;* as *lēbes, lebētis; crātēr, cratēris.*

636. **I** in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, mīlĭtis, mīlĭtibus; anceps, ancĭpĭtis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radīcis; fēlix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendix, cdlix, Cilix, filix, fornix, nix, pix, sdlix, strix,* and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Quiris, Samnis.*
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending **ius**, see 612. 3.

637. **U** in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dŭcis; arcus, arcŭbus; sātur, satŭri.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in **us** with the genitive in **uris, utis, udis**: *jus, jūris; sălus, salūtis; pălus, palūdis.* Except *intercus, Ligus, pĕcus.*
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, plus, Pollux.*

638. **Y** in the increments of declension is short: *chlămys, chlamўdis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ynis*, and in a few others.

II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a, e**, and **o** are long; **i** and **u** short:

ămāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rĕgĭmus, sŭmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fĕro, vŏlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *ferīs, volīs*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fĕrēbam* and *vŏlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.
2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dĕdĭmus* has but one increment *dĭ*.

640. **A** in the increments of conjugation is long: *ămāre.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of **do**: *dăre, dăbam, circumdăbam.*

641. **E** in the increments of conjugation is long: *mŏnēre.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram, rim, ro**: *ămăvĕram, amavĕrim, amavĕro; rexĕrat, rexĕrit.*
2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rĕgĕre, regĕris, regĕrem, regĕrer.*
3. In the Fut. ending **bĕris, bĕre**: *ămābĕris*, or *-ĕre, mŏnēbĕris.*
4. Rarely in the Perf. ending **erunt**: *stĕtĕrunt* for *stetērunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. **O** in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mŏnētōte, rĕgĭtōte.*

643. **I** in the increments of conjugation is short: *rĕgĭtis, reximus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *īmus* of the Perf.: *audīre, audīvi, audītum; sentio, sentīmus, sensīmus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in **īvi** and **ītum** (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *īmus* of Perf.: *trīvīmus*): *cupīvi, cupīvĕrat, cupītus; pĕtīvi, petītus; căpessīvi, capessītūrus. Gāvīsus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings **īmus** and **ītis** of Pres. Subj.: *sīmus, sītis; vēlīmus, velītis* (289. 3).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolītōte*, and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings **rĭmus** and **rĭtis** of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *ămāvĕrĭmus, ămāvĕrĭtis.*

644. **U** in the increments of conjugation is short: *vŏlŭmus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vŏlūtum, volūtūrus, ămātūrus.*

III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

645. RULE X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. **ābrum, ācrum, ātrum:**
flābrum, sĭmŭlācrum, ărātrum.

II. **ēdo, ĭdo, ūdo; āgo, ĭgo, ūgo:**
dulcēdo, cŭpīdo, sōlĭtūdo; vŏrāgo, ŏrīgo, aerūgo.

III. **āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, īne, ōne**—*in patronymics:*
Ptŏlĕmāis, Chrўsēis, Mīnōis, Icărĭōtis, Nērīne, Acrĭsiōne.
Except *Dānăis, Phōcăis, Thēbăis, Nērĭis.*

IV. **ēla, ĭle; ālis, ēlis, ūlis:**
quĕrēla, ŏvile; mortālis, fĭdēlis, cŭrūlis.

V. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus; āna, ēna, ōna, ūna:**
urbānus, ĕgēnus, patrōnus, trībūnus; membrāna, hăbēna, annōna, lăcūna.
Except *galbănus.*

VI. **āris, ārus; ōrus, ōsus; āvus, īvus:**
sălūtāris, ăvārus; cănōrus, ănĭmōsus; octāvus, aestīvus.

VII. **ātus, ītus, ūtus; ātim, ītim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:**

ēlātus, turrītus, cornūtus; singŭlātim, vīrītim, trībūtim; quercētum, mŏnēta.

Except (1) *anhēlītus, fortŭītus, grātuītus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spīrītus,* (2) *affātim, stātim,* and adverbs in *ītus,* as *dīvīnītus;* and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. **ōni, īni, ōni,**—*in distributives:*

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short:

I. **ădes, iădes, ĭdes,**—*in patronymics:*

Aenēădes, Lāërtiădes, Tantălides.

Except (1) those in *ĭdes* from nouns in *eus* and *es;* as, *Pēlīdes* (Peleus), *Neoclīdes* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphidrūides, Amȳclīdes, Bēlīdes, Cŏrōnĭdes, Lȳcurgīdes.*

II. **iăcus, ĭcus, ĭdus:**

Cŏrinthiăcus, mŏdĭcus, cŭpĭdus.

Except *āmīcus, antīcus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdīcus.*

III. **ŏlus, ŏla, ŏlum; ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum; cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum,**—*in diminutives:*

fīliŏlus, fīliŏla, atriŏlum; hortŭlus, virgŭla, oppĭdŭlum; floscŭlus, partĭcŭla, mūnuscŭlum.

IV. **ētas, ĭtas,**—*in nouns;* **ĭter, ĭtus,**—*in adverbs:*

piĕtas, vērĭtas; fortĭter, dīvĭnĭtus.

V. **ātĭlis, ĭlis, bĭlis,**—*in verbals;* **ĭnus,**—*in adjectives denoting material* or *time:*

versātĭlis, dŏcĭlis, āmābĭlis; ădămantĭnus, cedrĭnus, crastĭnus, diūtĭnus.

Except *mātūtīnus, rĕpentīnus, vespertīnus.*

1. **Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *cīvīlis, hostīlis, puĕrīlis, vīrīlis.*

2. **Inus** denoting *characteristic* (325) usually has the penult long: *cānīnus, ĕquīnus, mārīnus.*

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long:

I. **āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius:**

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sŭbĭtāneus, cībārius, cŏlumbārium, censōrius.

II. **ābĭlis, ātĭlis, ātĭcus:**

āmābĭlis, versātĭlis, ăquātĭcus.

III. **āginta, īginti, ēsĭmus,**—*in numerals:*

nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsĭmus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short:

I. **ĭbĭlis, ĭtūdo, ŏlentus, ŭlentus.**

crēdĭbĭlis, sōlĭtūdo, vīnŏlentus, ŏpŭlentus.

II. **ŭrio,**—*in desideratives:*

ēsŭrio, emptŭrio, partŭrio.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In **mā**ter, **cē**do, scrī**bo**, dō**no**, **ū**tor, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in **pă**ter, **tĕ**go, mĭ**co**, **sŏ**no, **ŭ**ter, it is *short by authority.*

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection:

In DECLENSION,—**ă**vis, **ă**vem; nū**bes**, nū**bium**.

In COMPARISON,—**lĕ**vis, **lĕ**vior, **lĕ**vissĭmus.

In CONJUGATION,—**mŏ**neo, **mŏ**nēbam, **mŏ**nui.

1. Position may however affect the quantity: *ăger, ăgri* (611, 612); *possum, pŏtui; solvo, sŏlūtum; volvo, vŏlūtum.*

Here *ă* becomes *ā* before *gr.* The *o* in *possum, solvo,* and *volvo,* long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gĕnui, gĕnĭtum,* and *pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum.*

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum; fŏveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short:

bĭbi, dĕdi, fĭdi, scĭdi, stĕti, stĭti, tŭli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

cĭtum, dătum, ĭtum, lĭtum, quĭtum, rătum, rŭtum, sătum, sĭtum, stĭtum.[1]

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

cădo, cĕcĭdi; căno, cĕcĭni; disco, dĭdĭci.

1. *Caedo* has *cĕcīdī* in distinction from *cĕcĭdi* from *cădo*.
2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cŏcurri, mŏmordi*.

II. In Derivatives.

653. Rule XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

bŏnus, bŏnĭtas; tĭmeo, tĭmor; ănĭmus, ănĭmōsus; cīvis, cīvĭcus; cūra, cūro.

1. Frequentatives in **ito**, have **i** short: *clāmĭto*. See 332. I.
2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

hŏmo,	hūmānus,	rĕgo,	rēx, rēgis, rēgŭla,
lăteo,	lātĕrna,	sĕcus,	sēcius,
lĕgo,	lēx, lēgis,	sĕdeo,	sēdes, sēdŭlus,
măcer,	mācĕro,	sĕro,	sēmen,
mŏveo,	mōbĭlis,	suspĭcor,	suspīcio,
persŏno,	persōna,	tĕgo,	tēgŭla.

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

ācer,	ăcerbus,	nōtum,	nŏta,
dīco,	dĭcax,	ōdi,	ŏdium,
dūco,	dux, dŭcis,	sōpio,	sŏpor,
fīdo,	fĭdes,	vādo,	vădum,
lūceo,	lŭcerna,	vōx, vōcis,	vŏco.
mōles,	mŏlestus,		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mōvĭbĭlis, mōbĭlis, mōbĭlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lēgis, lēges, rēgis, rēges, sēdes*, from the nouns *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, or the verbs *dūcis, dūces, fides*, from the nouns *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. Rule XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

antĕ-fĕro, dē-fĕro, dē-dūco, ĭn-aequālis, prō-dūco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

dē-lĭgo (*lĕgo*), oc-cĭdo (*cădo*), oc-cīdo (*caedo*).

[1] From *sisto*, but *stātum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Dĭ, sē,** and **vē** are long, **rĕ** short: **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short:

dīdūco, sēdūco, vēcors, rĕdūco, nēdum, nĕfas:

1) *Di* is short in *dĭrĭmo, dĭsertus.*

2) *Ne* is long in *nēdum, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquĭtia,* and *nēve.* In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligio, rēliquiae, rēpĕrit, rēpŭlit, rētŭlit,* etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dico gives *-dīcus; jūro, -jĕro; nōtus, -nĭtus; nūbo, nŭba:* mălĕ-dīcus, de-jĕro, cog-nĭtus, prō-nŭba.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

Prŏcella, prŏcul, prŏfānus, prŏfāri, prŏfecto, prŏfestus, prŏfĭciscor, prŏfĭteor, prŏfŭgio, prŏfŭgus, prŏfundus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏtervus, and most Greek words, as *prŏphēta,* generally in *prŏfundo, prŏpāgo, prŏpīno,* rarely in *prōcūro, prōpello.*

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

căl-ĕ-făcio, lăb-ĕ-făcio, bell-ĭ-gĕro, aed-ĭ-fĭco, art-ĭ-fex, ampl-ĭ-fĭco, lŏcŭ-ples.

Before *făcio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *tăquēfăcio, pătēfăcio, putrēfăcio, tēpēfacio.* The first *e* in *vidēlĭcet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies:* mĕrīdies, prīdie, postrīdie, quŏtīdie, trīduum, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bīgae, trīgae, quadrīgae, ilĭcet, scilĭcet, tibĭcen* for *tibĭicen.*

But *i* is short in *bĭduum* and *quadrĭduum.*

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-, intrō-, retrō-,* and *quandō-* in composition; as: *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōverto, quandōque,* but *quandŏquidem.*

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hŏdie, quăsi,* and *sĭquidem* have the first syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

I. Metrical Feet.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list:

I. Simple Feet.

Dissyllabic Feet.

Spondee,	*two long syllables,*	– –	Lēgēs.
Trochee,[1]	*a long and a short,*	– ⏑	Lēgĭs.
Iambus,	*a short and a long,*	⏑ –	Părēns.
Pyrrhic,	*two short,*	⏑ ⏑	Pătĕr.

Trisyllabic Feet.

Dactyl,	*a long and two short,*	– ⏑ ⏑	cārmĭnă.
Anapaest,	*two short and a long,*	⏑ ⏑ –	bŏnĭtās.
Tribrach,	*three short,*	⏑ ⏑ ⏑	dŏmĭnŭs.
Molossus,	*three long,*	– – –	lĭbērtās.
Amphibrach,	*a short, a long, and a short,*	⏑ – ⏑	ămīcŭs.
Amphimacer,[2]	*a long, a short, and a long,*	– ⏑ –	mīlĭtēs.
Bacchius,	*a short and two long,*	⏑ – –	dŏlōrēs.
Antibacchius,	*two long and a short,*	– – ⏑	pāstōrĭs.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

[1] Sometimes called *Choree.* [2] Also called *Cretic.*

Dispondee,	*double spondee,*	– – – –	praĕcĕptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	*double trochee,*	– ∪ – ∪	cīvĭtātĭs.
Diiambus,	*double iambus,*	∪ – ∪ –	ămoēnĭtās.
Proceleusmatic,	*double pyrrhic,*	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	mĕmŏrĭă.
Greater Ionic,	*spondee and pyrrhic,*	– – ∪ ∪	sēntēntĭă.
Lesser Ionic,	*pyrrhic and spondee,*	∪ ∪ – –	ădŏlēscēns.
Choriambus,	*trochee* (choree), *and iambus,*	– ∪ ∪ –	impătĕns.
Antispast,	*iambus and trochee,*	∪ – – ∪	vĕrĕcūndŭs.
First Epitrite,	*iambus and spondee,*	∪ – – –	ămāvērūnt.
Second Epitrite,	*trochee and spondee,*	– ∪ – –	cōndĭtōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	*spondee and iambus,*	– – ∪ –	aūctōrĭtās.
Fourth Epitrite,	*spondee and trochee,*	– – – ∪	ōrnāmēntă.
First Paeon,	*trochee and pyrrhic,*	– ∪ ∪ ∪	hĭstŏrĭă.
Second Paeon,	*iambus and pyrrhic,*	∪ – ∪ ∪	ămābĭlĭs.
Third Paeon,	*pyrrhic and trochee,*	∪ ∪ – ∪	pŭĕrĭlĭs.
Fourth Paeon,	*pyrrhic and iambus,*	∪ ∪ ∪ –	cĕlĕrĭtās.

1. Common Feet.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. Groups.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemiměris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemiměris*, of two and a half; *Hephthemiměris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. Metrical Equivalents.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The Dactyl becomes a Spondee by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the Spondee becomes a Dactyl by resolving the second syllable, or an Anapaest by resolving the first. Accordingly the Dactyl, the Spondee, and the Anapaest are metrical equivalents. In like manner the Iambus, the Trochee, and the Tribrach are metrical equivalents.

658. Metrical Substitutes.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The Spondee is often substituted for the Iambus or the Trochee, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. Ictus or Rhythmic Accent.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or Ictus.

1. Simple Feet.—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapæst and the Iambus on the last.

2. Equivalents and Substitutes.—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapæst, it takes the ictus of the Anapæst, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapæst takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. Compound Feet.—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. Arsis and Thesis.—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

II. Verses.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. Cæsural Pause.—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the cæsura[1] or cæsural pause. See 673, 674.

663. Metrical Names of Verses.—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

[1] Cæsura (from *cædo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.[1] Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.

2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer;* of two, *Dimeter;* of three, *Trimeter;* of four, *Tetrameter;* of five, *Pentameter;* of six, *Hexameter.*

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllăbam, in disyllăbum*, or *in trisyllăbum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic, Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic.*

664. Special Names of Verses.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcaic from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

665. Final Syllable.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. Stanza.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich;* of three, a *Tristich;* of four, a *Tetrastich.*

[1] A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. METRE.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.
2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. SCANNING.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. SYNALOEPHA.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o, heu, ah, proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets.

3. Final *s* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant:

Pyrrhin' connūbia servas? *for* Pyrrhine connūbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omnĭbu' rēbus, *for* Ex omnĭbus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia.*

II. SYNAERESIS.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aurēā, dēinde, dēinceps, īīdem, īīsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēāēdem.*

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohĭbeat*, pronounced *proĭbeat.*

2. In the different parts of *dēsum, ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse, dēest, dēerat, dēerit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteeo: antēīre, antēīrem, antēīs, antēīt.*

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ăbĭĕtĕ* and *ărĭēte*, become *ăbyĕtĕ* and *ăryētē; gĕnŭă* and *tĕnŭēs* become *gĕnwă* and *tĕnwēs.*

III. DIAERESIS.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two:

aurāï *for* aurae, Orphĕŭs *for* Orphēūs, soluendus, *for* solvendus, silua *for* silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. SYSTOLE.—This is the shortening of a long syllable:

tŭlĕrunt *for* tŭlērunt, stĕtĕrunt *for* stĕtērunt (235), vĭdĕ'n *for* vĭdēsne.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. I. 2.

V. DIASTOLE.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable:

Prĭămĭdes *for* Prĭămĭdes.

1. This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the arsis of the foot (660). In the latter case the syllable is said to be lengthened by the *ictus*.

SECTION II.

VARIETIES OF VERSE.

I. DACTYLIC VERSE.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,[1]

´ ˘ ˘	´ ˘ ˘	´ ˘ ˘	´ ˘ ˘	´ ˘ ˘	´ ¯
– –	– –	– –	– –		

Quādrŭpĕ- | dāntĕ pŭ- | trem sŏnĭ- | tū quătĭt | ūngŭlă | cāmpum. *Virg.*

Armă vĭ- | rūmquĕ că- | nō Trō- | jăe quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōris. *Virg.*

Infăn- | dūm rē- | gīnă jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrem. *Virg.*

Illi[2] ĭn- | tĕr sē- | sē măg- | nă vī | brāchĭă | tōllūnt. *Virg.*

[1] In this scale the sign ´ marks the *ictus* (659).

[2] The final *i* of *illi* is elided by *Synaloepha* (669).

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. ILLUSTRATION.—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cārā dē- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs măg- | num Jŏvĭs | incrē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armă- | tī tĕn- | dūnt; || it | clāmŏr ĕt | ăgmĭnĕ | făctŏ. *Virg.*
Infān- | dum, rē- | gīnă, || jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tenduntˊ*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regĭna*, in the thesis (*nă jŭ*) of the third foot.

1. RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdĭdĕ- | rĭm; || vēr | īllŭd ĕ- | rāt, || vēr | măgnŭs ă- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. BUCOLIC CAESURA.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingĕn- | tem coe- | lō sŏnĭ- | tūm dĕdĭt; || ĭndĕ sĕ- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. FAULTY CAESURA.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pūlvĕrŭ- | lēntŭs ĕ- | quīs fŭrĭt; || ōmnēs | ārmă rĕ- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vĭ- | rumque că- | nō, || Trō- | jaē quī | prīmŭs ăb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cănо*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaē | moēnĭă | tĕrrŭĭt | ĭmpĭgĕr | Hănnĭbăl | ārmis. *Enn.*

675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecĭpĭ- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bāntquĕ | fūnĕrĕ | mēns est. *Virg.*

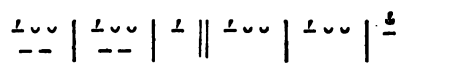
Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtŭrĭ- | ūnt mōn- | tēs, || nas- | cētur | rĭdĭcŭ- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:



Admŏnĭ- | tū coe- | pī || fŏrtĭŏr | ēssĕ tŭ- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. PENTAMETER.—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. ELEGIAC DISTICH.—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmĭsĕ- | pūltă vĭ- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fĕrĭ- | ūntŭr ă- | rātris
Ossă, rŭ- | ĭnō- | sās || ōccŭlŭĭt | hērbă dō- | mūs. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter:

Ibĭmŭs | O sŏcĭ- | ĭ, cŏmĭ- | tĕsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter:

Arbŏrĭ- | bŭsquĕ cŏ- | mae. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee:

Mōntĭs ĭ- | māgŏ. *Hor.*

II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies:

Vĕnĭĕnt ⋮ ānnīs || saecŭlă ⋮ sĕrīs.[1] *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (663. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac.*

II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody:

Dătă rĕs ⋮ pătrĭae. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

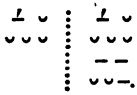
3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

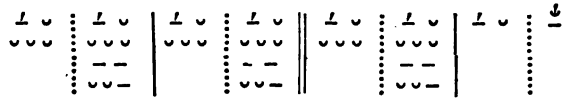
A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second:

[1] In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:



Nūllă ⁞ vŏx hū- | mānă ⁞ cōnstăt ‖ ābsquĕ ⁞ sēptēm | līttĕ- ⁞ ris,
Rītĕ ⁞ vŏcā- | lēs vŏ- ⁞ cāvīt ‖ quās mă- ⁞ gīstră | Graĕcī- ⁞ a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.

2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.

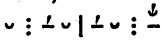
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.

4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

Ipsĕ ⁞ sūmmīs | sāxīs ⁞ fīxŭs ‖ āspĕ- ⁞ rīs ŏ- | vīscĕ- ⁞ rātus. *Enn.*

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Aulă ⁞ dīvĭ- | tĕm mă- ⁞ net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.

2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.

3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.

4. For *Phalaecian*, see 691. V.

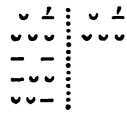
IV. Iambic Verse.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale:



I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

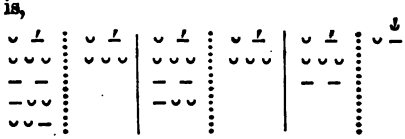
I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,



Quĭd ōb- ⁞ sĕrā- | tīs || au- ⁞ rĭbūs | fūndīs ⁞ prĕces? *Hor.*
Nēptū- ⁞ nŭs āl- | tō || tūn- ⁞ dĭt hī- | bērnūs ⁞ sălo. *Hor.*
Hās īn- ⁞ tĕr ĕpŭ- | lās || ūt ⁞ jŭvāt | pāstās ⁞ ŏves. *Hor.*

1. Proper Names.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. Horace.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. Comedy.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

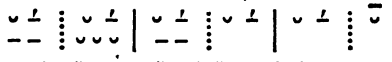
4. Choliambus.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth:

Mĭsēr ⁞ Cătūl- | lĕ dē- ⁞ sĭnās | ĭnēp- ⁞ tīre. *Catul.*

Choliambus means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Scazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactĕan*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

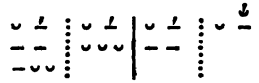
brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:



Vŏcā- ⁞ tŭs āt- | quĕ nōn ⁞ vŏcā- | tŭs au- ⁞ dit. *Hor.*

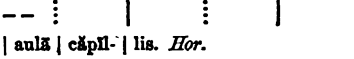
II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first:



Quĕrūn- ⁞ tŭr ĭn | sĭlvīs ⁞ ăves. *Hor.*
Imbrēs ⁞ nĭvēs- | quĕ cōm- ⁞ părat. *Hor.*
Ast ĕgŏ ⁞ vĭcīs- | sĭm rī- ⁞ sĕro. *Hor.*

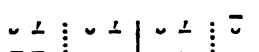
1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:



Pŭĕr | quīs ēx | aulā | căpīl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets. Its scale is,



Mănū ⁞ pŭēr | lŏquā- ⁞ ci. *Pet. Arb.*

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- ⁞ lă dī- | vĭtĕm ⁞ mănet. *Hor.*

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quăntum ĭn- ⁞ tĕllĕx- | ĭ mŏdŏ ⁞ sĕnīs ‖ sēntēn- ⁞ tĭām | dē nūp- ⁞ tĭīs. *Ter.*

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quŏt cōm- ⁝ mŏdās | rĕs ăt- ⁝ tŭlī? || quŏt an- ⁝ tem ădĕ- | mī cū- ⁝ rās. *Ter.*

V. Ionic Verse.

687. The Ionic a Minōre consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

⏑ ⏑ ⏓ – | ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ – | ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ – | ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ –

⏑ ⏑ ⏓ – | ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ –

Sīmŭl ūnctōs | Tĭbĕrīnīs | hŭmĕrōs lă- | vīt ĭn ūndīs. *Hor.*

Nĕquĕ sĕgnī | pĕdĕ vĭctus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadean Verse,* scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

⏓ – ⏑ ⏑ | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏑ | ⏓ – ⏑ ⏑ / ⏓ – ⏑ – | ⏓ ⏑ –

Hās cūm gĕmĭ- | nā cōmpĕdĕ | dēdĭcāt că- | tēnās. *Mart.*

VI. Choriambic Verse.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic;* or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratean;* with two, the *Asclepiadean;* with three, the Greater *Asclepiadean.*

I. The Glyconic has the following scale:

⏓ – | ⏓ ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ | ⏑ ⏑̲

Dōnec | grātŭs ĕrām | tĭbi. *Hor.*

II. The Pherecratean is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

⏓ – | ⏓ ⏑ ⏑ ⏓ | ⏑̲

Vīx dū- | rārĕ cărī- | nae. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

⏑ – | ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ || ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ | ◡ ⏓

Maecē- | nās ătăvīs || ēdĭtŭ rēg- | ĭbus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

⏑ – | ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ || ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ || ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ | ◡ ⏓

Seu plū- | rēs hĭĕmēs, || seu trĭbŭit || Jūpĭtĕr ūl- | tĭmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter.*

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchīus, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchīus:

⏑ ◡ ⏑ – | ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ | ◡ ⏑ ⏓

Nāmquĕ mē sīl- | vā || lŭpŭs ĭn | Săbīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchīus:

⏑ ◡ ⏑ – | ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ || ⏑ ◡ ◡ ⏑ | ◡ ⏑ ⏓

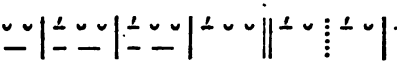
Intĕr aequā- | lēs ĕquĭtāt, || Gāllĭcă nēc | lŭpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter.*

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:



Vĭtaĕ | summă brĕ- | vĭs spĕm | nōs vĕtăt, || inchŏ- ⁞ ārĕ | lōngam. *Hor.*

The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:

Purpŭrĕ- | ŏ vărĭ- | ūs cŏ- ⁞ lōre. *Hor.*

III. ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:

Cūr nĕquĕ | mīlĭ- ⁞ tāris. *Hor.*

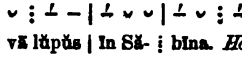
This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic.*

IV. SAPPHIC VERSE.—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,

Nāmquĕ ⁞ mē sĭl- | vă lŭpŭs | in Să- ⁞ bīna. *Hor.*

Sapphic verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. PHALAECIAN VERSE.—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

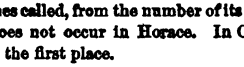


Nōn ēst | vīvĕrĕ, || sĕd vă- ⁞ lērĕ | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Hendecasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

692. GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:



Vīdēs ⁞ ŭt īl- | tă || stĕt nīvĕ | cāndĭdum

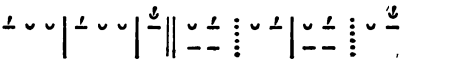
Sōrāc- ⁞ tĕ nĕc | jām || sūstĭnĕ- | ānt ŏnŭs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.

2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.

3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

693. DACTYLICO-IAMBIC VERSE.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

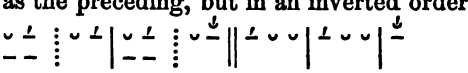


Jussŭs ăb- | Irĕ dŏ- | mūm, || fĕrē- ⁞ băr ĭn- | cērtō ⁞ pĕde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Priapeian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. IAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

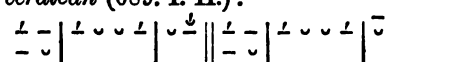


NĬvēs- ⁞ quĕ dē- | dūcūnt ⁞ Jŏvĕm: || nūnc mărĕ, | nūnc sīlŭ- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelegus*.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (689. I. II.):



Quĕrcŭs | ărĭdă rūs- | tĭcă || cōnfŏr- | mătă sĕcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecratēan appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochee *quercŭs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the Dactylic Hexameter. See 671.

697. OVID.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

698. HORACE.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyrics, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

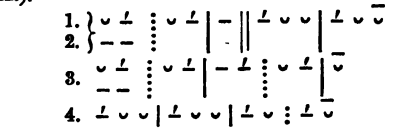
699. LYRICS OF HORACE.—Most of the Odes and Epodes consist of Stanzas of two, three, or four verses; but a few of them consist entirely of a single kind of verse.

LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

700. For convenience of reference the following outline of the Lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

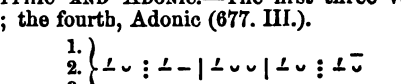
A. *Stanzas of Four Verses.*

I. ALCAIC STANZA.—First and second verses, Greater Alcaics (692); third, Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter (685. I.); fourth, Alcaic (691. II.).



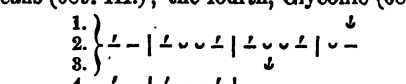
In thirty-seven Odes: I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. SAPPHIC AND ADONIC.—The first three verses, Sapphics (691. IV.); the fourth, Adonic (677. III.).



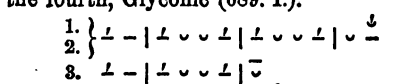
In Twenty-six Odes: I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11, and Sec. Hymn.

III. ASCLEPIADĒAN AND GLYCONIC.—The first three verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).



In nine Odes: I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

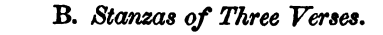
IV. ASCLEPIADĒAN, PHERECRATĒAN, AND GLYCONIC.—The first two verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the third, Pherecratēan (689. II.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).



In seven Odes: I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

B. *Stanzas of Three Verses.*

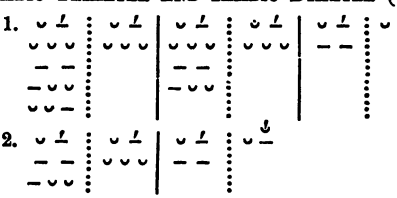
V. Ionic a Minore (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.



In Ode III. 12.

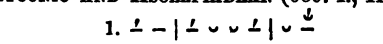
C. *Stanzas of Two Verses.*

VI. Iambic Trimeter and Iambic Dimeter (683, 685).



In the first ten Epodes.

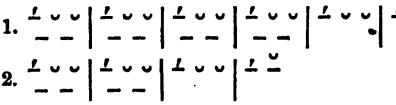
VII. Glyconic and Asclepiadēan (689. I., III.).



2. See IV. 1.

In twelve Odes: I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 8.

VIII. Hexameter and Dactylic Tetrameter (671; 677. I.).



In two Odes: I. 7, 28, and Epode 12.

IX. Hexameter and Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.

In Ode IV. 7.

X. Hexameter and Iambic Trimeter (671, 683).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

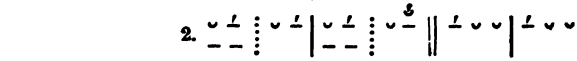
XI. Hexameter and Iambic Dimeter (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

XII. Hexameter and Iambico-Dactylic (671, 694).

1. See VIII. 1.

2. 

In Epode 13.

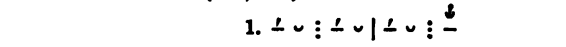
XIII. Iambic Trimeter and Dactylico-Iambic (683, 693).

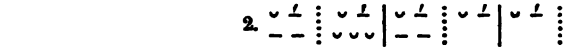
1. See VI. 1.

2.

In Epode 11.

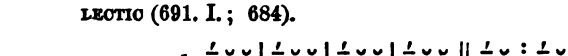
XIV. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic and Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (681, 684).

1. 

2. 

In Ode II. 18.

XV. Greater Archilochian and Iambic Trimeter Catalectic (691. I.; 684).

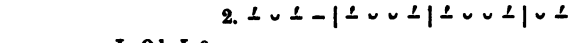
1. 

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

XVI. Aristophanic and Greater Sapphic (691. III.; 690. II).

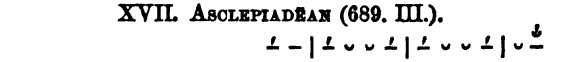
1.

2. 

In Ode I. 8.

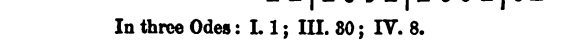
D. *Verses used Singly.*

XVII. Asclepiadean (689. III.).



In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

XVIII. Greater Asclepiadean (689. IV.).



In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

XIX. Iambic Trimeter (683). See VI. 1.

In Epode 17.

701. Index to the Lyric Metres of Horace.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.

Odes.	Metres.
1,	XVII.
2,	II.
3,	VII.
4,	XV.
5,	IV.
6,	III.
7,	VIII.
8,	XVI.
9,	I.
10,	II.
11,	XVIII.
12,	II.
13,	VII.
14,	IV.
15,	III.
16,	I.
17,	I.
18,	XVIII.
19,	VII.
20,	II.
21,	IV.
22,	II.
23,	IV.
24,	III.
25,	II.
26,	I.
27,	I.
28,	VIII.
29,	I.
30,	II.
31,	I.
32,	II.
33,	III.
34,	I.
35,	I.
36,	VII.
37,	I.
38,	II.

BOOK II.

1,	I.
2,	II.
3,	I.
4,	II.
5,	I.
6,	II.
7,	I.
8,	II.
9,	I.
10,	II.
11,	I.
12,	III.
13,	I.
14,	I.
15,	I.
16,	II.
17,	I.
18,	XIV.
19,	I.
20,	I.

BOOK III.

1,	I.
2,	I.
3,	I.
4,	I.
5,	I.
6,	I.
7,	IV.
8,	II.
9,	VII.
10,	III.
11,	II.
12,	V.
13,	IV.
14,	II.
15,	VII.
16,	III.
17,	I.
18,	II.
19,	VII.
20,	II.
21,	I.
22,	II.
23,	I.
24,	VII.
25,	VII.
26,	I.
27,	II.
28,	VII.
29,	I.
30,	XVII.

BOOK IV.

1,	VII.
2,	II.
3,	VII.
4,	I.
5,	III.
6,	II.
7,	IX.
8,	XVII.
9,	I.
10,	XVIII.
11,	II.
12,	III.
13,	IV.
14,	I.
15,	I.

EPODES.

Epodes.	Metres.
1,	VI.
2,	VI.
3,	VI.
4,	VI.
5,	VI.
6,	VI.
7,	VI.
8,	VI.
9,	VI.
10,	VI.
11,	XIII.
12,	VIII.
13,	XII.
14,	XI.
15,	XI.
16,	X.
17,	XIX.
SECULAR HYMN,	II.

APPENDIX.

I. Figures of Speech.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form, construction,* or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology;* from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax,* and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric.*

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following:

1. Aphaeresis takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: *'st* for *est.*

2. Syncope takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *virum* for *virōrum, dixe* for *dixisse.*

3. Apocope takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne.*

4. Prosthesis prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tĕtŭli* for *tŭli.*

5. Epenthesis inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcŭmēna* for *Alcmēna, dĭlŭtuum* for *dĭlūtum.*

6. Paragoge adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dicier* for *dici.*

7. Metathesis transposes letters or syllables: *pistris* for *pristis.*

8. Antithesis substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus, olli* for *illi.*

See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following:

I. Ellipsis is the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

Hăbĭtābat ad Jŏvis (*sc. templum*), *He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. Abiit, ēvāsit (*ex*), *He has gone, has escaped.* Cic.

1. Asyndeton is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.

2. Zeugma is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:

Pācem an bellum gĕrens, *whether at peace* (ăgens) *or waging war.* Sall.

3. Aposiopesis, also called *Reticentia,* used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

Quos ego — sed mōtos praestat compōnĕre fluctus. *Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves.* Virg.

4. Proverbs are often elliptical.

5. Ellipsis of Facio, Dico, Oro. See 460. 3; 602, II. 3.

II. Pleonasm is the use of superfluous words:

Erant ītĭnĕra duo, quĭbus ītĭnerĭbus exīre possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart.* Caes. Eurusque Nŏtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Virg.

1. Polysyndeton is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.

2. Hendiadys is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armis virisque, *for* viris armātis, *with armed men.* Tac.

3. ANAPHORA is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses:

Me cuncta Itălia, me ūniversa cīvitas consŭlem dēclārāvit, *Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.

4. EPIPHORA is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses:

Laelius nāvus ĕrat, doctus ĕrat, *Laelius was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et:*

Et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis, *both in military and in civil offices.* Cic.

Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita,* is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid,* in *quid censes* with a clause:

Illud te ōro ut dīligens sis, *I ask you* (that thing) *to be* (that you be) *diligent.* Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quīdem.* See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet:*

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, *It is lawful* (is permitted that it is, &c.). Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, gĕnus, mŏdus,* and *rătio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another:

Pŏpŭlus lāte rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg. Sērus (*sēro*) in coelum rĕdeas, *May you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vīna cădis (*vīnis cădos*) ŏnĕrāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. ANTIMERIA is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. HYPALLAGE is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. SYNESIS is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.

4. ANACOLŪTHON is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence:

Si, ut dicunt, omnes Graios esse (*Graii sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses:

Praeter arma nihil ĕrat sŭper (*sŭperĕrat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Vălet atque vīvit (*vīvit atque vălet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. ANASTROPHE is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. TMESIS is the separation of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another:

Rei pūblĭcae vulnus (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic.* Cic. Naufrăgium fortūnae, *the wreck of fortune.* Cic.

II. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it:

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnātum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea for victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Stătio mălĕ fīda cărīnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos *bŏnus* (for *mălus*) impĕrātor vester non admīsit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim*, *ĕtĕnim*, *scīlĭcet*, *vidēlĭcet*, *nīmīrum*, *crēdo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 503. 3.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulmĭnis ōcior ălis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non ŏpus est = pernĭcĭōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHORS.

706. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius, Plautus, Terence, Lucretius.

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age.*—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age.*—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. The POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age.*—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age.*—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;

2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;

3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *prĭdie Kălendas, Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not sĕcundo; third, not second) *ante Kălendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *prĭdie ante Kălendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Kălendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Kălendas, Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Jānŭārias*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. Ante diem.—Instead of *die—ante, ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. As Indeclinable Nouns.—The expressions *ante diem—Cal.*, etc., *pridie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv. Ad pridie Nōnas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. Calendar for the Year.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	Calendis.[1]	Calendis.	Calendis.	Calendis.
2	VI. Nonas.[1]	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III. "	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonis.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend.[2]	XVIII. Calend.[2]	XVI. Calend.[2]
15	Idibus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend.[2]	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.)[3] "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Cal (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. English and Latin Dates.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

---

[1] To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

[2] The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Aprīles.*

[3] The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year.*

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = 13 − (8 − 1) = 13 − 7 = 6th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = 31 − (18 − 2) = 31 − 16 = 15th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.*, and *prīdie Cal. Mart.*

711. Divisions of Day and Night.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. Night Watches.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. Length of Roman Hour.—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures.

712. Coins.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quīnārius*, *dēnārius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As,	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius,	4 "
Quīnārius,	8 "
Dēnārius,	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnārii,	$4.00.

1. As—the Unit of Money.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{2}{12}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{3}{12}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{4}{12}$ a *triens*, $\frac{5}{12}$ a *quincunx*, $\frac{6}{12}$ a *sēmis*, $\frac{7}{12}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{8}{12}$ a *bes*, $\frac{9}{12}$ a *dodrans*, $\frac{10}{12}$ a *dextans*, $\frac{11}{12}$ a *deunx*.

2. Sestertius, Quinarius, and Denarius.—The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ asses, the *quīnārius* 5, and the *dēnārius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. As—the General Unit of Computation.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight.*—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure.*—the *as* is then a foot or a jugerum (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a jugerum.

3) *In Interest.*—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *sēmis* is $\frac{1}{24}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance.*—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hēres ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hēres ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{9}{12}$.

713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus;* but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, vīginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dŭcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiŭm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia:*

Duo millia sestertium, *or* duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces;* quinque millia sestertium, *or* quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bīna sestertia*, for *duo sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, dĕcies, vīcies, etc. Thus

Dĕcies sestertium, 1,000,000 (10 × 100,000) sesterces; Vīcies sestertium, 2,000,000 (20 × 100,000) sesterces.

1. SESTERTIUM.—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Dĕcies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. SESTERTIUM OMITTED.—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *dĕcies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. SIGN HS.—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium:*

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

714. WEIGHT.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Lībra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois.

1. OUNCES.—The *Lībra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.—Parts of ounces also have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = sēmiuncia, $\frac{1}{4}$ = duella, $\frac{1}{6}$ = sicilicus, $\frac{1}{8}$ = sextŭla, $\frac{1}{72}$ = drachma, $\frac{1}{144}$ = scrūpŭlum, $\frac{1}{288}$ = obŏlus.

715. Dry Measure.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. Sextarius.—This is $\frac{1}{16}$ of a modius.

2. Parts of the Sextarius.—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{4}$ = ăcĕtābŭlum, $\frac{1}{12}$ = cyăthus.

716. Liquid Measure.—The *Amphŏra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. Culeus.—Twenty *amphŏrae* make one *Cŭleus*.

2. Parts of Amphora.—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = urna, $\frac{1}{8}$ = congius, $\frac{1}{48}$ = sextārius, $\frac{1}{96}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{192}$ = quartārius, $\frac{1}{384}$ = ăcĕtābŭlum, $\frac{1}{576}$ = cyăthus.

717. Long Measure.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. Combinations of Feet.—Palmipes = 1½ Roman feet; cŭbĭtus = 1½; passus = 5; stădium = 625.

2. Parts of Foot.—Palmus = ¼ foot; uncia = $\frac{1}{12}$; dĭgĭtus = $\frac{1}{16}$.

718. Square Measure.—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgĕrum*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jugĕrum* have the same name as those of the *As:* uncia = $\frac{1}{144}$, sextans = $\frac{1}{288}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. Abbreviations.

719. *Names.*

A. = Aulus.
Ap. = Appius.
C. (G.) = Cāius (Gaius).
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).
D. = Dĕcĭmus.
L. = Lūcius.
M. = Marcus.
M'. = Mānius.
Mam. = Māmercus.
N. = Nŭmĕrius.
P. = Publius.
Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
Ser. = Servius.
Sp. = Spŭrius.
T. = Tĭtus.
Ti. (Tib.) = Tĭbĕrius.

720. *Other Abbreviations.*

A. D. = ante diem.
Aed. = aedĭlis.
A. U. C. = anno urbis condĭtae.
Cal. (Kal.) = Călendae.
Cos. = consul.
Coss. = consŭles.
D. = dīvus.
D. D. = dōno dĕdit.
Des. = dēsignātus.
D. M. = dīis mānĭbus.
D. S. = de suo.
D. S. P. P. = de sua pĕcūnia pŏsuit.
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rōmānus.
F. = fĭlius.
F. C. = făciendum cūrāvit.
Id. = Idus.
Imp. = impĕrātor.
Leg. = lēgātus.
Non. = Nōnae.
O. M. = optĭmus maxĭmus.
P. C. = patres conscripti.
Pont. Max. = pontĭfex maxĭmus.
P. R. = pŏpŭlus Rōmānus.
Pr. = praetor.
Praef. = praefectus.
Proc. = prōconsul.
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bŏnum, fēlix, faustumque sit.
Quir. = Quĭrītes.
Resp. = res publĭca.
S. = sĕnātus.
S. C. = sĕnātus consultum.
S. D. P. = sălūtem dicit plūrĭmam.
S. P. Q. R. = sĕnātus pŏpŭlusque Rōmānus.
Tr. Pl. = trĭbūnus plēbis.

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind:

1. That the elements,—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338. 1 and 341. 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 260.

A.

Abdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 280.
Ab-ĭgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
Ab-jĭcio. See *jăcio*, 279.
Ab-luo. See *luo*, 274.
Ab-nuo. See *annuo*, 274.
Abŏleo, ēre, ēvi, ĭtum, 266. 1.
Abŏlesco, ĕre, ŏlēvi, ŏlĭtum, 276. II.
Ab-rĭpio. See *răpio*, 276.
Abs-con-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Ac-cendo, ĕre, i, censum, 273. III.
Ac-cĭdo. See *cădo*, 280.
Ac-cĭno. See *căno*, 280.
Ac-cĭpio. See *căpio*, 279.
Ac-cŏlo. See *cŏlo*, 276.
Ac-cumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum, 276. II.
Aceo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Acesco, ĕre, ăcui, —, 281.
Ac-quīro. See *quaero*, 276. III.
Acuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Ad-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Ad-ĭmo. See *ĕmo*, 279.
Adĭpiscor, i, adeptus sum, 282.
Ad-ŏlesco. See *ăbŏlesco*, 276. II.
Ad-ŏrior. See *ŏrior*, 286.
Ad-spĭcio. See *aspĭcio*, 273. I. 2.
Ad-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Aegresco, ĕre, —, 281.
Af-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
Age, *def.*, 297.
Ag-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Ag-grĕdior. See *grădior*, 282.
Ago, ĕre, ēgi, actum, 279.
Aio, *def.*, 297.
Albeo, ēre, —, 268.
Algeo, ēre, alsi, —, 269.
Al-lĭcio, ĕre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273. II. 1.
Al-luo. See *luo*, 274.
Alo, ĕre, ălui, ălĭtum, altum, 276. II.
Amb-ĭgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
Ambio, 295. 3.
Amĭcio, īre (ui), tum, 284.
Amo, *parad.*, 205.
Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 282.
Ango, ĕre, anxi, —, 274.
Annuo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Apăge, *def.*, 297.
Apĕrio, īre, ui, tum, 284.
Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 282.
Ap-păreo. See *păreo*, 266.
Ap-pĕto. See *pĕto*, 276. III.
Applĭco. See *plĭco*, 262.
Ap-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.
Arcesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.
Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 269.
Aresco, ĕre, ārui, —, 281.
Arguo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Ar-rĭpio. See *răpio*, 276.
A-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.
A-spergo. See *spargo*, 273.
A-spĭcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, 273.
As-sentior, īri, sensus sum, 286.
As-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
At-texo. See *texo*, 276.
At-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.
At-tingo. See *tango*, 280.
At-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.
Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 272.
Audio, *parad.*, 211.
Au-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, 269.
Ave, *def.*, 297.
Aveo, ēre, —, 268.

B.

Balbūtio, īre, —, 283.
Bătuo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Bĭbo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Blandior, īri, ītus sum, 226.

C.

Căndo, ĕre, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, 280.
Caecūtio, īre, —, 283.
Caedo, ĕre, cĕcīdi, caesum, 280.
Călesco, ĕre, călui, —, 281.
Calleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Calveo, ēre, —, 268.
Candeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Căneo, ēre, —, 268.
Căno, ĕre, cĕcĭni, cantum, 280.
Căpesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.
Căpio, ĕre, cēpi, captum, 214, 279.
Carpo, ĕre, si, tum, 273.
Căveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum, 270.
Cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 273. III.
Cĕdo, *def.*, 297.
Cello, *obs.* See *excello*, 276. II.
Censeo, ēre, ui, censum, 266. III.
Cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.
Cieo, ēre, cīvi, cītum, 269. 1.
Cingo, ĕre, cinxi, cinctum, 273.
Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.
Clango, ĕre, —, 275.
Claudo, ĕre, clausi, clausum, 273. III.
Claudo, ĕre (*to be lame*), —, 275.
Co-ălesco, ĕre, ălui, ălĭtum, 281.
Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.
Coeno, 262. 2.
Coepi, *def.*, 297.
Cognosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Cōgo, ĕre, coēgi, coactum. See *ăgo*, 279.
Col-līdo. See *laedo*, 273. III.
Col-līgo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Col-lūceo. See *lūceo*, 269.
Cŏlo, ĕre, ui, cultum, 276. II.
Com-ĕdo. See *ĕdo*, 291.
Comminiscor, i, commentus sum, 282.
Com-mŏveo. See *mŏveo*, 270.
Cŏmo, ĕre, compsi, comptum, 273.
Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 280.
Compĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, 284.
Compesco, ĕre, pescui, —, 276. II.
Com-pingo. See *pango*, 280.
Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 282.
Com-pleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 266.
Com-prĭmo. See *prĕmo*, 273. III.
Com-pungo, ĕre, punxi, punctum. See *pungo*, 280.
Con-cīdo. See *cădo*, 280.
Con-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
Con-cĭno. See *căno*, 280.
Con-clūdo. See *claudo*, 273. III.
Con-cŭpisco, ĕre, cŭpīvi, cŭpītum, 281.
Con-cŭtio. See *quătio*, 273. III.
Con-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 284.
Con-fĭcio. See *făcio*, 279.
Confit, *def.*, 297.
Con-fĭteor. See *fāteor*, 272.
Con-fringo. See *frango*, 279.
Congruo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Connīveo, ēre, nīvi, nixi, —, 269.
Con-sĕro. See *sĕro*, 276. II.
Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.
Con-spĭcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, 249.
Con-stĭtuo. See *stătuo*, 273. II.
Con-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Consŭlo, ĕre, ui, tum, 276. II.
Con-temno. See *temno*, 275.
Con-texo. See *texo*, 276.
Con-tingo. See *tango*, 280.
Con-vălesco, ĕre, vălui, vălĭtum, 281.
Cŏquo, ĕre, coxi, coctum, 273. II.
Cor-rĭpio. See *răpio*, 276.
Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.
Crēbresco, ĕre, crēbrui, —, 281.
Crēdo, ĕre, credĭdi, credĭtum, 280.
Crĕpo, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Cresco, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.
Cŭbo, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Cūdo, ĕre, cūdi, cūsum, 273. III.
Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.
Cŭpio, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 249, 276.
Curro, ĕre, cŭcurri, cursum, 280.

D.

Dē-cerpo, ĕre, si, tum, 273. I. 1.
Dĕcet, *impers.*, 299.
Dē-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Dē-fendo, ĕre, i, fensum, 273. III.
Dē-fĕtiscor. See *fătiscor*, 282.
Dēfit, *def.*, 297.
Dĕgo, ĕre, dēgi. See *ăgo*, 279.
Dēleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 266.

Dē-līgo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Dē-mico. See *mĭco*, 262.
Dēmo, ĕre, dempsi, demptum, 273.
Dē-pango. See *pango*, 280.
Dē-primo. See *prĕmo*, 273. III.
Depso, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, tum, 276. II.
De-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.
Dē-silio. See *sălio*, 284.
Dē-sīpio. See *săpio*, 276. III.
Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
Dē-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.
Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.
Dīco, ĕre, dixi, dictum, 273, 237.
Dif-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
Dig-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Dī-ligo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Dimĭco. See *mĭco*, 262.
Dī-rigo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, 273. I. 1.
Disco, ĕre, dĭdĭci, —, 280.
Dis-crĕpo. See *crĕpo*, 262.
Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.
Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 286.
Dis-plĭceo. See *plăceo*, 266.
Dis-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
Di-stinguo. See *stinguo*, 275.
Di-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Dītesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Dīvĭdo, ĕre, vīsi, vīsum, 273. III.
Do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, 264.
Dŏceo, ēre, ui, tum, 266. III.
Dŏmo, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Dūco, ĕre, duxi, ctum, 273, 237.
Dulcesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Dūresco, ĕre, dūrui, —, 281.

E.

Edo, ĕre, ēdi, ēsum, 279, 291.
E-do, ĕre, ēdĭdi, ēdĭtum, 280.
Egeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Elĭcio, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
E-lĭgo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Emĭco. See *mĭco*, 262.
Emĭneo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Emo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, 279.
Enĕco, āre, ui, tum, 262.
Eo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, 295.
Esŭrio, īre, —, ītum, 283.
E-vādo, ĕre, vāsi, vāsum, 273, III.
Evānesco, ĕre, ēvānui, —, 281.
Ex-ardesco, ĕre, arsi, arsum, 281.
Excello, ĕre, ui (rare), —, 276. II.
Ex-clūdo. See *claudo*, 273. III.
Ex-curro. See *curro*, 280.
Ex-ŏlesco. See *ăbŏlesco*, 273. II.
Expĕdit, *impers.*, 301.
Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 282.
Ex-pĕrior, īri, pertus sum, 286.
Ex-pleo. See *compleo*, 266.
Ex-plico. See *plĭco*, 262.
Ex-plōdo. See *plaudo*, 273. III.
Ex-stinguo, ĕre, stinxi, stinctum, 275.
Ex-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.

F.

Făcesso, ĕre, īvi, i, ītum, 276. III.
Făcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, 249, 279, 237.
Fallo, ĕre, fĕfelli, falsum, 280.
Farcio, īre, farsi, fartum, farctum, 284. II.
Fāri, *def.*, 297.
Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 272.
Fātisco, ĕre, —, 281. 3.
Fātiscor, i, —, 282.
Fāveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum, 270.
Fendo, *obs.* See *dēfendo*, 273.
Fĕrio, īre, —, 283.
Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, 292.
Fĕrōcio, īre, —, 283.
Ferveo, ēre, fervi, ferbui, —, 269.
Fīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, 282.
Fīgo, ĕre, fixi, fixum, 273. III.
Findo, ĕre, fĭdi, fissum, 273. III.
Fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum, 273.
Fīo, fĭĕri, factus sum, 294.
Flāveo, ēre, —, 268.
Flecto, ĕre, xi, xum, 273. III.
Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 266.
Flōreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Flōresco, ĕre, flōrui, —, 281.
Fluo, ĕre, fluxi, fluxum, 273. III.
Fŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum, 249, 279.
Foeteo, ēre, —, 268.
Fŏrem, *def.*, 297. III. 2.
Fŏveo, ēre, fōvi, fōtum, 270.
Frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, 279.
Frĕmo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
Frendo, ĕre, —, fressum, frēsum, 273. III.
Frĭco, āre, ui, ātum, tum, 262.
Frīgeo, ēre, frixi (rare), —, 269.
Frondeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.

Fruor, i, fructus, fruĭtus sum, 282.
Fŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, fugĭtum, 249, 279.
Fulcio, īre, fulsi, fultum, 284.
Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269.
Fulmĭnat, *impers.*, 300.
Fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, 279.
Fungor, i, functus sum, 282.
Fŭro, ĕre, ui, —, 276. II.

G.

Gannio, īre, —, 283.
Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 272.
Gĕmo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
Gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum, 273.
Gigno, ĕre, gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, 276. II.
Glisco, ĕre, —, 275.
Grădior, i, gressus sum, 249, 282.
Grandesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Grandĭnat, *impers.*, 300.
Grăvesco, ĕre, —, 281.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269.
Haurio, īre, hausi, haustum, haustūrus, hausūrus, 284.
Hĕbeo, ēre, —, 268.
Hisco, ĕre, —, 275.
Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Hortor, 222.
Hūmeo, ēre, —, 268.

I.

Ico, ĕre, īci, ictum, 273. II.
Illĭcio, ĕre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273. I. 1.
Il-līdo. See *laedo*, 273. III.
Imbuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Immĭneo, ēre, —, 268.
Im-parco. See *parco*, 280.
Im-pertior. See *partior*, 286.
Im-pingo. See *pango*, 280.
In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.
Incesso, ĕre, īvi, i, —, 276. III.
In-cīdo. See *cădo*, 280.
In-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
In-crĕpo. See *crĕpo*, 262.
In-cresco. See *cresco*, 276. II.
In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.
In-cŭtio. See *quătio*, 273. III.
Ind-īgeo, ēre, ui, —. See *ĕgeo*, 267.
Ind-īpiscor. See *ăpiscor*, 282.
In-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Indulgeo, ēre, dulsi, dultum, 269.
Ineptio, īre, —, 283.
Infit, *def.*, 297.
Ingruo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
In-nōtesco, ĕre, nōtui, 281.
In-ŏlesco. See *ăbŏlesco*, 276.
Inquam, *def.*, 297.
In-sīdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
In-spĭcio, ĕre, spexi, spectum, 249.
In-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Intel-līgo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Intĕrest, *impers.*, 301.
Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.
Invĕtĕrasco, ĕre, rāvi, rātum, 276.
Irascor, i, —, 282.
Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.

J.

Jăcio, ĕre, jēci, jactum, 249, 279.
Jŭbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum. 269.
Jūro, 262. 2.
Jŭvĕnesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Jŭvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 263.

L.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, 282.
Lăcesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.
Lăcio, *obs.* See *allĭcio*, 273. I. 2.
Lacteo, ēre, —, 268.
Laedo, ĕre, laesi, laesum, 273. III.
Lambo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Langueo, ēre, i, —, 269.
Lăpĭdat, *impers.*, 300.
Largior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Lăteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Lăvo, ĕre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 263.
Lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, 279.
Lĭbet, *impers.*, 299.
Lĭceor, ēri, ĭtus sum, 272.
Lĭcet, *impers.*, 299.
Lĭno, ĕre, līvi, lēvi, lĭtum, 276. II.
Linquo, ĕre, līqui, —, 279.
Lĭqueo, ēre, līqui (licui), 269.
Lĭquet, *impers.*, 299.
Līquor, i, —, 282.

Līveo, ēre, —, 268.
Lŏquor, i, lŏcūtus sum, 282.
Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.
Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.
Lūdo, ĕre, lūsi, lūsum, 273. III.
Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.
Luo, ĕre, lui, —, 274.

M.

Macresco, ĕre, macrui, —, 281.
Mădeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Mădesco, ĕre, mădui, —, 281.
Maereo, ēre, —, 268.
Mălo, malle, mălui, —, 293.
Mando, ĕre, i, mansum, 273. III.
Măneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269.
Mātūresco, ĕre, mātūrui, —, 281.
Mĕdeor, ēri, —, 272.
Mĕmĭni, *def.*, 297.
Mentior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Mĕreor, ēri, ĭtus sum, 272.
Mergo, ĕre, mersi, mersum, 273. III.
Mētior, īri, mensus sum, 286.
Mĕto, ĕre, messui, messum, 276. II.
Mĕtuo, ĕre, ui, —, 274.
Mĭco, āre, ui, —, 262.
Mĭniscor, *obs.* See *commĭniscor*, 282.
Mĭnuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 266. III.
Mĭsĕreor, ēri, ĭtus *or* tus sum, 272.
Mĭsĕret, *impers.*, 299.
Mĭtesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 273. III.
Mōlior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Mollesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Mŏlo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
Mŏneo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, *parad.*, 207.
Mordeo, ēre, mŏmordi, morsum, 271.
Mŏrior, i (iri), mortuus sum, 249, 282.
Mŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270.
Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.
Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.

N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 282.
Nascor, i, nātus sum, 282.
Necto, ĕre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 273. III.
Neg-lĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Neo, ĕre, nēvi, nētum, 266.
Nĕqueo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, 296.
Nigresco, ĕre, nigrui, —, 281.
Ningo, ĕre, ninxi, —, 274.
Nĭteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Nītor, i, nīsus, nixus sum, 282.
Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.
Nosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum, 277.
Nūbo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum, 273.
Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 274.
Nuptūrio, īre, īvi, —, 283. 2.

O.

Ob-do. See *abdo* 280.
Ob-dormisco, ĕre, dormīvi, dormītum, 281.
Oblīviscor, i, oblītus sum, 282.
Ob-mūtesco, ĕre, mūtui, —, 281.
Ob-sīdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
Ob-sŏlesco. See *ăbŏlesco*, 276.
Ob-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Ob-surdesco, ĕre, surdui, —, 281.
Ob-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.
Oc-cīdo. See *cădo*, 280.
Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
Oc-cĭno. See *căno*, 280.
Oc-cĭpio. See *căpio*, 279.
Occŭlo, ĕre, ui, tum, 276. II.
Odi, *def.*, 297.
Of-fendo. See *dĕfendo*, 273. III.
Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Olesco, *obsolete.* See *ăbŏlesco*, 276. II.
Opĕrio, īre, ui, tum, 284.
Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
Op-pĕrior, īri, pertus, perītus sum, 286.
Ordior, īri, orsus sum, 286.
Orior, īri, ortus sum, 286.
Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
Ovat, *def.*, 297.

P.

Păciscor, i, pactus sum, 282.
Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Pando, ĕre, i, pansum, passum, 273. III.
Pango, ĕre, pĕpĭgi, pactum, 280.
Pango, ĕre, panxi, pĕgi, panctum, pactum, 280.

Parco, ĕre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, 280.
Părio, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum, 249, 280.
Partior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Partŭrio, īre, īvi, —, 283. 2.
Pasco, ĕre, pāvi, pastum, 276.
Păteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Pătior, i, passus sum, 225, 249, 282.
Păveo, ēre, pāvi, —, 270.
Pecto, ĕre, xi, xum, 273. III.
Pel-lĭcio, ĕre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273. I. 2.
Pello, ĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 280.
Pendeo, ēre, pĕpendi, pensum, 271.
Pendo, ĕre, pĕpendi, pensum, 280.
Per-cello. See *excello*, 276. II.
Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.
Per-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. See *abdo*, 280.
Pergo (*for* per-rĭgo), ĕre, per-rexi, per-rectum. See *rĕgo*, 273.
Per-pĕtior. See *pătior*, 282.
Per-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Per-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.
Pessum-do. See *do*, 264.
Pĕto, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.
Pĭget, *impers.*, 299.
Pingo, ĕre, pinxi, pictum, 273.
Pinguesco, ĕre, —, 281.
Pinso (pīso), ĕre, i, ui, pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum, 273. III.
Plaudo, ĕre, si, sum, 273. III.
Plecto, ĕre, xi, xum, 273. III.
Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *amplector*, 282.
Pleo, *obsolete.* See *compleo*, 266.
Plĭco, āre, āvi, ui, ātum, ĭtum, 262.
Pluo, ĕre, i *or* vi, —, 274.
Poenĭtet, *impers.*, 299.
Polleo, ēre, —, 268.
Pollĭceor, ēri, ĭtus sum, 272.
Pōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, 276. II.
Posco, ĕre, pŏposci, —, 280.
Pos-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
Possum, posse, pŏtui, —, 289.
Pŏtior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum, um, 262. 1, 2.
Prae-cĭno. See *căno*, 280.
Prae-curro. See *curro*, 280.
Prae-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
Prae-sto. See *sto*, 264.
Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.
Prandeo, ēre, i, pransum, 269.
Prehendo, ĕre, i, hensum, 273. III.
Prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, 273. III.
Prōd-ĭgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
Prō-do. See *abdo*, 280.
Prŏfĭciscor, i, prŏfectus sum, 282.
Prŏ-fĭteor. See *fătĕor*, 272.
Prōmo, ĕre, prompsi, promptum, 273.
Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, 290.
Prō-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.
Psallo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Pŭdet, *impers.*, 299.
Puĕrasco, ĕre, —, 281.
Pungo, ĕre, pŭpŭgi, punctum, 280.

Q.

Quaero, ĕre, quaesīvi, quaesītum, 276. III.
Quaeso, *def.*, 297.
Quătio, ĕre, quassi, quassum, 249, 273. III.
Queo, īre, īvi, ītum, 296.
Quĕror, i, questus sum, 282.
Quiesco, ĕre, quiēvi, quiētum, 276. II.

R.

Rādo, ĕre, rāsi, rāsum, 273. III.
Răpio, ĕre, răpui, raptum, 249, 276.
Raucio, īre, rausi, rausum, 284.
Rĕ-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.
Re-crūdesco, ĕre, crūdui, 281.
Rĕd-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.
Red do. See *abdo*, 280.
Rĕ-fello. See *fallo*, 280.
Rĕfĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
Rĕfert, *impers.*, 301.
Rĕgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, *parad.*, 209, 273.
Rĕ-linquo. See *linquo*, 279.
Rĕmĭniscor, i, —, 282.
Rĕnīdeo, ēre, —, 268.
Reor, rēri, rātus sum, 272.
Rĕ-pango. See *pango*, 280.
Rĕ-parco. See *parco*, 280.
Rĕ-pĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, 284.
Rĕ-sīdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.
Rĕ-sĭpio. See *săpio*, 276. III.
Rĕ-sŏno. See *sŏno*, 262.
Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 273. III.
Rĕ-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Rĕ-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.
Rĕ-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.
Rĕ-vivisco, ĕre, vixi, victum, 281.
Rideo, ēre, rīsi, rīsum, 269.
Rigeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Ringor, i, —, 282.
Rōdo, ĕre, rōsi, rōsum, 273. III.
Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
Rŭbeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Rŭdo, ĕre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.
Rumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, 279.
Ruo, ĕre, rui, rŭtum, ruĭtūrus, 273. II.

S.

Săgio, īre, —, 283.
Sălio, īre, ui (ii), tum, 284.
Salve, *def.*, 297.
Sancio, īre, sanxi, sancītum, sanctum, 284.
Săpio, ĕre, īvi, ui, —, 249, 276.
Sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum, 284.
Săt-ăgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
Scăbo, ĕre, scābi, —, 279.
Scalpo, ĕre, psi, ptum, 273.
Scando, ĕre, di, sum, 273. III.
Scăteo, ēre, —, 268.
Scindo, ĕre, scĭdi, scissum, 273. III.
Scisco, ĕre, scīvi, scītum, 281.
Sĕco, āre, ui, tum, 262.
Sĕdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 270.
Sē-lĭgo. See *lĕgo*, 279.
Sentio, īre, sensi, sensum, 284.
Sĕpĕlio, īre, īvi, sepultum, 283.
Sēpio, īre, psi, ptum, 284.
Sĕquor, i, sĕcūtus sum, 224.
Sĕro, ĕre, sēvi, sătum, 276. II.
Sĕro, ĕre, serui, sertum, 276. II.
Sīdo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Sīleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Singultio, īre, —, 283.
Sĭno, ĕre, sīvi, sĭtum, 276. III.
Sisto, ĕre, stĭti, stătum, 280.
Sĭtio, īre, īvi, —, 283.
Sŏleo, ēre, solĭtus sum, 272.
Solvo, ĕre, solvi, sŏlūtum, 273. II.
Sŏno, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Sorbeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Sordeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Sortior, īri, ītus sum, 286.
Spargo, ĕre, sparsi, sparsum, 273. III.
Spĕcio, *obs.* See *aspĭcio*.
Sperno, ĕre, sprēvi, sprētum, 276. II.
Splendeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Spondeo, ēre, spŏpondi, sponsum, 271.
Squăleo, ēre, —, 268.
Stătuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Sterno, ĕre, strāvi, strātum, 276.
Sternuo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Sterto, ĕre, ui, —, 276. II.
Stinguo, ĕre, —, 275.
Sto, āre, stĕti, stātum, 264.
Strĕpo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
Strīdeo, ēre, strīdi, —, 269.
Strīdo, ĕre, i, —, 274.
Struo, ĕre, struxi, structum, 273. II.
Stŭdeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Stŭpeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Suādeo, ēre, si, sum, 269.
Sub-do, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 280.
Sŭb-ĭgo. See *ăgo*, 279.
Sub-sĭlio. See *sălio*, 284.
Suc-cēdo. See *cēdo*, 273.
Suc-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.
Suc-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.
Suc-cĭdo. See *cădo*, 280.
Suc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.
Suc-cresco. See *cresco*, 276. II.
Suesco, ĕre, suēvi, suētum, 276. II.
Suf-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
Suf-fĭcio. See *făcio*, 279.
Suf-fŏdio. See *fŏdio*, 279.
Sug-gĕro. See *gĕro*, 273.
Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.
Sūmo, ĕre, psi, ptum, 273.
Sŭperbio, īre, —, 283.
Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.
Surgo (*for* sur-rĭgo), ĕre, sur-rexi, sur-rectum. See *rĕgo*, 273.

T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
Tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, 280.
Temno, ĕre, —, 275.
Tendo, ĕre, tĕtendi, tentum, tensum, 280.
Tĕneo, ēre, ui, tum, 266. III.
Tĕpesco, ĕre, tĕpui, —, 281.
Tergeo, ēre, tersi, tersum, 269.
Tergo, ĕre, tersi, tersum, 273. III.
Tĕro, ĕre, trīvi, trītum, 276. III.

Texo, ĕre, ui, tum, 276. II.
Tĭmeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublātum, 280.
Tondeo, ēre, tŏtondi, tonsum, 271.
Tŏno, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Torpeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Torqueo, ēre, torsi, tortum, 269.
Torreo, ēre, torrui, tostum, 266. III.
Trādo. See *abdo*, 280.
Traho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, 273.
Trĕmo, ĕre, ui, —, 276. II.
Trĭbuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.
Trūdo, ĕre, trūsi, trūsum, 273. III.
Tueor, ēri, tuĭtus sum, 272.
Tŭmeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Tundo, ĕre, tŭtŭdi, tunsum, tūsum, 280.
Tuor, for *tueor*, 272.
Turgeo, ēre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.
Tussio, īre, —, 283.

U.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 282.
Urgeo, ēre, ursi, —, 269.
Uro, ĕre, ussi, ustum, 273.
Utor, i, ūsus sum, 282.

V.

Vādo, ĕre, —, 275.
Vāgio, īre, īvi, —, 283.
Vĕgeo, ēre, —, 268.
Veho, ĕre, vexi, vectum, 273.
Vello, ĕre, velli (vulsi), vulsum, 273. III.
Vendo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 280.
Vĕn-eo. See *eo*, 295.
Vĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum, 285.
Vĕnum-do. See *do*, 264.
Vĕreor, ēri, verĭtus sum, 223, 272.
Vergo, ĕre, —, 275.
Verro, ĕre, verri, versum, 273. III.
Verto, ĕre, ti, sum, 273. III.
Vertor. See *dēvertor*, 273. III.
Vescor, i, —, 282.
Vespĕrascit, *impers.*, 300.
Vĕtĕrasco, ĕre, rāvi, —, 276.
Vĕto, āre, ui, ĭtum, 262.
Vīdeo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 270.
Vieo, ēre, —, ētum, 266. I. 2.
Vĭgeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Vilesco, ĕre, vilui, —, 281.
Vincio, īre, vinxi, vinctum, 284.
Vinco, ĕre, vīci, victum, 279.
Vĭreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.
Vĭresco, ĕre, vĭrui, —, 281.
Vīso, ĕre, i, um, 273. III.
Vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, 273.
Vŏlo, velle, vŏlui, —, 293.
Volvo, ĕre, volvi, vŏlūtum, 273. II.
Vŏmo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.
Vŏveo, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, 270.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction, *w.* = with, *ff.* = and the following, *compds.* = compounds, *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive, *gend.* = gender, *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative, *accs.* = accusatives, *adjs.* = adjectives, *prepa.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index, with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. in the formation of the genitive and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55–115.

A SOUND of, 6 ff., 14. Nouns in *a*,—of 1st dec., 42; of 3d dec., 48; genitive of, 58; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in nom., accus., voc. plur., 88; in acc. sing., 93; changed in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity of, —final, 615; in increments of dec., 633; of conj., 640.

A, ab, abs, in compds., 338, 1; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A, ab, abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, 1, in personification, 414, 6.

Abbreviations, 719.

Abhinc, 427.

Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 87, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in adjs., 156.

Ablative, syntax of, 412–437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 414, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of differ., 418. In special constrs., 419; 385, 5; 386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of place, 420 ff. Of source, 425. Of time, 426. Of charac., 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds, etc., 566. Of supine, 570.

Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4.

Absque, w. abl., 434.

Abstineo, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.

Abstract nouns, 31; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 2.

Abunde, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

-abus, for *is*, in 1st dec., 42, 3.

Ac, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.

Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.

Accēdit, constr., 556, II. 1.

Accentuation, 25 ff.

Accĭdit, constr., 556, II.

Accingo, constr., 374, 7.

Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.

Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.

Accusative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; 46, 3; in 3d dec., 85, 88, 98; in adjectives, 157.

Accusative, syntax of, 370–381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3); w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379,

poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Acephalous verse, 663, III.
-aceus, adjs. in, 324.
Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
Ad, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *Ad*, w. acc., 433.
-ades, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
Adhuc locorum, 396, 2, 4) (4).
Adipiscor, w. gen., 409, 3.
Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Formation of cases, 154 ff., irreg., 159. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
Admisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Admŏneo, constr., 410, 3.
Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Adolescens, compared, 168, 3.
Adonic verse, 677, III.
Adulor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
Advantage, dat. of, 385.
Adverbial acc., 377.
Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 4. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
Adversative conjs., 310; 587, III.
Adversative sentence, 360.
Adversus, w. accus., 433.
Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
Ae, sound of, 9, 15; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
Aedes, sing. and plur., 132.
Aeger, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aemulus, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
Aeneas, decl. of, 43.
Aequi boni facere, 402, 3.
Aër, *aether*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
-aeus, adjs. in, 326.
Affatim, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Afficio, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
Affinis, w. gen., 399, (3).
Age, expression of, 417, 3.
Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 1; Dat. of, 388.
Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gend. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gend. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
-aī, for *ae*, 42, 3; quant. of, 612, 1.
-al, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 64, 87, 89.
Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
Alienus, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
Aliquantus, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
-alis, adjs. in, 325.
Alius,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; w. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius—alius*, 459; *alius—alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Alphabet, 2 ff.
Alter,—Decl. 149. Indef., 191, 2; *alteruter*, 191, 2; *alter—alter*, 459; *alter—alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Altercor, w. dat., 385, 5.
Alvus, gender of, 47.
Ambi, *amb*., 338, 2.
Ambo, decl. of, 176, 2.
Amphora, 716.
Amplius without *quam*, 417, 3.

An, annon, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).
Anacoluthon, 704, III. 4.
Anapaestic verse, 678.
Anaphora, 704, II. 3.
Anastrophe, 704, IV. 1.
Animi, constr., 399, 3. 4).
Ante, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.
Antecedent, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.
Antequam, w. indic. or subj., 523.
Antimeria, 704, III. 1.
Antithesis, 703, 8.
-anus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Anxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aphaeresis, 703, 1.
Apocope, 703, 3.
Aposiopesis, 704, I. 3.
Appendix, 702–720.
Appositive,—Agreement of, 363; in gend. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.
Aptus, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Apud, w. accus., 429.
-ar, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 66, 87, 89.
Arceo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Archilochian verse, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.
Arenae, gen. of place, 424, 3.
-aris, adjs. in, 325.
Aristophanic, 691, III.
-arium, nouns in, 317.
-arius, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.
Arrangement,—Of Words, 592–602, —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words, —Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603–606, —Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.
Arsis and thesis, 660.
As and its divisions, 712.
-as, nouns in, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 50; genit. of, 68; gend. of, 105.
-as, for *ae* in gen., 42, 3; in Greek acc. plur., 98; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.
Asclepiadēan verse, 689, III.; greater, IV.
-asco, inceptives in, 332, II.
Asking, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Aspergo, constr., 384, 1.
Aspirated letters, 4, 3.
-asso, assim, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.
Asyndeton, 704, I. 1.
-atim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
Atque, for *quam*, 417, 4.
Attraction, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.
Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-atus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Au, 9, 15; changed, 341, 3.
Audio, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).
Audiens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Aureus, the coin, 712.
Autem, place of, 602, III.
Authority, long or short by, 609, 2.
Authors, Latin, 706.
Avidus, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.
-ax, genit. of nouns in, 77; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.

B CHANGED to *p*, 248.
Being angry, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Being distant, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Belli, constr., 424, 2.
Bene, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bibi, quantity of, 651, 2.
-bilis, verbals in, 328.
Bonus, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.
Bos, gen. of, 72, 6; gen. plur., 89, III.; dat., abl., 90, 2.
Brachycatalectic, 663, III.
Brazen age, 706, III.

-brum, nouns in, 320.
-bs, genit. of nouns in, 75.
Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.
-bulum, nouns in, 320.
-bundus, verbals in, 328.

C SOUND of, 11 ff. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 63; gend., 111.
C, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.
Calendar, Roman, 707.
Calends, 708, I. 1.
Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
-canus, adjs. in, 326, 2.
Caput, genit. of, 67; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.
Carbasus, gend. of, 47.
Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.
Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 38, 2; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45; in 3d dec., 52; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; comparative view of, 121; general endings, 123. Formation of, in 3d dec.,—nom. sing., 55; gen., 56 ff.; dat., 84; acc., 85; voc., 86; abl., 87; nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88; gen., 89; dat. and abl., 90. Greek cases,—gen. sing., 92; acc., 93; voc., 94; nom. and voc. plur., 95; gen., 96; dat. and abl., 97; acc., 98. Cases of adjs. of 3d dec., 154–158.
Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.
Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Causa, gratia, 414, 2, 3).
Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.
Causal sentences, 360.
Cause, abl. of, 414.
Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod, quia, quoniam, quando*, 520; *dum, donec, quoad*, 522; *antequam, priusquam*, 523.
Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.
Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
Cave, w. subj. for imperat., 535, 1.
Caveo, constr., 385, 3.
-ce, appended, 186, 1.
Celo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
-cen, compounds in, 339, 2.
-ceps, genit. of nouns and adjs. in, 75, 1; 155, 3.
Certo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Certus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Ch, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.
Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.
Choliambus, 683, 4.
Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Choriambic verse, 689 ff.
Cingo, constr. of, 374, 7.
-cio, derivatives in, 315, 5.
Circa, circiter, w. acc., 433.
Circum, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circumdo, circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.
Cis, citra, w. acc., 433.
Citerior, compared, 166.
Citum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Clam, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 35. Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.
Coelum, plur. *coeli*, 143, 1.
Cognate accus., 371, 1.
Coins, Roman, 712.
-cola, compounds in, 339, 2.
Collective nouns, 31.
Colus, gender of, 47.
Com, con for *cum*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386.
Combined objects, 354, 3.
Comitor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.
Common nouns, 31; com. quantity, 23.
Commoneo, commonefacio, constr., 410, 3.
Communis, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.

Commuto, constr. of, 416, 2.
Comparative conjs., 311; 588, II.
Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.
Comparative view,—of decl., 121–123; of conjugation, 243 ff.
Comparison,—of adjs., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.; adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.
Compleo, constr., 410, 7.
Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.
Compos, genit. of, 155; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.
Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 259 ff.: comp. adverbs, 342. Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Comp. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1–3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6.
Computation of money, 713.
Con, see *com*.
Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Concedo, constr., 551, II. 2.
Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.
Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588, IV.
Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.
Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513; in oratio obliqua, 533, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.
Conditional sentences, 502 ff.
Confido, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.
Conjugation, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 261 ff.; second, 207 ff., 266 ff.; third, 209 ff., 273 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 283 ff.; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 213. Periphrastic, 227 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff.; one general system, 244. Vowel conj., 278. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 287 ff.; of defect., 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.
Conjunctions, 308; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.
Conscius, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.
Conscius mihi sum, constr., 551, 3.
Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.
Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 16.
Consors, w. gen., 399, (3).
Constituo, constr., 558, II.
Consuetudo, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.
Consulo, constr., 385, 3.
Consultus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Contentus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Contingit, constr., 556, II.
Contra, w. accus., 433.
Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.
Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.
Contrarius, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Coördinate conjunctions, 309.
Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587. Copul. sentences, 360.
Coram, w. abl., 434.
Countries, gender of names of, 35.
-crum, nouns in, 320.
Cuicuimodi, 187, 7.
Cujas, 185, 3; 188, 4.
Cujus, 185, 3; 187, 3; 188, 4; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscemodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 7; *cujusdummodi*, 191, 4.
-culum, nouns in, 320.
-culus, cula, culum, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
Cum, appended, 184, 6; 187, 2;

cum, *com*, in compds., 338, 1. *Cum*, w. abl., 434.
-cundus, verbals in, 328.
Cuncti, *omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
Cupidus, w. gen., 399, 2.
Cupiens, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
Cupio, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

D, DROPPED before *s*, 55, 3; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylico-iambic, 693.
Dama, gend. of, 44.
Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.
Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 84, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119, 4.
Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and disadvant., 385. W. compds., 386. Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390. W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv., 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W. verbs of Separ. 425, 2, 3).
Dătum, quantity of, 651, 3.
De, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De* w. abl., 434.
Decerno, constr., 558, II.
Decipio, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.
Declarative sentence, 346.
Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Declension, 39; first, 42; second, 45; third, 48; fourth, 116; second and fourth, 117; fifth, 119. Comparative view of decl., 121; one general system of decl., 122. Decl. of compds., 125.
Dĕdi, quantity of, 651, 2.
Dedoceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Defective nouns, 119, 5; 129; def. adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166; def. verbs, 297.
Deliberative questions, w. the subj., 486, II.
Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.
Denarius, 712.
Deponent verbs, 221; 465, 2.
Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.; of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 330 ff.; of adverbs, 333 ff.
Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quantity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.
Desideratives, 332, III.
Desino, w. gen., 409, 4.
Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in asseverations, 488, 4; in relat. clauses, 488, 5.
Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Desisto, w. gen., 409, 4.
Despero, w. acc., 371, 3.
Deterior, compared, 166.
Deterreo, constr., 499, 1–2.
Deus, 45, 6.
Diaeresis, 669, III.
Diana, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diastole, 669, IV.
Dic for *dice*, 237.
-dicus, compds. in compared, 164.
Difference, abl. of, 418.
Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.
Differo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dignor, constr., 419, 2.
Dignus, constr., 419; *dignus*, *qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Dimeter, 663, 2.
Diminutive, nouns, 315; dim. adjs., 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.
Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 610.
Dipody, 656, 2.
Direct object, 354, 1; 371.
Dis, *di*, 338, 2.
Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.
Discrepo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sentences, 360.
Dispar, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Dissentio, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dissimilis, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quantity of, 651.
Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.
Distich, 666.
Disto, w. dat., 385, 4.
Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of, 179.
Diu, compared, 305, 4.
Dius, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diversus, compared, 167.
Dives, compared, 165, 2.

Doceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Doleo, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
Domus, decl. of, 117; gend., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Donec, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Dono, constr., 384, 1.
Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.
Double consonants, 3.
Duc for *duce*, 377.
Dum, *duminodo*, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.
Duo, decl. of, 176.

E SOUND of, 6, 14. Nouns in *e*,—1st dec., 43 ff.; 3d dec., 48, 50; genit. of, 59; 89, 1; abl. of, 87, 1; gend., 111. *E* in abl., 87; in Greek acc. plur., 98; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 119, 4; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
E, quantity of—in *ei*, 119, 1; final, 616; in increments of decl., 635; of conjugation, 641.
E or *ex*, see *ex*.
Ecce with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, 346, II. 2.
Edoceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Egenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.
Egeo, constr., 409, 1.
Ego, decl. of, 184.
Eheu, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ei, 9. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.
-ēius, in patronymics, 316.
-eius, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ejusmodi, 186, 4.
-ela, nouns in, 320, 7.
Elegiac distich, 676, 2.
Elegiambus, 693, 1.
Elements of sentences, 347 ff.
Ellipsis, 704, of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3; 602, II. 3.
-ellus, ella, ellum, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.
-em, in accus., 85, 119.
Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
Emphasis and euphony in the arrangement of words, 594.
-en, nouns in, 51; **en** in Greek acc., 93; with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
Enallage, 704, III.
Enclitics, accent of, 26, (a); quantity of, 613, 1.
Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
Endings, 41; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45, 1; in 3d dec., 52, 2; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; in the five decls., 121, 123; in comparison, 162; in conjugation, 242.
English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.
Enim, place of, 602, III.
-ensis, adjs. in, 325 ff.
-entior, entissimus, in comparison, 164.
Envying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Eo, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).
Epenthesis, 703, 5.
Epicene nouns, 36.
Epichoriambic verse, 690.
Epiphora, 704, II. 4.
Epitome, decl. of, 43.
Epulum, plur., *epulae*, 143.
-er, gend. of nouns in, 47, 103. Adjs. in, 151; comparison of, 163, 1. Adverbs in, 335.
-ere, for *erunt*, 235.
Erga, w. acc., 433.
Ergo, w. gen., 411.
-ernus, adjs. in, 325, 2.
-es, nouns in, 50, 119; genitive of, 69; gender of, 104, 109, 119. *es*, in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.
-es, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity of, 624.
-esco, inceptives in, 332, II.
-esso, essim, in fut., perf., and perf. subj., 239, 4. *esso*, verbs in, 332.
-ester, adjs. in, 325, 2.
-estus, adjs. in, 323, 3.
Ethical dative, 389.
Etiamsi, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.
-etum, nouns in, 317.
Etymology 29–342.
Eu, sound of, 9.
Euphonic changes, 55, 3; before *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 248; 257, 1; in prepositions, 338, 1.
Euphony, see *Emphasis*.
-eus, adjs. in, 324, 326.
Evenit, constr., 556, II.
-ex, genit. of nouns in, 78.

Ex, *e*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *Ex*, w. abl., 434.
Exchanging, constr. of verbs of, 416, 2.
Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.; accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.
Exoro, constr., 374, 2.
Expers, *exsors*, w. gen., 399, (3).
Exterus, compared, 163, 3.
Extra, w. acc., 433.
Extremum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Exuo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.

FAC, for *face*, 237.
Facio, w. pred. gen., 403.
Falsum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Falsus, compared, 167.
Fames, abl. *famē*, 137, 2.
Familia, genitive of, 42, 3.
Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.
Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
Feet, metrical, 656 ff.
Feminine, 33.
Fer, for *fere*, 237.
Fertilis, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, (2) and 5.
-fex, compds. in, 339, 2.
-ficus, adjs. in, compared, 164.
Fido, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.
Figures—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.
Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
Final conjs., 311; 588, V.
Final syllables, quantity of, 613 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.
Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.
Fio, quantity of, 612, 3.
Fit, constr., 556, II.
Flagito, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Foci, gen. of place, 424, 3.
Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Formation,—of cases, 55–98; of parts of verbs, 240–260; of words, 313–342.
Fractions, 174, 1.
Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
Frenum, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.
Frequentatives, 332.
Fretus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Frugi, in decl., 159; compared, 165.
Fruor, constr., 419.
Fungor, constr., 419.
Future, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.
Future Perfect, 197; 241, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.
Futurum esse, *fuisse*, *fore*, *ut*, 544, 1–3.
Futurum sit ut, 481, III. 1 and 2.

G, SOUND of, 11 ff.; changed, 248.
Gaudeo, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.
Gemo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Gems, gender of names of, 47.
Gender, 33 ff.; in 1st dec., 44; in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 119; general table of, 124.
Genitive, formation of,—endings, 40; in 1st dec., 42; *as* for *ae*, *um* for *arum*, 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; *i* for *ii*, *um* for *orum*, 45, 5; *o* or *on*, 46, 3; in 3d dec., 56–83, 89, 96; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 119, 4. In adjectives, 155.
Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. Of place, 404; 421, II. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.
Genitus, w. abl., 425, 3.
Gentile nouns, 326, 3.
Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W.

direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.
Gloriosum est, 556, I. 2.
Glyconic verse, 664, 689.
Gnarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Golden age, 706.
Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 43; in 2d dec., 46; in 3d dec., 91–98.

H, A BREATHING, 2.
Hadria, gender of, 44.
Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.
Haud, *ne*, *non*, 584.
Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.
Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.
Hephthemimeris, 656, 2.
Heroic verse, 664.
Heteroclites, 135 ff.
Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.
Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.
Hic, *iste*, *ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Hic (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Hipponactean, 683, 4.
Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.
Hŏdie, quantity of, 654, 8.
Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.
Horreo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Huc, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Hujusmodi, 186, 4.
Humus, gender of, 47; constr. of *humi*, 424, 2.
Hypallage, 704, III. 2.
Hyperbaton, 704, IV.
Hyperbole, 705, V.
Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.
Hypermeter, 663, III.
Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.
Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

I, SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 14 ff.; with the sound of *y*, 9; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 45, 5. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 60; gender of, 111; *i*, final in dat., 84; in abl., 87; for *is*, 92; for *ei*, 119, 4; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643.
-ia, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.
-iacus, adjs. in, 326.
-iades, in patronymics, 316.
Iambelegus, 694, 1.
Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Trimeter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.
Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.
-ianus, adjs. in, 326.
-ias, in patronymics, 316.
-ibam, for *iebam*, 239, 1.
-ibo, **ibor**, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.
-ibus, in dat. and abl. plur., 90.
-icius, adjs. in, 324, 328.
Ictus, 659.
-icus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Idem, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem—qui*, *ac* or *atque*, 451, 5.
Ides, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.
-ides, in patronymics, 316.
-ido, nouns in, 320, 7.
Idoneus qui, w. subj., 501, III.
-idus, verbals in, 328.
-iensis, adjs. in, 326.
-ier, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.
Igitur, place in the clause, 602, III.
Ignarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
-igo, nouns in, 320, 7.
-ile, nouns in, 317.
-ilis, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.
Illative conjs., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.
Ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Illic for *ille*, 186, 2.
Illiusmodi, 186, 4.
-illo, verbs in, 332, IV.
-illus, **illa**, **illum**, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327.

-im, in acc., 85, 93; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.
Immemor, genit. of, 155, 4; gen. plur., 158, 3; w. gen., 399, 2.
-imonia, nouns in, 319.
Impedio, constr., 499, 1–2.
Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535 ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.
Imperative sentences, 346, III.
Imperfect tense, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
Imperitus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Impero, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.–III.
Impertio, constr., 384, 1.
Impleo, constr., 410, 7.
Impos, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
Impotens, w. gen., 399, (3).
Imprudens, w. gen., 399, (2).
-in, in Greek accs., 93.
In, in compds., 338, 1; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
Incertus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
Inclutus, compared, 167.
Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 35; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
Indefinite moods, 196.
Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
Index of verbs, 721.
Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
Indigeo, constr., 409, 1.
Indignus, w. abl., 419, IV. *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.
Indirect object; 354, 2.Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.
Indirect questions, 524 ff.,—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
Induco, constr., 374, 7.
Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Induo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
-ine, in patronymics, 316, 4.
Inferus, compared, 163, 3.
Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, V.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
Infra, w. acc., 433.
Ingenii, w. adjs., 399, 3.
Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Innitor, constr., 419.
Inops, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
Inscius, w. gen., 399, (2).
Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
Inspergo, constr., 384, 1.
Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
Insuetus, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
Integer, w. gen., 399, 3.
Inter, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.
Intercludo, constr., 384, 1.
Interest, w. gen., 406, III.
Interior, compared, 166.
Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 589 ff.
Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
Interrogative sentences,—Form, 346, II. Interrog. words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber. quest., 486, II. Answers, 346. II.

3. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical ques., 530, 2.
Interrogo, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2–3.
Intra, w. accus., 433.
Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.
-inus, adjs. in, 324 ff.
Invidus, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
Invitus, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
-io, verbs of 3d conj. in, 213 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.
Ionic verse, 687.
-ior, in comparatives, 162.
Ipse, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.
Ipsus, for *ipse*, 186, 3.
Iron age, 706.
Irony, 705, IV. in condition, 503, 3.
Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.
Irregular principal parts of verbs, 249–258; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.
Is, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 448. *Is—qui*, 451, 4.
-is, in dat. and abl. of the 1st and 2d decls., 42, 45; in genit. of 3d dec., 52; in acc., dat., and abl. plur., 88, III.; 90. Nouns in *is*, 50; genitive of, 71; gender of, 106.
-is, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.
-isco, inceptives in, 332, II.
Islands, gend. of names of, 35; constr. of names of, 424.
-issimus, in superlatives, 162.
-isso, verbs in, 332.
Iste, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
Istic, isthic, for *iste*, 186, 2.
Istiusmodi, 186, 4.
-itas, nouns in, 319.
-iter, adverbs in, 335.
Ithyphalicus, 681, 2.
-itia, nouns in, 319.
-itimus, adjs. in, 325, 2.
-itium, nouns in, 318.
-ito, frequentatives in, 332.
-itudo, nouns in, 319.
Itum, quantity of, 651, 3.
-itus, nouns in, 318; adverbs in, 335, 3.
-ium, in genit. plur., 89; nouns in, 318 ff.
-ius, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.
-ivus, adjs. in, 328, 5.
-ix, genitive of nouns in, 79.

J, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; lengthens preceding vowel, 611.
Jecur, genitive of, 66, 5.
Jesus, decl. of, 128, 1, 3).
Jocus, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.
Jubeo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
Jugerum, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.
Jugum, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.
Jungo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Jupiter, genitive of, 66, 3.
Jusjurandum, decl. of, 126.
Juvenal, versification of, 696.
Juvenalis, abl. of, 87, 2.
Juvenis, abl. of, 87, 2; compared, 168, 3.
Juvo, w. accus., 385, 1.
Juxta, w. accus., 433.

K, RARE, 2.
Knowing, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.

L, NOUNS in, 48, 51; genit. of, 64; gender, 112; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Labials, 3.
Lacrimo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Laedo, w. accus., 385, 1.
Lar, quantity of genit., 633, 4.
Lassus, w. gen., 399, 3.
Latin authors, 706.
Latin grammar, 1.
Latin period, 605.
-lentus, adjs. in, 328.
Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 5–16.
Libero, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.
Libra, 714.
Licet, w. subj., 515.
Linguals, liquids, 3.
Litotes, 705, VI.
Litum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Logaoedic verse, 691.
Longius, without *quam*, 417, 3.
-ls, genit. of nouns in, 76.

M, EUPHONIC changes of, 248, 338, 1; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

-ma, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 90, 1.
Magis, maxime, in adverbial comparison, 170.
Magnus, compared, 165.
Major, in expressions of age, 417, 3.
Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. subj., 558, IV.
Malo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
Malus, compared, 165.
Manifestus, w. gen., 399, 3.
Manner, means, abl. of, 414; participle for, 578, II.
Masculine, 33.
Material nouns, 31.
Me, for *mihi*, 184, 5.
Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.
Med, mehe, for *me*, 184, 5.
Medeor, w. dat., 385, 2.
Medius, designating part, 441, 6.
Melius, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2–4.
Melos, plur. of, 95, 1.
Meme, 184, 6.
Memini, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.
Memor, w. gen., 399, 2).
-men, mentum, nouns in, 320.
Mensa, decl. of, 42.
Mepte, 184, 5.
-met, forms in, 184, 3; 185, 1.
Metaphor, 705, I.
Metathesis, 703, 7.
Metonymy, 705, II.
Metre, 667.
Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.
-metros, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Metuo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
Meus, decl., 185.
Mi for *mihi*, 184, 5.
Militia, constr., 424, 2.
Mille, decl. and use of, 178.
Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.
Million sesterces, Latin for, 718, 4.
-mino, in imperatives, 239, 5.
Minor, minus, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Miror, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4.
Mirum est, constr. of, 556, I. 2.
Mis for *mei*, 184, 5.
Misceo, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.
Misereor, misereseo, w. gen., 406.
Miseret, constr., 410. *Miseresci, misereatur*, 410, 6.
Mobile nouns, 36.
Moderor, constr., 385, 3.
Modifier, 348 ff.
Modius, 715.
Modo, w. subj., 503, 505.
Moereo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Moneo, constr., 410, 3.
Money, Roman, 712 ff.
Monometer, 663, 2.
Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.
Months, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 35.
Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.
Mos, moris est, constr., 556, I. 1.
-ms, gen. of nouns in, 75.
Multiplicatives, 173.
Multus, comparison of, 165.
Mutes, 3.
Muto, constr., 416, 2.

N, NOUNS in, 48; genit. of, 65; gend. of, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.
Names of towns, constr., 423.
Natus, w. abl., 425, 3.
Ne, num, nonne, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.
Ne, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.
Ne, non, haud, 584. *Neve*, 490, 1.
Necne, 346, II. 2, 3); 526, 2, 1).
Nedum, w. subj., 493, 4.
Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.
Nemo, indef., 191, 2; use of, 457, 1.
Nequam, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.
Ne—quidem, 585; 602, III. 2.
Nescio an, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).
Nescio quis, quomodo, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.
Nescius, w. gen., 399, (2).

-neus, adjs. in, 324.
Neuter, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2.
Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.
Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 38, 3; neuter by signification, 35; by ending, in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 118.
Ni, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nimis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Nisi, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nitor, constr., 419.
Nolo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli, -ito*, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).
Nomen est, constr., 387, 1.
Nominative, formation of, in 3d dec., 55, 88, 95; neut. plur. in adjs., 157.
Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.
Non, ne, haud, 584; place of *non*, 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.
Non, w. *quo, quod, quin, quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.
Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.
Nonne, non = *nonne*, 346, II. 1.
Nos, for *ego*, 446, 2.
Noster, for *meus*, 446, 2.
Nostras, 185, 2.
Nostri, nostrum, 396, 1; 446, 3.
Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 33 ff.; pers. and numb., 37; cases, 38; declensions, 39–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.
Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.
Novus, compared, 167.
Noxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
-ns, genit. of nouns in, 76.
Nubo, w. dat., 385, 2.
Nullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.
Num, numquid, 346, II. 1 and 2.
Number, 37; in verbs, 199.
Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.
-nus, adjectives in, 324.
Nusquam, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

O, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 61; gend., 100; derivatives in, 320, 6.
O, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compds., 654, 7.
Ob, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.
Obediens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, 371; omit., 371, 1, (3); clause as an object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See *Subject and object clauses*.
Objective genitive, 396, II.
Oblique cases, 38; use of, 370–437.
Obliviscor, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.
Obsisto, obsto, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ocior, compared, 166.
-odos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Oe, sound of, 9, 14.
Officio, constr., 499, 1–2.
Ohe, quantity, 612, 4.
Oleo and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.
Ollus, for *ille*, 186, 3.
-olus, ola, olum, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327.
Omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
-on, in Greek gen. plur., 96.
-one, in patronymics, 316.
Operam do, w. subj., 492, 1.
Optimum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Opus, constr., 419.
-or, gender of nouns in, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.
Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.
Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of., 179.
Oro, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.
Orthography, 2–28.
Ortus, w. abl., 425, 3.
-os, nouns in, 50; genit. of, 72; gend., 102.
-os, for *is* in the genitive, 92.
-os final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.

-osus, adjs. in, 323.
Ovid, versification of, 697.
-ox, genit. of nouns in, 80.

PALAM, w. abl., 437, 2.
Palatals, 3, II.
Pan, gen. and acc. of, 65, 2; 93, 1.
Panthus, voc. of, 46, 3, 5).
Par and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).
Paragoge, 703, 6.
Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Paroemiac verse, 664.
Pars, in fractions, 174, 1.
Particeps, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
Participles, 196, II. 4. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause,—time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.
Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.
Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.
Partim, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim—partim*, for *pars—pars*, 461, 5.
Partitive genitive, 396, III.
Parts of speech, 30.
Parum, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Parvus, compared, 165.
Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.
Paterfamilias, decl. of, 126.
Patior, constr., 551, II. 1–2.
Patrials, 326, 3.
Patronymics, 316.
Pause, caesural, 662.
Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.
Pelagus, plur. and gend. of, 46, 5; 47, II.
Penes, w. accus., 433.
Pentameter, 663, 2.
Penthemimeris, 656, 2.
Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.
Per, in compds., 338, 1; 371, 4; *per*, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.
Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Percontor, w. two accs., 374, 2.
Perfect system, 241.
Perfect and supine, formation of, 258.
Perfect, 197; 241, II.; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 268, 275, 281, 283.
Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.
Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.
Periphrastic conjugation, 227 ff.
Peritus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Permisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Permitto, constr., 551, II. 2.
Person, of nouns, 37; of verbs, 200.
Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.
Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Pertaedet, *pertaesum est*, 410, 6.
Peto, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Ph, 4.
Phalaecian verse, 691, V.
Pherecratean verse, 689, II.
Piget, constr., 410.
Place, abl. or gen. of, 421 ff.; locative, 423, 2.
Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.
Plenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
Pleonasm, 704, II.
Pluperfect, 197; 241, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.
Plural, 37; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.
Plus, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Poenitet, constr., 410.
Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.
Pone, w. accus., 433.

Posco, w. two accs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, 1, 2); use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
Possessor, dat. of, 387.
Post, sound of, 8, 1.
Post, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
Posterus, compared, 163, 3.
Postremus, force of, 442.
Postridie, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
Postulo, constr., 374, 3. 4).
Potens, w. gen., 399, (3).
Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
Potior, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
Prae, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
Praeditus, w. abl., 419, 3.
Praeter, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *praeter*, w. accus., 433.
Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
Prepositions, 306; insep., 307; in compds., 338, 1. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2 and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
Present, 197; 241, I.,—in indic., 466 ff.; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
Present perfect, 471, I.
Present system of forms, 241.
Priapeian verse, 695.
Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
Pridie, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
Primitives and derivatives, 313.
Principal parts of verbs, 240, 246–260. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
Prior, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Priusquam, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
Pro, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defence of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
Pro, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
Procul, w. abl., 437, 2.
Prohibeo, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.
Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; posses., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—Agreement, 445. Pers. and Posses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448 ff. Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453. Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.
Pronunciation of Latin, 5–28.
Prope, w. accus., 433.
Proper nouns, 31.
Propior, *proximus*, 166; w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
Propius, w. accus., 437, 1.
Proprius, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
Propter, w. accus., 433.
Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–654. Versification, 655–701.
Prospicio, constr., 385, 3.
Prosthesis, 703, 4.
Provideo, constr., 385, 3.
Providus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Proxime, w. accus., 437, 1.
Proximum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Proximus, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
Prudens, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
-ps, genit. of nouns in, 75.
Pudet, constr., 410.
Punishment, w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

Purgo, constr., 410, 7.
Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490; pure purpose, 491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Infin. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.
Pyrites, decl. of, 43.

QU, changed, 248.
Quaero, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Qualis, qualiscunque, qualisqualis, 187, 7; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 4; *qualislibet*, indef., 191, 4.
Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.
Quam, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.
Quamquam, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.
Quamvis, quantumvis, w. subj., 515 ff.
Quando, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 24. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 613–654; final syllables, 613 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.
Quantus, quantuscunque, quantusquantus, 187, 7; indefinite, 188, 4.
Quasi, w. subj., 503, 506.
Qui, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo, qua*, 187, 1; 188, 2. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff. *Qui*, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur, vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicunque*, 187, 4.
Quia, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quidam, indef., 191, 455.
Quidem, place in clause, 602, III.
Quilibet, 191; use of, 458.
Quin, w. subj., 489, 498.
Quinam, 188, 3.
Quinarius, 712.
Quippe, w. relative, 519, 3.
Quis, interrog., 188; indef., 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.
Quis, for *quibus*, 187, 1.
Quisnam, 188, 3.
Quispiam, 191; use of, 455.
Quisquam, 191; use of, 457.
Quisque, 191; use of, 458; w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Quisquis, 187, 4.
Quitum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Quivis, 191; use of, 458.
Quo, w. gen. 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.
Quoad, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Quod, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.
Quojus, quoi, for *cujus, cui*, 187, 1.
Quominus, w. subj., 499.
Quoniam, w. indic. or subj., 520.
Quoque, place in the clause, 602, III.
Quot, quotcunque, quotquot, quotus, quotuscunque, 187, 7; 188, 4.
Quum, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 3.

R DROPPED, 55, 3; changed, 248; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 66; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.
R, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Rastrum, plur. *rastri, rastra*, 143.
Ratum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Re, red, 338, 2.
-re, for *ris*, 236.
Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.
Recordor, w. gen., 406. II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.
Recuso, constr., 499, 1–2.
Reduplicated perfects, 254; quantity of, 652.
Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.
Refertus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.
Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.
Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.
Regno, w. gen., 409, 3.
Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use of, 453.
Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus, solus, dignus, indignus, idoneus, aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I.–IV.; w. subj. of condition, 513; of conces-

sion, 515; of cause, reason, 517, 519; w. infin., 531, 1.
Reliquum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Reminiscor, w. gen., 406, II.
Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
Reposco, with two accs., 374, 2.
Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
Respublica, decl. of, 126.
Restat ut, 495, 2.
Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
Reticentia, 704, I. 3.
Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.
Rhythmic accent, 659.
Rideo, w. accus., 371, 3.
Rivers, gender of names of, 35.
Rogo, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
-rs, genit. of nouns in, 76.
Rudis, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
Rules of Syntax, 591.
Rus, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Rutum, quantity of, 651, 3.

S SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48 ff.; genit. of, 68–76; gend., 110.
Sacer, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3).
Saepe, compared, 305, 4.
Sapio, w. accus., 371, 3.
Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
Satago, *satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.
Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Satisfacio, w. dat., 385, 2.
Sătum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Scanning, 668.
Scazon, 683, 4.
Scīdi, quantity of, 651, 2.
Secundum, w. accus., 433.
Semi-deponents, 272, 3; 282; use of, 465, 3.
Senex, compared, 168, 3.
Sentences, syntax of, 343–361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative*, *Exclamatory*, *Imperative*, *Interrogative*.
Separation, abl. of, 425.
Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
Sequitur, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Servus, decl. of, 45.
Sese, 184, 4.
Sestertius, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.
Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
-si, **sin**, in Greek datives, 90, 97.
Silver age, 706.
-sim, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
Similis and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
Simul, w. abl., 437, 2.
Sin, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
Sine, w. abl., 434.
Singular, 37; wanting, 131.
Sino, constr., 551, II. 1.
Sitio, w. accus., 371, 3.
Sĭtum, quantity of, 651, 3.
-so, in fut. perfect, 239, 4.
Solus, decl. of, 149; *solus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
Source, abl. of, 425.
Space, abl. of, 378.
Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
Spirants, 3.
Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
Stătum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Statuo, constr., 558, II.
Stem, 41; in the five decls., 123.
Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivata, 653; in compds., 654.
Stĕti, *stĭti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
Studiosus, w. gen., 399.
Sub, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.

Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not interrog., 558.
Subjective genitive, 396, I.
Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533,—Potential Subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts., 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—oratio obliqua, 528.
Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349.
Substantives, see *Nouns*.
Subter, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4.
Subter, w. acc. or abl., 435.
Sui, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
Sum, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
Super, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4.; in compds. with dat., 386. *Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2).
Superus, compared, 163, 3.
Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 267 ff., 274, 281, 283. Use of, 567 ff.
Supine system, 241.
Supplico, w. dat., 385, 2.
Supra, w. accus., 433.
Suspensus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Suus, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
Syllables, 17 ff.
Synaeresis, 669, II.
Synaloepha, Synapheia, 669, I. 5.
Synecdoche, 705, III.
Synesis, 704, III. 3.
Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
Systole, 669, IV.

T SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48; genit. of, 67; gender, 111. *T* dropped, 55, 3; 248.
T, quantity of final syllables in, 621
Taedet, constr., 410.
Talis, 186, 4.
Talpa, gender of, 44.
Tametsi, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
Tanquam, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 503; 506.
Tantus, 186, 4: *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Ted for *te*, 184, 5.
Tempero, constr., 385, 3.
Templum, decl. of, 45.
Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571.
Tenus, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
Terrae, genit. of place, 424, 3.
Testis sum, constr., 551, 3.
Tete, 184, 4.
Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
Tetrapody, 656, 2.
Tetrastich, 666.
Th, 4.
Thesis, 660.
-thongos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
-tim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
Timeo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
Tis, for *tui*, 184, 5.
-to, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.

Tot, totus, 186, 4. *Totus*, decl. of, 149.
Towns, gender of names of, 85; constr.,—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; genit. or abl., 421, II.
Trans, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.
Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.
Trees, gender of names of, 35.
Trimeter, 663, 2.
Tripody, 656, 2.
Tristich, 666.
Trochaic verse, 679 ff.
-trum, nouns in, 320.
Tu, decl. of, 184.
Tuli, quantity of, 651, 2.
-tus, nouns in, 318.
Tuus, decl. of, 185.

U SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; w. sound of *w*, 9. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 118.
U, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 644.
-u, for *ui* in dat., 116, 4.
Ubi, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).
-ubus, in dat. and abl., 90; 116, 4.
Ui, as diphthong, 9.
-uis, for *us*, in genit., 116, 4.
-ula, nouns in, 320, 5.
-uleus, in derivatives, 315, 5.
Ullus, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457.
Ulterior, ultimus, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Ultra, w. accus., 433.
-ulus, ula, ulum, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.
-um, for *arum*, 42, 3; for *orum*, 45, 5, 4); in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 89.
-undus, undi, for *endus, endi*, 238.
Unus, decl. of, 149, 176; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
Unusquisque, 191, 1.
-ur, gend. of nouns in, 114.
-ura, nouns in, 321.
-urio, desideratives in, 332, III.
-us, for *e* in voc. sing., 45, 5; nouns in, 50 ff., 116; genitive of, 73, 116; gender, 115, 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final, quantity of, 627.
Usque, w. accus., 437, 1.
-ustus, adjs. in, 323.
Usus, constr., 419.
-ut, nouns in, 51; genit. of, 67; gend., 111.
Ut, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Ut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
Ut quisque—ita, 458, 2.
Uter, utercunque, 149; 187, 6; 188, 4; 191, 2.
Uterlibet, uterque, utervis, 191, 3. *Uterque*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Utinam, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.
Utor, constr., 419; 419, 4.
Utpote, w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Utrum, 346, II. 2.
-utus, adjs. in, 323.
-uus, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.
-ux, genitive of nouns in, 81.

V PLACE supplied by *u*, 2. *Vacuus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.
Value, genit. of, 396, IV.
Vannus, gender of, 47.
Velut, velut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
Verbal inflections, table of, 242.
Verbs, etymology of—Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–215. Synopsis, 216–226. Periphrastic conj., 227–232. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Formation of parts, 240 ff. Table of inflections, 242. Comparative view of conjs., 243 ff. Principal parts of verbs, 246–260. Classification of verbs, 261–286. Irreg. verbs, 287–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive, Intrans., Finite, Deponent, Semi-depon., Impersonal, Frequent., Incept., Desiderat., Diminutive.*
Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581,—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of Subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and

object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559–566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571–581.
Verb-stem, 203, 242.
Vereor, constr., 492, 4.
Verisimile est, verum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Vero, place in clause, 602, III.
Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.
Versification, 655,—Feet, 656 ff. Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.
Versus, w. accus., 433.
Vescor, constr., 419; 419, 4.
Vestras, 185, 2.
Vestri, vestrum, 396, III. 1.; 446, 3.
Veto, constr., 551, II. 1.
Vetus, compared, 167.
Vicinus, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.
Vir, decl. of, 45, 4.
Virgil, versification of, 696.
Vocative, formation of, 86, 88; in Greek nouns, 95; in adjs., 154, 157. Syntax of, 369.
Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs, syntax of*.
Volens, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
Volo, constr., 551, II. 1.
-volus, compds. in, compared, 164.
Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 14 ff.; before *r*, 6, 2.

W, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.
Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.
Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
Weights, Roman, 714.
Winds, gender of names of, 35.
Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Words, arrangement of, 592.

X, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48, 50; genitive of, 77–83; gender of, 108.

Y, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
Nouns in, 48; genitive of, 62; gender, 111.
Y, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 638.
-ys, genitive of nouns in, 74; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.
-yx, genitive of nouns in, 82.

Z, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

THE END.

Harkness's Cæsar.

This edition of Cæsar's Commentaries, intended to follow the Latin Reader, aims to introduce the student to an appreciative study of Latin authors. The text is the result of a careful collation of the several editions most approved by European scholars. The notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the learner, and to furnish him such collateral information as will enable him to understand the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries, and such special aid as will enable him to surmount real difficulties of construction and idiom. They will thus, it is hoped, render an acceptable service both to the instructor and the learner, by lightening the burden of the one, and by promoting the progress of the other. The dictionary has been prepared with special reference to the wants of the student.

The Life of Cæsar, the Map of Gaul, and the diagrams and illustrations which accompany the notes, will greatly add to the value of the work.

From Pres. AIKIN, *Union College, N. Y.*

"This edition of the Commentaries is admirably suited, not merely to give the student an acquaintance with his immediate text-book, but also to develop those habits of investigation, that thoughtfulness in regard to the scope of the whole subject, and that style of vigorous, tasteful, and idiomatic rendering, which are among the rarest, as they are certainly among the most important, results of classical study."

From S. H. TAYLOR, LL.D., *Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.*

"The notes are prepared with a judicious appreciation of the wants of the pupil. They show the hand of the finished scholar, as well as of the experienced teacher."

From Prof. W. A. PACKARD, *Princeton College, N. J.*

"The notes are models of what the beginner needs to interest and guide him. The text is furnished with the best illustrations in the way of maps and plans."

From Prof. W. T. JOHNSON, *Notre Dame University, Ind.*

"This is certainly an excellent text-book—superior to any other edition of the Commentaries now in use."

From Pres. MCELDOWNEY, *Albion College, Mich.*

"This is the most valuable edition of Cæsar with which I am acquainted."

From Prof. H. W. HAYNES, *University of Vermont.*

"Never before have I seen such a lucid and simple explanation of Cæsar's bridge across the Rhine."

From Prof. C. S. HARRINGTON, *Wesleyan University, Ct.*

"The student who uses this edition must read Cæsar with a lively relish."

From Prof. W. A. STEVENS, *Denison University, Ohio.*

"The notes are gotten up on the right principle, and are greatly superior to those of similar works in England."

From Prof. J. E. GINTNER, *Otterbein University, Ohio.*

"This is the only edition of Cæsar recommended to our classes."

From A. D. SANDBORN, *Wilton Seminary, Iowa.*

"I know of no work of the kind in which the notes so fully meet the wants of both teacher and pupil. I am delighted with the Life of Cæsar."

From Prof. S. HASSELL, *State Normal University, Del.*

"This edition of Cæsar is superior to all others published in this country. The biographical sketch of the Roman commander is a splendid production."

Arnold's First Latin Book;

Remodelled and Rewritten, and adapted to the Ollendorff Method of Instruction. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A. M. 12mo, 302 pages.

Under the labors of the present author, the work of Arnold has undergone radical changes. It has been adapted to the Ollendorff improved method of instruction, and is superior to the former work in its plan and all the details of instruction. While it proceeds in common with Arnold on the principle of imitation and repetition, it pursues much more exactly and with a surer step the progressive method, and aims to make the pupil master of every individual subject before he proceeds to a new one, and of each subject by itself before it is combined with others; so that he is brought gradually and surely to understand the most difficult combinations of the language. An important feature of this book is, that it carries along the Syntax *pari passu* with the Etymology, so that the student is not only all the while becoming familiar with the forms of the language, but is also learning to construct sentences and to understand the mutual relations of their component parts.

Special care has been taken in the exercises to present such idioms and expressions alone as are authorized by the best classic authors, so that the learner may acquire, by example as well as precept, a distinct idea of pure Latinity.

It has been a leading object with the author so to classify and arrange the various topics as to simplify the subject, and, as far as possible, to remove the disheartening difficulties too often encountered at the outset in the study of an ancient language.

From W. E. TOLMAN, *Instructor in Providence High School.*

"I have used Arnold's First Latin Book, remodelled and rewritten by Mr. Harkness, in my classes during the past year, and find it to be a work not so much remodelled and rewritten as one *entirely new*, both in its plan and in its adaptation to the wants of the beginner in Latin."

From WM. RUSSELL, *Editor of the First Series of the Boston Journal of Education*

"The form which this work has taken under the skilful hand of Mr. H. is marked throughout by a method purely elementary, perfectly simple, gradually progressive, and rigorously exact. Pupils trained on such a manual cannot fail of becoming distinguished, in their subsequent progress, for precision and correctness of knowledge, and for rapid advancement in genuine scholarship."

From GEORGE CAPRON, *Principal of Worcester High School.*

"I have examined the work with care, and am happy to say that I find it superior to any similar work with which I am acquainted. I shall recommend it to my next class."

From J. B. BOISE, *Professor of Ancient Languages in Michigan University.*

"I have examined your First Book in Latin, and am exceedingly pleased both with the plan and execution. I shall not fail to use my influence toward introducing it into the classical schools of this State."

Second Latin Book.

Comprising an Historical Latin Reader, with Notes and Rules for Translating, and an Exercise Book, developing a Complete Analytical Syntax, in a series of Lessons and Exercises, involving the Construction, Analysis, and Reconstruction of Latin Sentences. By ALBERT HARKNESS, A.M., Senior Master in the Providence High School. 12mo, 362 pages.

This work is designed as a sequel to the author's "First Latin Book." It comprises a complete analytical syntax, exhibiting the essential structure of the Latin language, from its simplest to its most expanded and elaborate form.

The arrangement of the lessons is decidedly philosophical, gradually progressive, and in strict accordance with the law of development of the human mind. Every new principle is stated in simple, clear, and accurate language, and illustrated by examples carefully selected from the reading lessons, which the student is required to translate, analyze, and reconstruct. He is also exercised in forming new Latin sentences on given models. This, while it gives variety and interest to what would otherwise be in the highest degree monotonous, completely fixes in the mind the subject of the lesson, both by analysis and synthesis.

The careful study of this volume, on the plan recommended by the author, will greatly facilitate the pupil's progress in the higher departments of the language. Such is the testimony of the numerous institutions in which Harkness's improved edition of Arnold has been introduced.

From J. A. SPENCER, D. D., *late Professor of Latin in Burlington College, N. J.*

"The present volume appears to me to carry out excellently the system on which the late lamented Arnold based his educational works; and in the Selections for Reading, the Notes and Rules for Translating, the Exercises in Translating into Latin, the Analyses, etc., I think it admirably adapted to advance the diligent student, not only rapidly, but soundly, in an acquaintance with the Latin language."

From PROF. GAMMELL, *of Brown University.*

"The book seems to me, as I anticipated it would be, a valuable addition to the works now in use among teachers of Latin in the schools of the United States, and for many of them it will undoubtedly form an advantageous substitute."

From PROF. LINCOLN, *of Brown University.*

"It seems to me to carry on most successfully the method pursued in the First Book. Though brief, it is very comprehensive, and combines judicious and skilfully-formed exercises with systematic instruction."

From J. J. OWEN, D. D., *Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy, New York.*

"This Second Latin Book gives abundant evidence of the author's learning and tact to arrange, simplify, and make accessible to the youthful mind the great and fundamental principles of the Latin language. The book is worthy of a place in every classical school, and I trust will have an extensive sale."

From PROF. ANDERSON, *of Lewisburg University, Pennsylvania.*

"A faithful use of the work would diminish the drudgery of the student's earlier studies, and facilitate his progress in his subsequent course. I wish the work a wide circulation."

Germania and Agricola of Caius Cornelius Tacitus:

With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of the Greek and Latin Languages in Amherst College. 12mo, 193 pages.

Tacitus's account of Germany and life of Agricola are among the most fascinating and instructive Latin classics. The present edition has been prepared expressly for college classes, by one who knows what they need. In it will be found: 1. A Latin text, approved by all the more recent editors. 2. A copious illustration of the grammatical constructions, as well as of the rhetorical and poetical usages peculiar to Tacitus. In a writer so concise it has been deemed necessary to pay particular regard to the connection of thought, and to the particles as the hinges of that connection. 3. Constant comparisons of the writer with the authors of the Augustan age, for the purpose of indicating the changes which had already been wrought in the language of the Roman people. 4. An embodiment in small compass of the most valuable labors of such recent German critics as Grimm, Günther, Gruber, Kiessling, Dronke, Roth, Ruperti, and Walther.

From PROF. LINCOLN, *of Brown University.*

"I have found the book in daily use with my class of very great service, very practical, and well suited to the wants of students. I am very much pleased with the Life of Tacitus and the Introduction, and indeed with the literary character of the book throughout. We shall make the book a part of our Latin course."

The History of Tacitus:

By W. S. TYLER. With Notes for Colleges. 12mo, 453 pages.

The text of Tacitus is here presented in a form as correct as a comparison of the best editions can make it. Notes are appended for the student's use, which contain not only the grammatical, but likewise all the geographical, archæological, and historical illustrations that are necessary to render the author intelligible. It has been the constant aim of the editor to carry students beyond the dry details of grammar and lexicography, and introduce them to a familiar acquaintance and lively sympathy with the author and his times. Indexes to the notes, and to the names of persons and places, render reference easy.

From PROF. HACKETT, *of Newton Theological Seminary.*

"The notes appear to me to be even more neat and elegant than those on the 'Germania and Agricola.' They come as near to such notes as I would be glad to write myself on a classic, as almost any thing that I have yet seen."

Arnold's Greek Reading Book, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition. Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar. By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

First Lessons in Greek;* or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.

Hadley's Greek Grammar,* for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.

——— **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.

Herodotus, Selections from; comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.

Homer's Iliad, according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 740 pages.

——— **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.

Kuhner's Greek Grammar. Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.* Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 671 pages.

Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis. A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 750 pages.

——— **Greek Reader** 12mo.

——— **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.

——— **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.

——— **Thucydides** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.

——— **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.

Plato's Apology and Crito.* With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Map. 12mo.

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates. With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

———— **Anabasis.** With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 393 pages.

———— **Anabasis.** Chiefly according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by John J. OWEN. Revised Edition. With Map. 12mo.

———— **Cyropædia,** according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. 12mo.

Sophocles's Œdipus Tyrannus. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 138 pages.

HEBREW AND SYRIAC.

Gesenius's Hebrew Grammar. Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RODIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 361 pages.

Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar. Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Crestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 367 pages.

D. APPLETON & CO., 90, 92 & 94 Grand Street, N. Y.,

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.